

# UMHLATHUZE MUNICIPALITY



## SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

**2017/2018-2021/2022**

**FIRST REVIEW (MAY 2018)**

Contact Details:

Municipal Manager:  
Dr N J Sibeko  
Private Bag X1004  
RICHARDS BAY  
3900

Telephone: 035-9075000  
Facsimile: 035-9075444/5/6/7  
Website: [www.umhlathuze.gov.za](http://www.umhlathuze.gov.za)  
Email: [creg@umhlathuze.gov.za](mailto:creg@umhlathuze.gov.za)

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<b>1. INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>9</b>
1.1 BACKGROUND	9
1.2 PURPOSE OF AN SDF	9
1.3 PREPARATION OF FIRST REVIEW OF 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 SDF METHODOLOGY AND APPROACH	12
1.4 COMMENTS FROM THE MEC	12
1.5 REPORT STRUCTURE	13
1.6 DATA SOURCES	14
<b>2. POLICY CONTEXT</b>	<b>15</b>
2.1 UNITED NATIONS SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS	15
2.2 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN	19
2.2.1 SUMMARY OF THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN	19
2.2.2 SPATIAL FOCUS AREAS OF THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN	20
2.2.3 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN PRIORITIES	21
2.3 INTEGRATED URBAN DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (IUDF)	22
2.4 FOURTEEN (14) NATIONAL OUTCOMES	24
2.5 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL PRIORITIES	25
2.6 STRATEGIC INTEGRATED PROJECTS (SIPS)	26
2.7 STATE OF THE NATION ADDRESS (SONA)	27
2.8 STATE OF THE PROVINCE ADDRESS (SOPA)	28
2.9 PGDS SPATIAL PLANNING PRINCIPLES	30
2.10 PROVINCIAL SPATIAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY: CORRIDOR AND NODAL FRAMEWORK	31
2.11 SPLUMA PRINCIPLES	33
2.12 SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION	35
2.13 UMHLATHUZE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN	37
2.14 MUNICIPAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT TRANSFORMATION ROADMAP	41
2.15 UMHLATHUZE VISION 2030 STRATEGIC ROADMAP	42
<b>3. SPATIAL ANALYSIS</b>	<b>45</b>
3.1 SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS	45
3.2 LAND OWNERSHIP	47
3.2.1 Functions of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	49
3.2.2 Objectives of Local Government	49
3.2.3 Functions of the Ingonyama Trust	51
3.2.4 Functions of Traditional Councils	51
3.2.5 Land Allocation Guidelines on Communal Land under Traditional Councils	52
3.3 SETTLEMENT DENSITIES AND PATTERNS	53
3.3.1 Nodes: Local Context	56
3.3.2 Analysis of the uMhlathuze Municipal Nodal Areas	56
3.3.3 Corridors: Local Context	64
3.3.4 Primary Corridors	64
3.3.5 Secondary Corridors	64
3.3.6 Tertiary Corridors	64
3.4 URBAN LAND USE ANALYSIS	70
3.5 SUMMARY OF KEY SPATIAL ISSUES	71



<b>4.</b>	<b>DEMOGRAPHIC AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC ANALYSIS</b>	<b>73</b>
4.1	DEMOGRAPHIC INDICATORS	73
4.2	SOCIO-ECONOMIC INDICATORS	79
4.3	SUMMARY OF KEY DEMOGRAPHIC AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC ISSUES	83
<b>5.</b>	<b>ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS</b>	<b>84</b>
5.1	GEOMORPHOLOGY	84
5.2	GEOTECHNICAL CONDITIONS	84
5.3	WATER RESOURCES	84
5.4	BIODIVERSITY	84
5.5	AIR QUALITY	85
5.6	THE COAST	85
5.7	ENVIRONMENTAL ASSETS	85
5.8	THREATS TO ECOSYSTEM GOODS AND SERVICES	86
5.9	ENVIRONMENTAL PRIORITIES AND OBJECTIVES	86
5.10	THE ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES MANAGEMENT PLAN	87
5.11	THE ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK (EMF)	88
5.11.1	Port Expansion	88
5.11.2	IDZ Development	89
5.12	RESPONSE TO CLIMATE CHANGE	89
5.13	COASTAL DEVELOPMENT SETBACK LINES	93
5.14	THE IMPACT OF BIODIVERSITY ON SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT	95
5.15	SUMMARY OF KEY ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES	107
<b>6.</b>	<b>AGRICULTURAL OVERVIEW</b>	<b>109</b>
6.1	THE ALIGNMENT OF COMPREHENSIVE RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME AND NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN	109
6.2	AGRICULTURAL SUPPORT PLAN	110
<b>7.</b>	<b>LAND REFORM</b>	<b>114</b>
7.1	SUMMARY OF KEY LAND REFORM ISSUES	114
<b>8.</b>	<b>INFRASTRUCTURE ANALYSIS</b>	<b>117</b>
8.1	BULK WATER MASTER PLAN	117
8.2	BULK SEWERAGE MASTER PLAN	123
8.3	WASTE WATER RE-USE PROJECT	127
8.4	ROADS AND PORTS	127
8.5	AIRPORT PLANNING	131
8.6	SUMMARY OF INFRASTRUCTURE ISSUES	132
<b>9.</b>	<b>HUMAN SETTLEMENT OVERVIEW</b>	<b>134</b>
9.1	INFORMAL SETTLEMENT UPGRADE	134
9.1.1	uMzingwenya Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance	134
9.1.2	Nseleni Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance	134
9.1.3	Mzingazi Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance (Infills)	134
9.1.4	Mandlazi-Airport Buffer Strip Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance	135
9.1.5	Ngwelezane Informal Settlement	135
9.1.6	Vulindlela/University of Zululand Informal Settlement	135
9.1.7	Mandlazi Agri-Village Infill Areas	135
9.2	IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR HOUSING	143
9.3	RESTRUCTURING ZONES	144
9.4	SUMMARY OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT ISSUES	145

<b>10. DISASTER MANAGEMENT</b>	<b>147</b>
10.1 SUMMARY OF DISASTER MANAGEMENT ISSUES	149
<b>11. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK</b>	<b>150</b>
11.1 INFORMANTS OF SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT	150
11.2 SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT VISION AND STRATEGIC APPROACH	154
11.2.1 Municipal Spatial Transformation Strategy Nodal Focus Areas	159
11.3 PLANNING FOR FUTURE SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT	161
11.3.1 UMHLATHUZE SETTLEMENT HIERARCHY	161
11.3.2 NATURAL FEATURES	165
11.3.3 EXPANSION AREAS	166
11.3.4 INFILL AND DENSIFICATION	172
11.3.5 URBAN DEVELOPMENT BOUNDARY	172
11.4 DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES	176
11.4.1 Opportunity for Residential Infill	176
11.4.2 Opportunity for Agricultural Investment	176
11.4.3 Opportunity for Mining Investment	177
11.4.4 Nodes and Corridors	177
11.4.5 Tourism and Areas of Natural Beauty	178
11.5 INTERVENTION AREAS	178
11.5.1 INFORMALLY SETTLED AREAS	178
11.5.2 RURAL DEVELOPMENTFRAMEWORK PLANS	179
11.6 DEVELOPMENT OF INGONYAMA TRUST BOARD LAND	185
<b>12. IMPLEMENTATION OF THE SDF</b>	<b>188</b>
12.1 THE LAND USE FRAMEWORK	188
12.1.1 UMHLATHUZE SUITE OF PLANS	188
12.1.2 INCREMENTAL APPROACH: DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR TOWNSHIPS	191
12.1.3 DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR RAPID URBANISATION MANAGEMENT ZONES	192
12.1.4 DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR AGRI-VILLAGES	193
12.1.5 DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR RURAL AREAS	194
12.2 STRATEGIC AND CATALYTIC PROJECTS	197
12.3 CAPITAL EXPENDITURE	204
12.4 CONSOLIDATED IMPLEMENTATION PLAN	218
<b>13. SERVICE PROVIDER PROJECTS</b>	<b>221</b>
13.1 DEPARTMENT OF WORKS	221
13.2 SANRAL	221
13.3 ESKOM	221
13.4 DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT	222
<b>14. EXTERNAL DEVELOPMENT INFLUENCES</b>	<b>225</b>
14.1 RICHARDS BAY PORT EXPANSION	225
14.2 INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT ZONE	225
14.3 MINING INVESTMENT	229
14.4 STRATEGIC CORRIDOR DEVELOPMENT PLAN FOR THE N2 CORRIDOR FROM DURBAN TO RICHARDS BAY	230
14.5 UMHLATHUZE-ULUNDI-VRYHEID SECONDARY CORRIDOR PLAN	231
14.6 KING CETSHWAYO DISTRICT SDF	232

## LIST OF FIGURES

FIGURE 1: APPLICATION OF SDGS TO UMHATHUZE .....	15
FIGURE 2: ELEMENTS OF A DECENT STANDARD OF LIVING .....	21
FIGURE 3: STRATEGIC GOALS AND LEVERS OF THE IUSF .....	23
FIGURE 4: PSEDS CRITERIA FOR IDENTIFICATION OF NODES .....	32
FIGURE 5: COMPOSITE MAPPING OF PSEDS NODES AND CORRIDORS.....	33
FIGURE 6: PILLARS OF SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION.....	36
FIGURE 7: UMHATHUZE IDP GOALS AND OBJECTIVES.....	37
FIGURE 8: PERI-URBAN DEVELOPMENT ADJOINING NGWELEZANE .....	48
FIGURE 9: PERI-URBAN DEVELOPMENT ADJOINING THE RICHARDS BAY AIRPORT .....	49
FIGURE 10: COMPARATIVE URBAN RESIDENTIAL DENSITIES .....	70
FIGURE 11: POPULATION NUMBERS IN KCDM .....	73
FIGURE 12: POPULATION GROWTH PROJECTIONS TO 2030.....	79
FIGURE 13: PHASED APPROACH TO MUNICIPAL ACTION PLAN FOR CLIMATE CHANGE.....	89
FIGURE 14: DEVELOPMENT SETBACK LINES ALONG NORTHERN BEACHES .....	94
FIGURE 15: COASTAL EROSION AND INSTALLED DEFENCES.....	94
FIGURE 16: THE LOCATION OF THE EXISTING RICHARDS BAY AIRPORT .....	131
FIGURE 17: AREA INVESTIGATED FOR PROPOSED AIRPORT RELOCATION.....	132
FIGURE 18: POPULATION GROWTH PROJECTIONS TO 2030.....	167
FIGURE 19: EXPANSION AREAS A, B, C AND D.....	170
FIGURE 20: EXPANSION AREAS E, F, G AND H.....	171
FIGURE 21: UMHATHUZE SUITE OF PLANS.....	189
FIGURE 22: LINKAGE BETWEEN SDF AND LUF FOR RICHARDS BAY CBD SOUTH EXTENSION .....	190
FIGURE 23: LINKAGE BETWEEN SDF AND LUF FOR ESIKHALENI BUSINESS SUPPORT CENTRE.....	190
FIGURE 24: SELECTED CATALYTIC AND STRATEGIC PROJECTS .....	202
FIGURE 25: CAPITAL BUDGET PER STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA OVER MTREF .....	214
FIGURE 26: MTREF CAPITAL BUDGET IN GREENFIELD/EXPANSION AREAS.....	214
FIGURE 27: MTREF CAPITAL BUDGET IN FORMER TLC AREAS.....	215
FIGURE 28: MTREF CAPITAL BUDGET IN FORMER R293 TOWNS .....	216
FIGURE 29: MTREF CAPITAL BUDGET IN RURAL AREAS .....	216
FIGURE 31: CITY WIDE MTREF.....	217
FIGURE 32: CURRENT AND LONG TERM PORT LAYOUT .....	226
FIGURE 33: IDZ 50 YEAR MASTER PLAN PRIORITY AREAS .....	229

## LIST OF TABLES

TABLE 1: MEC COMMENTS AND RESPONSES .....	12
TABLE 2: DESCRIPTION OF SDGS.....	15
TABLE 3: APPLICATION OF SDGS TO UMHATHUZE .....	17
TABLE 4: NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN PRIORITIES.....	21
TABLE 5: FOURTEEN NATIONAL OUTCOMES.....	24
TABLE 6: NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL PRIORITIES.....	25
TABLE 7: STRATEGIC INTEGRATED PROJECTS.....	26
TABLE 8: VISION 2030 STRATEGIC ROADMAP PROGRAMMES.....	42
TABLE 9: LAND OWNERSHIP BREAKDOWN.....	47
TABLE 10: ANALYSIS OF EMPANGENI NODE.....	56
TABLE 11: ANALYSIS OF RICHARDS BAY NODE .....	57
TABLE 12: ANALYSIS OF ESIKHALENI NODE.....	58
TABLE 13: ANALYSIS OF NGWELEZANE NODE .....	58
TABLE 14: ANALYSIS OF FELIXTON NODE.....	59
TABLE 15: ANALYSIS OF VULINDLELA/DLANGWEZWA NODE .....	59
TABLE 16: ANALYSIS OF NSELENI NODE.....	60
TABLE 17: ANALYSIS OF BUCHANANA NODE .....	60
TABLE 18: ANALYSIS OF BHEJANE NODE .....	61

TABLE 19: ANALYSIS OF MKHWANAZI NORTH & SOUTH NODE .....	62
TABLE 20: ANALYSIS OF MADLEBE NODE.....	62
TABLE 21: ANALYSIS DUBE NODE.....	63
TABLE 22: SUMMARY OF INTERVENTIONS AT NODES .....	66
TABLE 23: RURAL SETTLEMENT PLAN PHASES .....	68
TABLE 24: RESIDENTIAL LAND USE TYPES.....	71
TABLE 25: POPULATION NUMBERS IN KCDM.....	73
TABLE 26: POPULATION GROWTH SCENARIOS FROM 2016 TO 2030.....	76
TABLE 27: CORRESPONDING RESIDENTIAL LAND REQUIREMENTS FROM 2016 TO 2023....	77
TABLE 28: CORRESPONDING RESIDENTIAL LAND REQUIREMENTS FROM 2023 TO 2030....	78
TABLE 29: PHASED APPROACH TO MUNICIPAL ACTION PLAN .....	90
TABLE 30: THE FUNCTIONALITY OF LANDSCAPE UNITS IN RESPECT OF MAINTAINING BIODIVERSITY.....	97
TABLE 31: RED DATA SPECIES OF SIGNIFICANCE .....	106
TABLE 32: LAND CAPABILITY BREAKDOWN .....	110
TABLE 33: ESTIMATED AADD POTABLE WATER REQUIREMENTS.....	120
TABLE 34: ESTIMATED DAILY PEAK WATER REQUIREMENTS .....	120
TABLE 35: INDICATIVE CAPITAL FUNDING REQUIREMENTS.....	122
TABLE 36: INDICATIVE MAINTENANCE AND REFURBISHMENT FUNDING REQUIREMENTS	123
TABLE 37: ESTIMATED INCREASE IN HOUSING UNITS .....	123
TABLE 38: EXPECTED COMBINED SEWAGE/WASTEWATER FLOW.....	124
TABLE 39: COST ESTIMATE FOR AUGMENTATION OF BULK SEWAGE SYSTEM .....	125
TABLE 40: INDICATIVE REFURBISHMENT COST.....	126
TABLE 41: ESTIMATED ANNUAL MAINTENANCE AND REFRESHMENT BUDGET .....	126
TABLE 42: CHAPTERS OF THE CITP .....	128
TABLE 43: LAND SUITABLE FOR HOUSING DEVELOPMENT - SDF EXPANSION AREAS.....	143
TABLE 44: STATE OWNED LAND SUITABLE FOR HOUSING DEVELOPMENT.....	143
TABLE 45: CONSOLIDATION OF KEY ISSUES .....	150
TABLE 46: LINKING SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION PILLARS WITH SDF VISION ELEMENTS.	157
TABLE 47: SUMMARY OF UMHLATHUZE SETTLEMENT HIERARCHY .....	162
TABLE 48: EXTENT OF SDF EXPANSION AREAS .....	167
TABLE 49: POPULATION NUMBERS IN KCDM.....	167
TABLE 50: CURRENT LAND USE TREND OF ZONED URBAN LAND .....	168
TABLE 51: ANTICIPATED LAND USAGES IN EXPANSION AREAS.....	169
TABLE 52: RESULTS FROM INFILL INVESTIGATION IN EMPANGENI AND RICHARDS BAY .	172
TABLE 53 : STRATEGIC AND CATALYTIC PROJECTS .....	197
TABLE 54: RELEVANCE OF SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION ELEMENTS TO CATALYTIC PROJECTS .....	199
TABLE 55: STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA: EXPANSION AREAS .....	206
TABLE 56: STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS: FORMER TLC AREAS.....	206
TABLE 57: STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA: FORMER R293 TOWNS.....	207
TABLE 58: STRATEGIC FOCUS AREA: RURAL AREAS.....	208
TABLE 59: SUMMARY OF EXPENDITURE ON THE POOR .....	213

## LIST OF MAPS

MAP 1: SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS.....	46
MAP 2: LAND OWNERSHIP.....	54
MAP 3: SETTLEMENT PATTERNS .....	55
MAP 4: NODES AND CORRIDORS.....	67
MAP 5: PROPOSED RURAL SETTLEMENTS PLANS .....	69
MAP 6: POPULATION DENSITY .....	74
MAP 7: LEVEL OF EDUCATION .....	80
MAP 8: INCOME LEVEL BELOW R1600 PER MONTH.....	81
MAP 9: UNEMPLOYMENT LEVELS.....	82
MAP 10: STATE OF BIODIVERSITY BASED ON FUNCTIONAL UNITS .....	96
MAP 11: ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVE AREAS .....	108
MAP 12: LAND CAPABILITY .....	111

<b>MAP 13: AGRICULTURAL POTENTIAL.....</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>MAP 14: AGRICULTURAL PROJECTS PER WARD.....</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>MAP 15: EXTENT OF ORIGINAL AND EXTENDED MAMBUKA LAND CLAIM .....</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>MAP 16: MBONAMBI LAND CLAIM                      MAP 17: MNDABA LAND CLAIM.....</b>	<b>116</b>
<b>MAP 18: ACCESS TO PIPED WATER.....</b>	<b>118</b>
<b>MAP 19: ACCESS TO HYGIENIC TOILETS .....</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>MAP 20: ARTERIAL ROAD FRAMEWORK PLAN .....</b>	<b>130</b>
<b>MAP 21: UMZINGWENYA SETTLEMENT .....</b>	<b>136</b>
<b>MAP 22: NSELENI PERI-URBAN SETTLEMENT .....</b>	<b>137</b>
<b>MAP 23: MZINGAZI INFORMAL SETTLEMENT.....</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>MAP 24: MANDLAZINI-AIRPORT BUFFER STRIP INFORMAL SETTLEMENT .....</b>	<b>139</b>
<b>MAP 25: NGWELEZANE HOSPITAL SETTLEMENT.....</b>	<b>140</b>
<b>MAP 26: VULINDLELA/UNIVERSITY OF ZULULAND SETTLEMENT .....</b>	<b>141</b>
<b>MAP 27: MANDLAZINI VILLAGE INFILL AREAS .....</b>	<b>142</b>
<b>MAP 28: LOCALITY OF MEERENSEE MZINGAZI RESTRUCTURING ZONE.....</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>MAP 29: HUMAN SETTLEMENTS RESTRUCTURING ZONES.....</b>	<b>146</b>
<b>MAP 30: NODES AND CORRIDORS IN UMHLATHUZE .....</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>MAP 31: URBAN DEVELOPMENT BOUNDARY .....</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>MAP 32: BASIC SERVICES INTERVENTION AREAS.....</b>	<b>181</b>
<b>MAP 33: AREAS OF ECONOMIC GROWTH AND DEVELOPMENT .....</b>	<b>182</b>
<b>MAP 34: SETTLEMENT INTERVENTION AREAS .....</b>	<b>183</b>
<b>MAP 35: SOCIAL INFRASTRUCTURE INTERVENTION.....</b>	<b>184</b>
<b>MAP 36: CONSOLIDATED SDF .....</b>	<b>187</b>
<b>MAP 37: ELEMENT OF THE LAND USE FRAMEWORK - URBAN .....</b>	<b>195</b>
<b>MAP 38: ELEMENTS OF THE LAND USE FRAMEWORK – RURAL .....</b>	<b>196</b>
<b>MAP 39: LOCATION OF CATALYTIC AND STRATEGIC PROJECTS .....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>MAP 40: STRATEGIC FOCUS AREAS.....</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>MAP 41: SELECTED INTERVENTIONS AT EXPANSION AREAS .....</b>	<b>209</b>
<b>MAP 42: SELECTED INTERVENTIONS AT FORMER TLC AREAS.....</b>	<b>210</b>
<b>MAP 43: SELECTED INTERVENTIONS AT FORMER R293 TOWNS.....</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>MAP 44: SELECTED INTERVENTIONS AT RURAL AREAS .....</b>	<b>212</b>
<b>MAP 45: IDZ FOOTPRINT .....</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>MAP 46: N2 CORRIDOR STUDY AREA .....</b>	<b>230</b>
<b>MAP 47: UMHLATHUZE-ULUNDI-VRYHEID SECONDARY CORRIDOR PROJECT STUDY AREA .....</b>	<b>232</b>
<b>MAP 48: KING CETSHWAYO SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK.....</b>	<b>233</b>

**DATA DISCLAIMER**

- *Post 2016, the uMhlathuze Municipality consists of 34 Wards and has increased in size by approximately 50% from 79 334 Ha to 123 325 Ha*
- *Only official population data was available for the newly demarcated municipal area*
- *All other analysis in respect of infrastructure and socio-economic issues had to be based on a combination of the pre 2016 LGE municipal ward data from the uMhlathuze and former Ntambanana Municipalities respectively*
- *There are gaps in the spatial representation of data as there is no seamless alignment of 2011 and 2014 wards with the new municipal boundary of uMhlathuze*

## **1. INTRODUCTION**

### **1.1 BACKGROUND**

The preparation of the 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 Spatial Development Framework (SDF) for uMhlathuze was undertaken and adopted during May 2017. The document represents the first draft Review of the 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 SDF and aims to achieve the following:

- Include any updated information available since the review of the preparation of the 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 SDF in 2017.
- Further interrogate areas where strategic intervention is required and where strategic opportunities exist and provision of indicative mapping of such.
- Ensure that all relevant mapping is updated given any new/updated information.
- Address comments received from the provincial Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs on the assessment of the 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 SDF as adopted in May 2017.
- Consider alignment and cross border issues from the King Cetshwayo District family.

### **1.2 PURPOSE OF AN SDF**

Section 23 of the Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000) requires that:

“23. Municipal planning to be developmentally oriented:

- (1) A municipality must undertake developmentally-oriented planning so as to ensure that it
  - (a) strives to achieve the objects of local government set out in section 152 of the Constitution;
  - (b) gives effect to its developmental duties as required by section 153 of the Constitution; and
  - (c) together with other organs of state contribute to the progressive realization of the fundamental rights contained in sections 24, 25, 26, 27 and 29 of the Constitution.

Chapter 5 of the Municipal Systems Act (Act No. 32 of 2000) provides for the development of an Integrated Development Plan (IDP), i.e. a five-year strategic development plan. According to Section 26 of the Systems Act (MSA):

An integrated development plan must reflect—

- (e) a spatial development framework which must include the provision of basic guidelines for a land use management system for the municipality;

In context of the above, the SDF can be considered as a visual presentation that seeks to guide the overall spatial distribution of current and desirable land uses within a municipality in order to give effect to the vision, goal and objectives of the municipal IDP, in keeping with the principles for land development. As such, it should guide spatial growth, conservation of the natural and built environment as well as the correction of past imbalances. It should also indicate areas where strategic intervention is required and should act as a marketing tool to indicate where development could be promoted.

The MSA Regulations (Act 32 of 2000) outlines the following specific objectives of an SDF:

- Strategic guidance on the location and nature of development
- Set out basic guidelines for land use management
- Discourage low-density urban sprawl
- Generate social and economic opportunities
- Promote access to opportunities
- Maximize resource efficiency by: (1) protecting sensitive environments, (2) protecting productive agricultural land and (3) enhancing the regional identity and character

Section 20 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act No 16 of 2013) requires that:

- “(1) The Municipal Council of a municipality must by notice in the Provincial Gazette adopt a municipal spatial development framework for the municipality.
- (2) The municipal spatial development framework must be prepared as part of a municipality's integrated development plan in accordance with the provisions of the Municipal Systems Act.
- (3) Before adopting the municipal spatial development framework contemplated in subsection (1) and any proposed amendments to the municipal spatial development framework, the Municipal Council must-
  - (a) give notice of the proposed municipal spatial development framework in the Gazette and the media;
  - (b) invite the public to submit written representations in respect of the proposed municipal spatial development framework to the Municipal Council within 60 days after the publication of the notice referred to in paragraph (a); and
  - (c) consider all representations received in respect of the proposed municipal spatial development framework.”

Section 21 of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (Act No 16 of 2013) requires that:

“A municipal spatial development framework must-

- (a) give effect to the development principles and applicable norms and standards set out in Chapter 2;
- (b) include a written and spatial representation of a five-year spatial development plan for the spatial form of the municipality;
- (c) include a longer term spatial development vision statement for the municipal area which indicates a desired spatial growth and development pattern for the next 10 to 20 years;
- (d) identify current and future significant structuring and restructuring elements of the spatial form of the municipality, including development corridors, activity spines and economic nodes where public and private investment will be prioritized and facilitated;
- (e) include population growth estimates for the next five years;



- (f) include estimates of the demand for housing units across different socioeconomic categories and the planned location and density of future housing developments;
- (g) include estimates of economic activity and employment trends and locations in the municipal area for the next five years;
- (h) identify, quantify and provide location requirements of engineering infrastructure and services provision for existing and future development needs for the next five years;
  - (i) identify the designated areas where a national or provincial inclusionary housing policy may be applicable;
  - (j) include a strategic assessment of the environmental pressures and opportunities within the municipal area, including the spatial location of environmental sensitivities, high potential agricultural land and coastal access strips, where applicable;
- (k) identify the designation of areas in the municipality where incremental upgrading approaches to development and regulation will be applicable;
- (l) identify the designation of areas in which-
  - (i) more detailed local plans must be developed; and
  - (ii) shortened land use development procedures may be applicable and land use schemes may be so amended;
- (m) provide the spatial expression of the coordination, alignment and integration of sectoral policies of all municipal departments;
- (n) determine a capital expenditure framework for the municipality's development programmes, depicted spatially;
- (o) determine the purpose, desired impact and structure of the land use management scheme to apply in that municipal area; and
- (p) include an implementation plan comprising of-
  - (i) sectoral requirements, including budgets and resources for implementation;
  - (ii) necessary amendments to a land use scheme;
  - (iii) specification of institutional arrangements necessary for implementation;
  - (iv) specification of implementation targets, including dates and monitoring indicators; and
  - (v) specification, where necessary, of any arrangements for partnerships in the implementation process."

The Department of Co-operative Governance as well as the Department of Rural Development and Land Affairs have made numerous efforts to assist municipalities with the compilation of SDFs by way of providing assessments and guidelines.

It is also very important to note that a key component of the uMhlathuze spatial development environmental is the Richards Bay Port. The Port Development Framework, as maintained by the National Ports Authority, does inform the compilation of the uMhlathuze SDF. More specifically, the Port Development Framework is a visual representation of the future development and extent of the Richards Bay Harbour, and has a planning horizon of up to 100 years. The Municipality has therefore been aligning its spatial planning to the Port Development Framework and, by default, has an extended planning horizon applicable to its SDF.

### 1.3 PREPARATION OF FIRST REVIEW OF 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 SDF METHODOLOGY AND APPROACH

The methodology/approach that has been followed in this first review of the 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 SDF mainly focuses on attaining further with the requirements of Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act (SPLUMA No. 16 of 2013).

Broadly, the approach used in the 2017/2018 SDF preparation is therefore as follows:

- Adhered to the Guidelines for the Development of Spatial Development Frameworks: the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform
- COGTA Spatial Planning Guidelines
- The use of GIS and mapping improvements
- Addressing the MEC for COGTA's Comments on the 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 Spatial Development Framework
- Ongoing Community and Stakeholder Consultation and engagement

### 1.4 COMMENTS FROM THE MEC

The SDF submitted as adopted during May 2017 was assessed under the Cross Cutting KPA. The main comments from this MEC assessment of the uMhlathuze 2017/2018 – 2021/2022 Spatial Development Framework and responses thereto as part of this First Review are summarized hereunder:

**Table 1: MEC Comments and Responses**

SDF not fully SPLUMA compliant	Working towards compliance in 2020. Assistance is being provided through the ICM (Intermediate Cities Municipality) programme of the IUDF. uMhlathuze is a Pilot Municipality of the ICM Programme.
Develop long term development vision as per SPLUMA requirements	As part of the support being accessed with the ICM Support Programme, meaningful stakeholder consultation and a spatial visioning exercise will be undertaken.
Revision of cross-border planning	Engagements have been held with neighbouring municipalities regarding cross-border planning issues.
Final SDF map omitted	A consolidated SDF Map has been included into the report.
Review EMF , Review Action Plans for climate change, air-quality management plan and biodiversity plans to protect the 174 Red Data Species	Climate change programs are ongoing and the municipality is participating at various levels. Various Business Plans have been drafted to assist with the updating of related sector plans.

Develop the Disaster Management Plan as matter of urgency as highlighted on previous comments	The municipality is in a process of developing a new Disaster Management Plan. The Framework has been prepared and accordingly the plan is anticipated to be finalized by 2018/2019.
Ward Based risk profiling be done and spatially presented to indicate risks and vulnerabilities	
<p>SDF Review to include :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Long term spatial vision</li> <li>o Development strategy</li> <li>o Capital Investment Framework (CIF) and</li> <li>o Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) for five years with</li> <li>o Inclusion of projects from other sector departments, mapped with allocated budgets</li> <li>o Projects as outlined in the districts Rural Development Plan</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o CIF and CEF work in progress as part of the ICM Support Programme (IUDF)</li> <li>o Project details as obtained from sector departments have been included.</li> </ul>
Careful consideration of Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs) 2013	Refer to Section 2.6 of the Report.

## 1.5 REPORT STRUCTURE

- o Section 1 Introduction
- o Section 2 Policy Context
- o Section 3 Spatial Analysis
- o Section 4 Demographic and Socio-Economic Analysis
- o Section 5 Environmental Analysis
- o Section 6 Agricultural Review
- o Section 7 Land Reform
- o Section 8 Infrastructure Analysis
- o Section 9 Human Settlement Overview
- o Section 10 Disaster Management
- o Section 11 Spatial Development Framework
- o Section 12 Implementation of the Spatial Development Framework
- o Section 13 Outlines some Projects from Service Providers
- o Section 14 External Development Influences

## **1.6 DATA SOURCES**

Amongst others, the following data sources have been consulted as part of the process:

- uMhlathuze Spatial Development Framework 2017/2018 – 2021/2022
- Ntambanana Spatial Development Framework 2009
- STATSSA 2011 Census results
- STATSSA 2016 Community Survey results
- uMhlathuze IDP 2017/2018 – 2021/2022
- Transnet Richards Bay Port Development Framework
- Outcomes of the Transnet National Ports Authority Due Diligence Investigation for the Acquisition of land for Future Port Expansion: Port of Richards Bay
- King Cetshwayo District Municipality IDP 2017/2018 – 2021/2022
- King Cetshwayo District Municipality SDF 2017/2018 – 2021/2022
- Municipal Sector Plans

## 2. POLICY CONTEXT

The principles underlying planning for efficient use of land and planning for choice and quality of life are detailed in this section. In addition, a summary is provided of the KZN PGDS principles that have been aligned with all relevant national (National Development Plan) and provincial legislation, policies and strategies.

### 2.1 UNITED NATIONS SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT GOALS

The Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) replaced the Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) which were in existence for 15 years. The Sustainable Development Goals is a universally shared common global vision of progress towards a safe, just and sustainable space for all human beings to thrive on the planet. 17 Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) are intended to be “action-oriented, concise and easy to communicate, limited in number, aspirational, global in nature and **universally applicable to all countries**, while taking into **account** different national realities, capacities and levels of development and respecting national policies and priorities.

Figure 1: Application of SDGs to uMhlathuze

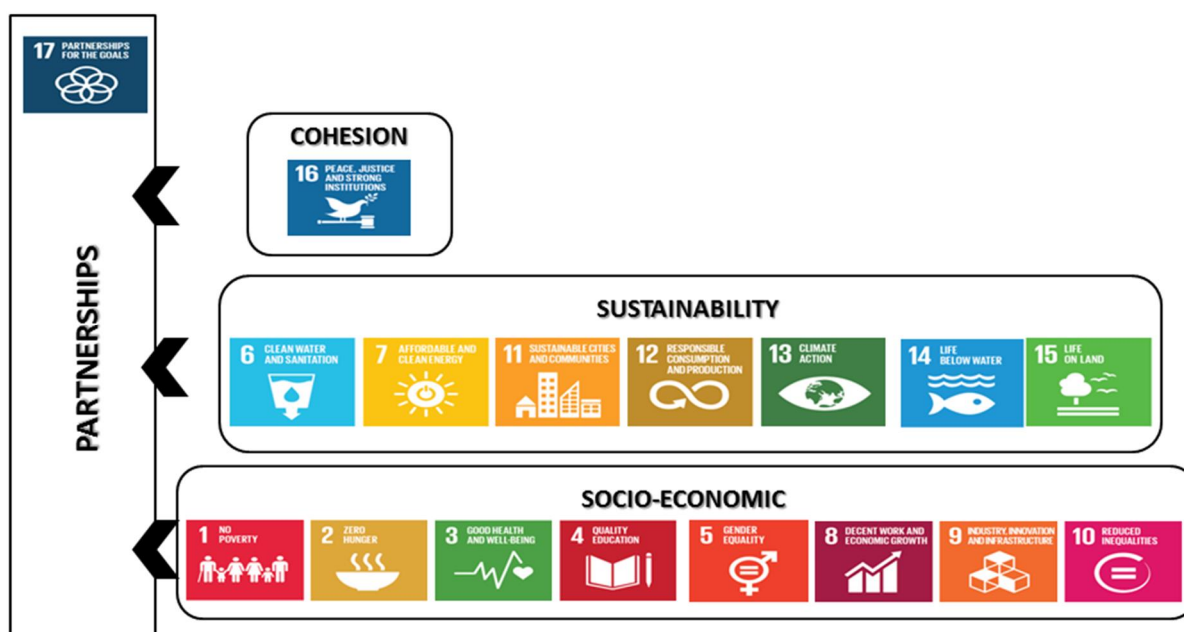


Table 2: Description of SDGs

<b>Goal 1: No Poverty</b>	End poverty in all its forms everywhere
<b>Goal 2: Zero Hunger</b>	End hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition, and promote sustainable agriculture
<b>Goal 3: Good Health and Well-Being for People</b>	Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages

<b>Goal 4: Quality Education</b>	Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote lifelong learning opportunities for all
<b>Goal 5: Gender Equality</b>	Achieve gender equality and empower all women and girls
<b>Goal 6: Clean Water and Sanitation</b>	Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all
<b>Goal 7: Affordable and Clean Energy</b>	Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable and modern energy for all
<b>Goal 8: Decent Work and Economic Growth</b>	Promote sustained, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, full and productive employment and decent work for all
<b>Goal 9: Industry, Innovation and Infrastructure</b>	Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization, and foster innovation
<b>Goal 10: Reducing Inequalities</b>	Reduce income inequality within and among countries
<b>Goal 11: Sustainable Cities and Communities</b>	Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient, and sustainable
<b>Goal 12: Responsible Consumption and Production</b>	Ensure sustainable consumption and production patterns
<b>Goal 13: Climate Action</b>	Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts by regulating emissions and promoting developments in renewable energy
<b>Goal 14: Life Below Water</b>	Conserve and sustainably use the oceans, seas and marine resources for sustainable development
<b>Goal 15: Life on Land</b>	Protect, restore and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss
<b>Goal 16: Peace, Justice and Strong Institutions</b>	Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable and inclusive institutions at all levels
<b>Goal 17: Partnerships for the Goals</b>	Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalize the global partnership for sustainable development

There is a very strong correlation between some of the activities being undertaken/pursued in the uMhlathuze Municipality and the SDGs. Some more detailed narrative is provided hereunder.

**Table 3: Application of SDGs to uMhlathuze**

SDG	Goal Description	Application to uMhlathuze
6	Ensure available and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o The uMhlathuze Municipality is a Water Services Authority (WSA) and the Water Service Provider (WSP).</li> <li>o The Municipality has prepared Water and Sewer Bulk Master Plans to inform water and sewer planning and investment. These plans are in the process of updating post the August 2016 Local Government Elections.</li> <li>o Backlog eradication is a priority. In context of the revised municipal boundaries, exact backlogs are being confirmed.</li> <li>o The municipality aims to achieve universal coverage of water and sanitation services over its whole area.</li> <li>o The municipality is undertaking a feasibility study for waste water re-use in the municipal area.</li> <li>o A desalination plant has also been developed in the municipal area.</li> </ul>
7	Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable and modern energy for all	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Investigations are underway in the uMhlathuze Municipality for gas to power energy solutions.</li> </ul>
9	Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialization and foster innovation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o The establishment of a Techno Hub in Richards Bay is being pursued, on a co-development principle, between the Richards Bay IDZ (Industrial Development Zone) and the uMhlathuze Municipality.</li> <li>o During 2002, the Downstream Aluminum Centre for Technology (DACT) was launched with support from the DTI. The Centre is an incubator that assists potential entrepreneurs from local and emerging communities.</li> </ul>
11	<p>Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable.</p> <p>Goal 11.1 ... that citizens have access to adequate, safe and affordable housing and basic services, and upgrade slums.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o The uMhlathuze Municipality has resolved to establish Human Settlement Restructuring Zones. These restructuring zones are intended as an instrument (among others) to pursue restructuring of South African cities. This is essentially about integration: economic, racial and social. Restructuring is largely about</li> </ul>

SDG	Goal Description	Application to uMhlathuze
	<p>Goal 11.3 ... that all countries must enhance inclusive and sustainable urbanization and capacities for participatory, integrated and sustainable human settlement planning and management ...</p> <p>Goal 11.a ... countries must support positive economic, social and environmental links between urban, peri-urban and rural areas ...</p> <p>Goal 11.b requires that by 2020 all countries must increase the number of cities and human settlements adopting and implementing integrated policies and plans towards inclusion, resource efficiency, mitigation and adaptation to climate change, resilience to disasters etc.</p>	<p>moving away from housing interventions that entrench/enforce or in any way maintain the spatial status quo, which reinforces certain social and economic disparities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o In line with the above, three Human Settlement projects have been initiated within these identified restructuring zones namely the Aquadene Integrated Human Settlements Project (bulk services under construction), Empangeni Integrated Residential Project (services installation underway) and Phase 6 and 8 of the Dumisani Makhaya Village project.</li> </ul>
13	Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts by regulating emissions and promoting developments in renewable energy	The uMhlathuze Mayor signed the Covenant of Mayors on Climate Change and Energy. Noting that electricity is not the only sector contributing to GHG emissions. Waste; fuel consumption; transport planning and elements of spatial planning also contribute to GHGs. Apart from investigating gas to power solutions, the municipality is investigating in details waste water re-use as well. Options for the diversion of municipal solid waste away from landfill sites is being finalized. A desalination plant has also been developed in the municipal area.
17	Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalize the global partnership for sustainable development	The uMhlathuze Municipality is involved in partnerships with (1) ICLEI and the (2) International Water Stewardship Program to ensure the Municipality benefits from, amongst others, low emissions development programmes and efforts to ensure sustainability and water security within important catchments.

The goal to significantly access adequate, safe and affordable housing; support social, economic and environmental links as well as increasing human settlements which mitigate and adapt to climate is of particular relevance to the Municipality and is addressed in the National Housing Code; National Upgrading Support Programme; National Development Plan; Provincial Growth and Development Strategy and Outcome 8 strategic objectives.



uMhlathuze's integrated planning and spatial development framework processes are based and influenced by policies and planning processes at international, national, provincial and district levels. It is the intention of uMhlathuze Municipality to contribute to growth and development within King Cetshwayo District, KwaZulu-Natal and to South Africa at large.

The uMhlathuze Municipality, through its Mission and Vision, intends to contribute to ensure that the objectives of the United Nations (UN) Sustainable Developments Goals (SDGs) are realised and implemented.

## **2.2 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

### **2.2.1 SUMMARY OF THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

The National Development Plan is a plan for the country to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030 through uniting South Africans, unleashing the energies of its citizens, growing an inclusive economy, building capabilities, enhancing the capability of the state and leaders working together to solve complex problems.

The plan has the following high-level objectives to be achieved by 2030:

- Reduce the number of people who live in households with a monthly income below R419 per person (in 2009 prices) from 39% to zero.
- Reduce inequality, as measured by the Gini coefficient, from 0.69 to 0.6.

Amongst others, the following enabling milestones are noted from the Plan:

- Increase employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million in 2030.
- Raise per capita income from R50 000 in 2010 to R120 000 by 2030.
- Establish a competitive base of infrastructure, human resources and regulatory frameworks.
- Ensure that skilled, technical, professional and managerial posts better reflect the country's racial, gender and disability makeup.
- Broaden ownership of assets to historically disadvantaged groups.
- Provide affordable access to quality health care while promoting health and wellbeing.
- Establish effective, safe and affordable public transport.
- Ensure that all South Africans have access to clean running water in their homes.
- Make high-speed broadband internet universally available at competitive prices.
- Ensure household food and nutrition security.
- Broaden social cohesion and unity while redressing the inequities of the past.
- Play a leading role in continental development, economic integration and human rights.

With specific reference to the youth of South Africa, the NDP notes that South Africa has an urbanising, youthful population. This presents an opportunity to boost economic growth, increase employment and reduce poverty.

It should also be noted that the National Development Plan makes a firm commitment to achieving a minimum standard of living. Income, through employment or social security, is critical to defining living standards, but human beings need more than income. They need adequate nutrition, they need transport to get to work, and they desire safe communities and clean neighbourhoods. These elements require action either from individuals, government, communities or the private sector.

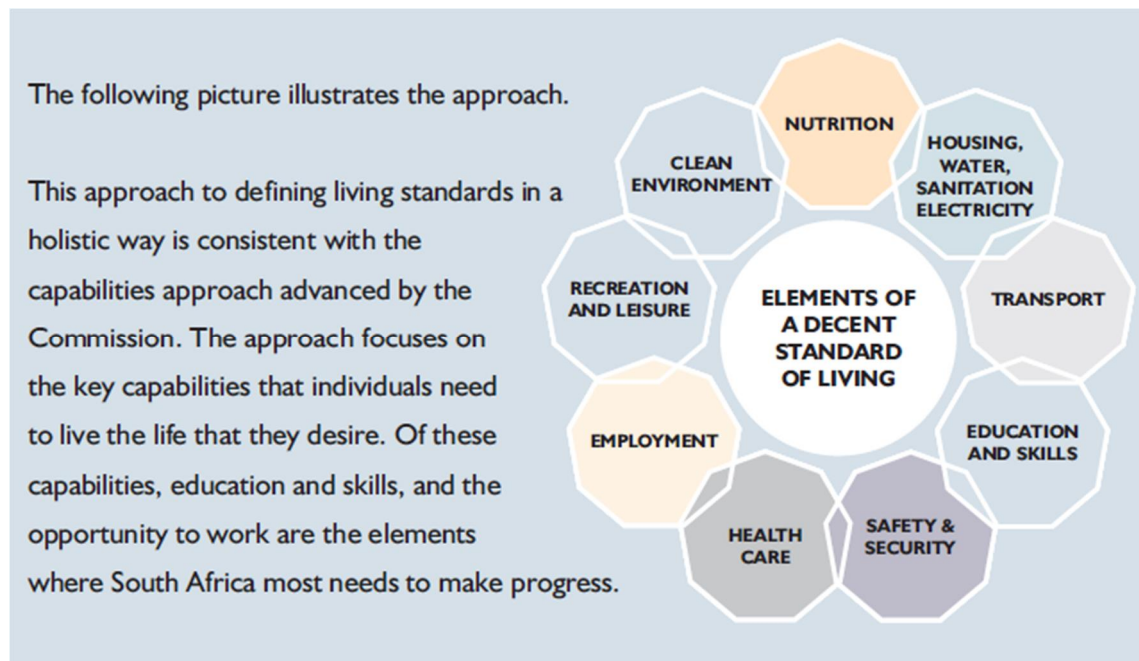
## **2.2.2 SPATIAL FOCUS AREAS OF THE NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

The following provides a summary of some of those aspects of the NDP that have a spatial implication or response.

- Increase the quality of education so that all children have at least two years of preschool education and all children in grade 3 can read and write.
- Provide affordable access to quality health care while promoting health and wellbeing.
- Establish effective, safe and affordable public transport.
- Produce sufficient energy to support industry at competitive prices, ensuring access for poor households, while reducing carbon emissions per unit of power by about one-third.
- Ensure that all South Africans have access to clean running water in their homes.
- A strategy to address poverty and its impacts by broadening access to employment, strengthening the social wage, improving public transport and raising rural incomes.
- Boost private investment in labour-intensive areas, competitiveness and exports, with adjustments to lower the risk of hiring younger workers.
- Interventions to ensure environmental sustainability and resilience to future shocks.
- New spatial norms and standards – densifying cities, improving transport, locating jobs where people live, upgrading informal settlements and fixing housing market gaps.
- Develop community safety centres to prevent crime and include youth in these initiatives.

It should also be noted that the National Development Plan makes a firm commitment to achieving a minimum standard of living. Income, through employment or social security, is critical to defining living standards, but human beings need more than income. They need adequate nutrition, they need transport to get to work, and they desire safe communities and clean neighbourhoods. These elements require action either from individuals, government, communities or the private sector as indicated hereunder.

**Figure 2: Elements of a decent Standard of Living**



### 2.2.3 NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN PRIORITIES

The National Planning Plan priorities and its alignment with Municipal Strategic Goals are summarized in the table below:

**Table 4: National Development Plan Priorities**

No. (in no specific order)	National Plan Priorities	uMhlathuze Alignment thereof
1	Create jobs	Goal 3: Viable Economic Growth and Development <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Objective 3.1.2 : Stimulate key sectors that promote economic growth and create jobs</li> </ul>
2	Expand infrastructure	Goal 2 : Integrated infrastructure and efficient services <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Objective 2.1.1: To expand and maintain infrastructure in order to improve access to basic service and promote local economic development</li> </ul>
3	Use resources properly	Goal 1 : Democratic, responsible, transparent, objective and equitable municipal governance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Objective 1.1.1 : To ensure effective and efficient administration complying with its legal mandates</li> </ul>
4	Inclusive planning	Goal 1 : Democratic, responsible, transparent, objective and equitable municipal governance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Objective 1.1.4: To promote a municipal governance system that enhances and embraces the system of participatory governance.</li> </ul>

<b>No. (in no specific order)</b>	<b>National Plan Priorities</b>	<b>uMhlathuze Alignment thereof</b>
5	Quality education	Municipal Mission <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Improve Citizens skills levels and education</li> </ul>
6	Quality healthcare	Goal 3.3 : Safe and healthy living environment
7	Build a capable state	Goal 1 : Democratic, responsible, transparent, objective and equitable municipal governance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Objective 1.1.1 : To ensure effective and efficient administration complying with its legal mandates</li> </ul>
8	Fight corruption	Mission <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Creation of Secure and Friendly City Through Fighting Crime</li> </ul>
9	Unite the nation	Goal 3.4: Social Cohesion <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Objective 3.4.1 : To promote Social Cohesion</li> </ul>

## 2.3 INTEGRATED URBAN DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK (IUDF)

The Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF) is a policy framework guiding the reorganization of the urban system of South Africa so that cities and towns can become inclusive, resource efficient and adequate places to live, as per the vision outlined in the National Development Plan (NDP).

The overall outcome of the IUDF is spatial transformation. This new focus for South Africa steers urban growth towards a sustainable growth model of compact, connected and coordinated cities and towns. The IUDF implementation plan identifies a number of short term proposals to achieve spatial transformation.

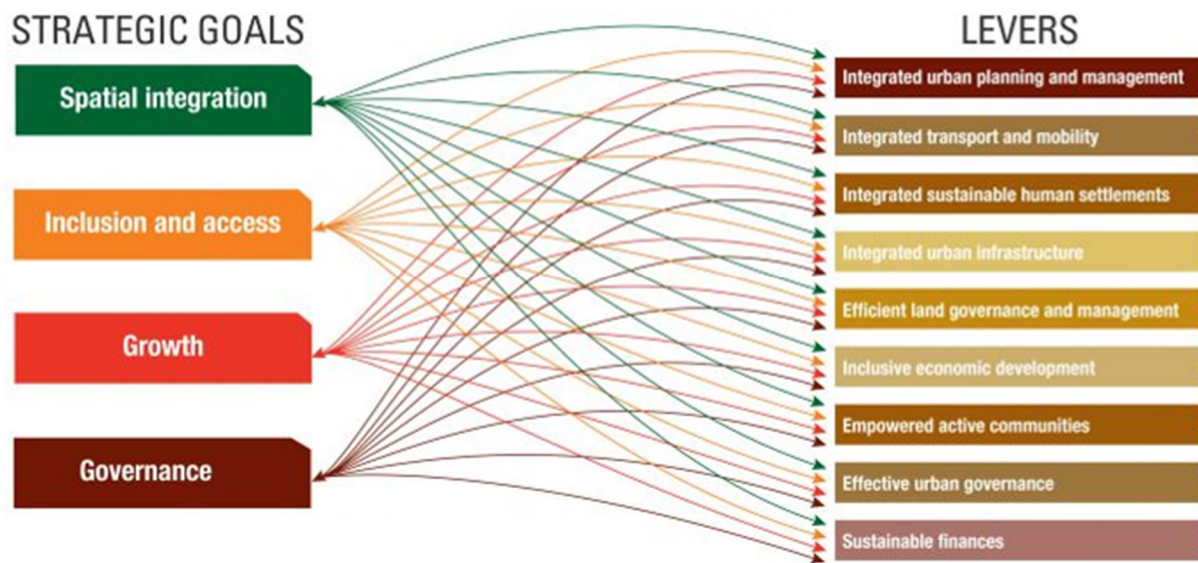
The overall objective of the IUDF is to create efficient urban spaces by:-

- o Reducing travel costs and distances
- o Aligning land use, transport planning and housing
- o Preventing development of housing in marginal areas
- o Increasing urban densities and reducing sprawl
- o Shifting jobs and investment toward dense peripheral townships
- o Improving public transport and the coordination between transport modes

The IUDF has its premise on the following nine levers:

1. Integrated Urban Planning and Maintenance
2. Integrated Transport and Mobility
3. Integrated and Sustainable Human Settlements
4. Integrated Urban Infrastructure
5. Efficient land governance and management
6. Inclusive economic development
7. Empowered active communities
8. Effective urban governance
9. Sustainable finances

**Figure 3: Strategic Goals and Levers of the IUSF**



These listed levers relate very specifically to the pillar of spatial transformation and both are embraced by the Municipality. The Municipality is planning and implementing for improved public transport, investment is aimed at aiding the Township Economy and a number of processes are underway to establish integrated human settlements in the area. Specific projects are identified in the SDF Implementation Plan (Section 12) in support of spatial transformation and in line with the listed levers.

National CoGTA, through the ICM (Intermediate City Municipality) City Support Programme is supporting the uMhlathuze Municipality, as an identified as a pilot municipality to draw on a technical support grant to:

- Access top level global expertise to assist it with diagnostic analysis, land use/spatial planning, long-term infrastructure planning, capital projects management and technical support in specific areas.
- Access a suite of nationally developed tools from the City Support Programme, MISA and COGTA (Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs) which have been piloted in other metropolitan areas around the country.
- Obtain support from COGTA to develop a municipal SDF in terms of SPLUMA, which addresses spatial integration issues in the municipality, and around which national and provincial departments will coordinate their efforts.
- Obtain support for the development of a Capital Expenditure Framework (CEF) in order to meet the criteria for accessing the Integrated Urban Development Grant.

The above support programme has commenced.

## 2.4 FOURTEEN (14) NATIONAL OUTCOMES

The 14 National Outcomes that all governments must align to are:

**Table 5: Fourteen National Outcomes**

No.	National Outcome	uMhlathuze Alignment thereof
1	Quality basic education	Mission : Improve Citizens Skills levels and Education
2	A long and healthy life for all South Africans	Mission : Improve Quality of Citizens health
3	All people in South Africa are and feel safe	Mission : Creation of Secure and Friendly City through Fighting Crime
4	Decent employment through inclusive economic growth	Mission : Job creation through Economic Growth
5	Skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path	Mission : Improve Citizens Skills levels and Education
6	An efficient, competitive and responsive infrastructure network	Goal 2 : Sustainable Infrastructure and Service Delivery
7	Vibrant, equitable, sustainable rural communities contributing towards food security for all	Mission: Planned Rural Development Interventions
8	Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life	Goal 2 : Sustainable Infrastructure and Service Delivery  Objective 2.3 : Integrated Urban and rural development
9	Responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system	Goal 1 : Good Governance <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Objective 1.1: Democratic, responsible, transparent, objective and equitable municipal governance</li> <li>o Objective 1.2 : Compliance with relevant legislation and policies</li> <li>o Objective 1.3 : Uninterrupted service delivery</li> <li>o Objective 1.4: Public Safety and Security and protection of Council property</li> </ul>
10	Protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources	Goal 2 :- Sustainable Infrastructure and Service Delivery Objective 2. 5:Environmental Sustainability
11	Create a better South Africa, a better Africa, and a better world	Goal 3 : Social and Economic Development
12	An efficient, effective and development oriented public service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship	Goal 1 : Good Governance Goal 2 :Sustainable Infrastructure and Service Delivery Goal 3: Social and Economic Development Goal 4 : Institutional Development Goal 5 : Sound Financial Management
13	Social Protection	Goal 3.2: Public Safety and Security <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Objective 3.2.1: Provision of efficient and</li> </ul>

No.	National Outcome	uMhlathuze Alignment thereof
		effective security services o Objective 3.2.2: To ensure provision of fire and rescue services
14	Social Cohesion	Goal 3.4: Social Cohesion o Objective 3.4.1.1: Development of sports and recreation programmes o Objective 3.4.1.2: Development of community facilities o Objective 3.4.1.3: Development of Arts and Culture Strategy

## 2.5 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL PRIORITIES

The five (5) National and six (6) Provincial Priorities, as well as their alignment to uMhlathuze Municipality goals and objectives include the following:

**Table 6: National and Provincial Priorities**

No.	Five National (Including 6 <sup>th</sup> Provincial) Priorities	uMhlathuze Alignment thereof
1	Job creation (Decent work and Economic growth)	Goal 3: Social and Economic Development o Objective 3.3: create environment conducive for economic growth and development Municipal Mission : Job Creation Through Economic Growth
2	Education	Municipal Mission o Improve Citizens skills levels and education
3	Health	Goal 3 : Social and Economic Development o Objective 3.1 : Safe and Healthy Living Environment Municipal Mission : Improve Quality of Citizens Health
4	Rural development, food security and land reform	Goal 2 :Sustainable Infrastructure and Service Delivery o Objective 2.3 : Integrated urban and Rural development Municipal Mission: Planned Rural Development Interventions
5	Fighting crime and corruption	Goal 1 : Good Governance o Objective 1.1 : Democratic, responsible, transparent, objective and equitable municipal governance

No.	Five National (Including 6 <sup>th</sup> Provincial) Priorities	uMhlathuze Alignment thereof
		Municipal Mission : Creation of Secure and Friendly City through Fighting crime
6	Nation-building and good governance	<p>Goal 1 : Good Governance</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Objective 1.1 : Democratic, responsible, transparent, objective and equitable municipal governance</li> </ul> <p>Goal 3 : Social and Economic Development</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Objective 3. 2 : Social Cohesion</li> </ul>

## 2.6 STRATEGIC INTEGRATED PROJECTS (SIPS)

The Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission (PICC) identified 18 SIPs of which the following have direct relevance to the uMhlathuze Municipality:

**Table 7: Strategic Integrated Projects**

<b>SIP 1</b> <b>Unlocking the northern mineral belt with Primary Mineral Reserves with the Waterberg as the catalyst</b>	The rail capacity between Mpumalanga and Richards Bay is relevant in in this instance. The uMhlathuze Municipality has budgeted R100 million to spend on the electricity line to RBCT to avoid future failure of electricity supply to this large export facility. The Port expansion of Richards Bay is a permanent discussion item between the uMhlathuze Municipality and the Richards Bay Port (Transnet).
<b>SIP 2</b> <b>Durban-Free State-Gauteng logistics and industrial corridor</b>	A logistics and industrial corridor is in place between Durban and Richards Bay. Issues relating to access to ports as well as the development of airport precincts are relevant in the context of uMhlathuze.
<b>SIP 6</b> <b>Integrated municipal infrastructure project</b>	Although the uMhlathuze Municipality is not one of the 23 least resourced districts in the country, the principle of addressing maintenance backlogs and upgrades in water, electricity and sanitation bulk infrastructure applies to the uMhlathuze municipal area. Also, road maintenance is imperative to enhance service delivery.
<b>SIP 8</b> <b>Green energy in support of the South African economy</b>	Numerous green economy initiatives are either being pursued or supported by the uMhlathuze Municipality in its area of jurisdiction.



<b>SIP 18</b> <b>Water and sanitation infrastructure</b>	Universal backlog eradication in respect of water and sanitation. To achieve this, new infrastructure, rehabilitation as well as improved management of infrastructure is required.
---	---

## 2.7 STATE OF THE NATION ADDRESS (SONA)

The State of the Nation Address is important for all South Africans because it outlines government's Programme of Action for the year ahead. The Programme of Action is government's plans for the country and people of South Africa. This was President Ramaphosa's First State of the Nation Address (SONA) to the joint sitting of the two houses of Parliament since his election on the 15<sup>th</sup> of February 2018. The following is a summary of the country's action plan for the 2018/2019 Year:-

FOCUS AREA	ACTION PLAN
<b>Transformation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Support black industrialists – to build a new generation of black and women producers that are able to build enterprises of significant scale and capability</li> <li>Use competition policy to open markets to new black entrants.</li> <li>Invest in the development of township and rural enterprises.</li> </ul>
<b>Infrastructure</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Assemble team to speed up implementation of new projects, particularly water projects, health facilities and road maintenance.</li> </ul>
<b>Mining</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Intensify engagements with all stakeholders on the Mining Charter.</li> <li>Finalise the MPRDA Amendment Bill by end of first quarter this year.</li> <li>Stakeholder engagement to deal with mining fatalities.</li> </ul>
<b>Small business, co-ops, township enterprises</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Honour 30% of procurement allocation to these enterprises.</li> <li>Invest in SME incubation.</li> <li>Welcome SME Fund initiative by corporate sector.</li> </ul>
<b>Land and agriculture</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accelerate land redistribution programme AND make more land available.</li> <li>Expropriate land without compensation, our approach, taking into account food security, agricultural production and growth of the sector.</li> </ul>
<b>Fourth industrial revolution</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Digital Industrial revolution commission to be established.</li> <li>Allocation of spectrum to reduce barriers to entry.</li> </ul>
<b>National Minimum Wage</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Introduce NMW by May 1 benefiting more than 6 million South Africans.</li> </ul>
<b>Health and NHI</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scale up our testing and treating campaign by initiating an additional two million people on anti-retroviral treatment by December 2020.</li> <li>The NHI Bill is now ready to be processed through government and will be submitted to Parliament in the next few weeks.</li> </ul>
<b>Education</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This year free higher education and training will be available to first year students from households with a</li> </ul>

	<p>gross combined annual income of up to R350,000.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o All public schools have begun offering an African language.</li> <li>o First National Senior Certificate examination on South African Sign Language, which will be offered to deaf learners at the end of 2018.</li> </ul>
<b>Social Grants</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Urgently take decisive steps to comply with all directions of the Constitutional Court.</li> <li>o Take action to ensure no person in government is undermining implementation deadlines set by the court.</li> </ul>
<b>Social Sector/Civil Society</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Convene a Social Sector Summit during the course of this year to recognise the critical role they play in society.</li> </ul>
<b>State/governance</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Review the funding models of SOEs and other measures. Change the way that boards are appointed. Remove board members from any role in procurement.</li> </ul>
<b>Corruption/state capture</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o The commission of inquiry into state capture to commence its work shortly.</li> <li>o The Commission should not displace the regular work of the country's law enforcement agencies in investigating and prosecuting any and all acts of corruption.</li> <li>o Urge professional bodies and regulatory authorities to take action against members who are found to have acted improperly and unethically.</li> <li>o Urgently attend to the leadership issues at the National Prosecuting Authority to ensure that this critical institution is stabilised and able to perform its mandate unhindered.</li> <li>o Appoint a Commission of Inquiry into Tax Administration and Governance of SARS. Visit every national department to engage with senior leadership to ensure that the work of government is effectively aligned.</li> </ul>

## 2.8 STATE OF THE PROVINCE ADDRESS (SOPA)

The Premier of KwaZulu-Natal, Premier Willie Mchunu delivered the State of the Province address on the 28<sup>th</sup> of February 2018, at the Pietermaritzburg Royal Sports grounds under the theme "Leading with integrity towards growing an inclusive economy for integrated, targeted and effective service delivery to improve quality of life" The State of the Province address was based on the progress made with the implementation of the PDGP and also on the areas of improvement. The table below indicates:

<b>PGDP GOALS</b>	<b>PROGRESS AND INTERVENTIONS</b>
<b>Growing a more inclusive economy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o About 2.536 million people employed and more than 100 000 jobs created in 2017,</li> <li>o Youth employment currently 38.6% (more still needs to be done),</li> <li>o Focus on key drivers and sectors of the economy of KZN and increase new entrance to create employment,</li> <li>o Invest SA KwaZulu-Natal One Stop Shop officially opened in November 2017,</li> <li>o Short term focus on agriculture, manufacturing and tourism sectors</li> <li>o Radical Economic Transformation Program 2018 , focusing on Operation Vula</li> <li>o 6.4% passenger growth in King Shaka airport, with 90%</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>international passengers' increment.</li> <li>Program Sukuma 10 000 to be launched in 2018 , targets 10 000 jobs for youth, women, and people with disabilities</li> <li>KwaZulu-Natal Youth Development Fund to be launched in 2018</li> </ul>
<b>Human Resource Development</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Improvement with the ECD centres enrolments.</li> <li>Improvement of the matric pass rate to 72%</li> <li>R375 million to fund 3500 bursaries, including R20 million for 437 bursaries for orphaned and vulnerable youth.</li> <li>Implementation of the provincial HRD Strategy</li> </ul>
<b>Human and Community Development</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Commitment to ward based approach via operation Sukuma Sakhe</li> <li>Commitment to implement the Poverty Eradication Master Plan, the Social Cohesion, Moral regeneration Strategy and KZN Crime Prevention Strategy</li> <li>Poverty Eradication and RADICAL Agrarian Socio-Economic Transformation (RASET) linked with operation Sukuma Sakhe (OSS)</li> <li>Marginal decline in life expectancy over the 2017, due to unnatural deaths and communicable lifestyle diseases</li> <li>Improvement of Healthcare facilities and increases the number of medical practitioners.</li> <li>About R419 million over three years mobilised to implement prevention programs to reduce new HIV infections and fight TB</li> <li>National Health Insurance (NHI) moving to stage II</li> <li>R1.4 Billion Empangeni Integrated Residential Development project in uMhlathuze among eight provincial catalytic projects</li> <li>Crime statistics decreased to 2.9%</li> <li>Establishment of the Community Complaints and Instability Rapid Response Unit (CCIRRU)</li> </ul>
<b>Development of strategic infrastructure</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A benchmark of at least 20% of the total budget by provincial and municipal be set for maintaining and expanding infrastructure.</li> <li>Review of the development of multi-nodal hubs</li> <li>Decommissioned container handling cranes from the port of Durban will benefit the short term container handling demand in the Port of Richards Bay</li> <li>uMkhuze Airport upgrade underway</li> <li>ICT – Connectivity and speed to be improved and Cost of data to be reduced. Alternative funding models to implement faster the Broadband programme</li> </ul>
<b>Ensuring Environmental Sustainability</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>KwaZulu-Natal AMAFA and Research Institute Bill concluded</li> <li>Committed to Climate Change resolutions</li> </ul>
<b>Providing Governance With Good Clear And Related Policies</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alignment of NDP, PGDP, DGDP, IDP's and Wad Based Plans</li> <li>Committed to reduce fraud and corruption; lifestyle audits of officials in high risk positions will be initiated in collaboration with SARS</li> <li>Rationalisation of provincial public entities is to be concluded</li> </ul> <p>Local Governance matters linked to B2B that needs urgent attention:</p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Improving the level of functionality of public participation structures</li> <li>o Managing relations between Municipal and Traditional Leadership structures</li> <li>o Eliminating unfunded budgets in municipalities</li> <li>o Improving revenue collection and debt management</li> <li>o Increasing the number of municipalities and entities with clean audits</li> <li>o Improving financial provision for Operation and maintenance of critical infrastructure</li> <li>o Eliminating municipalities defaulting on payment arrangements with ESKOM</li> <li>o Preventing water losses ; and</li> <li>o Improving technical capacity to manage growth and development</li> </ul>
<b>Striving for Spatial Equity</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Focus on promoting spatial equity and integrated land use management towards balanced urban and rural development</li> <li>o Inkululeko approach to precinct planning</li> <li>o Review of Provincial Spatial Development Framework underway</li> </ul>

## 2.9 PGDS SPATIAL PLANNING PRINCIPLES

The strategic and targeted nature of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy implies that specific interventions will be undertaken within key geographical areas of Need and Potential.

The Principle of **Environmental Planning** (Bioregional Planning) refers to understanding and respecting the environmental character (potential and vulnerability) and distinctiveness of places and landscapes and promoting balanced development in such areas.

The Principle of **Economic Potential** aims to improving productivity and closing the economic performance gap between the various areas of KwaZulu-Natal towards economic excellence of all areas. Rapid economic growth that is sustained and inclusive is seen as a pre-requisite for the achievement of poverty alleviation.

The Principle of **Sustainable Communities** promotes the building of places where people want to live and work. Again the sense of Quality of Living refers to the balance between environmental quality, addressing social need and promoting economic activities within communities. Often communities within the rural context of KwaZulu-Natal are not located in the areas with perceived highest economic potential. Where low economic potential exists planning and investments should be directed at projects and programmes to address poverty and the provision of basic services in order to address past and current social inequalities towards building sustainable communities.

The Principle of **Local Self-Sufficiency** promotes locating development in a way that reduces the need to travel, especially by car and enables people as far as possible to meet their need locally.

The Principle of **Spatial Concentration** aims to build on existing concentrations of activities and infrastructure towards improved access of communities to social services and economic activities. In practical terms this promotes concentration along nodes and corridors with multi-sectoral investment i.e. roads, facilities, housing etc. This principle will further assist in overcoming the spatial distortions of the past. Future settlement and economic development

opportunities should be channelled into activity corridors and nodes that are adjacent to or link the main growth centres in order for them to become regional gateways.

The Principle of **Sustainable Rural Livelihoods** considers rural areas in a way which is integrated with other decision making associated with the Sustainable Livelihoods framework. This principle requires that spatial planning consider the locality and impact of human, physical, natural, financial and social capitals of an area and spatially structures these in support of each other. Another aspect of this principle is promoting spatial planning in a continuum where rural areas are not addressed as completely separate entities to urban centres, but rather a gradual change in landscape with the potential progression of rural areas to more closely resemble the service standards and quality of living achieved in some urban contexts.

The Principle of **Balanced Development** promotes the linking of areas of economic opportunity with areas in greatest need of economic, social and physical restructuring and regeneration at all spatial scales. In practical terms the principles sought to find a balance between the potentially competing land uses by understanding the relationship and integration between major dimensions within the province and promoting a synergetic mixture of land uses in support of each other at various spatial scales.

The Principle of **Accessibility** simply promotes the highest level of accessibility to resources, services, opportunities and other communities. This is intrinsically linked to transportation planning and should consider localised needs for the transportation of people and goods by various modes of transport as guided by the scale and function of a region.

**LOCAL RELEVANCE:** The uMhlathuze Municipality abides by sound spatial planning principles as extracted hereunder:

1. Environmental awareness and sensitivity with due consideration to EMF and ESMP.
2. Promotion of sustainable communities and the realization of restructuring zones in respect of human settlement projects.
3. Urban integration and densification to decrease economic cost of travel specifically.
4. Introduction of urban development boundary as a measure to achieve spatial concentration.
5. Development of rural framework plans being initiated.

## **2.10 PROVINCIAL SPATIAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY: CORRIDOR AND NODAL FRAMEWORK**

The 2007 PSEDs (Provincial Spatial Economic Development Strategy) has been updated to enhance the original nodes and corridors. In particular, the updated study needed to provide guidance on what types of interventions are needed and which localities. More specifically, it has a rural development focus to address poverty issues and represents a move away from a hierarchical tiered structure to a balanced and integrated network of towns and cities.

The PSEDs has been undertaken in line with the comparative advantage approach as summarized hereunder:

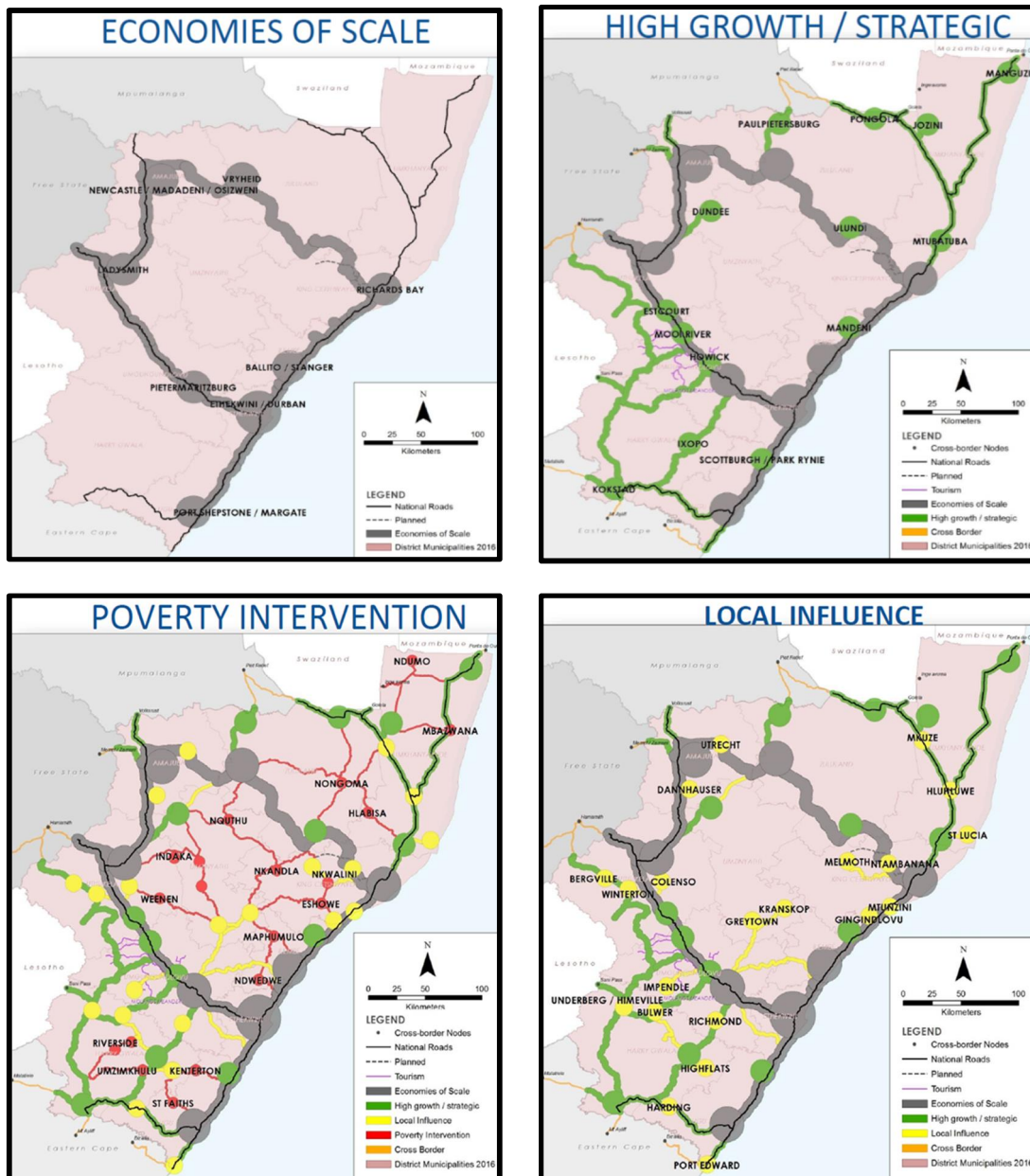
- o Focusing on what type of development should take place in different regions/districts helps to overcome some challenges of spatial prioritization.
- o Investment should occur in the sectors which provide the greatest socio-economic return to investment.
- o It is important to know what each district does best, specifically comparatively best.

To this end, the following set of new criteria was applied for the identification of nodes:

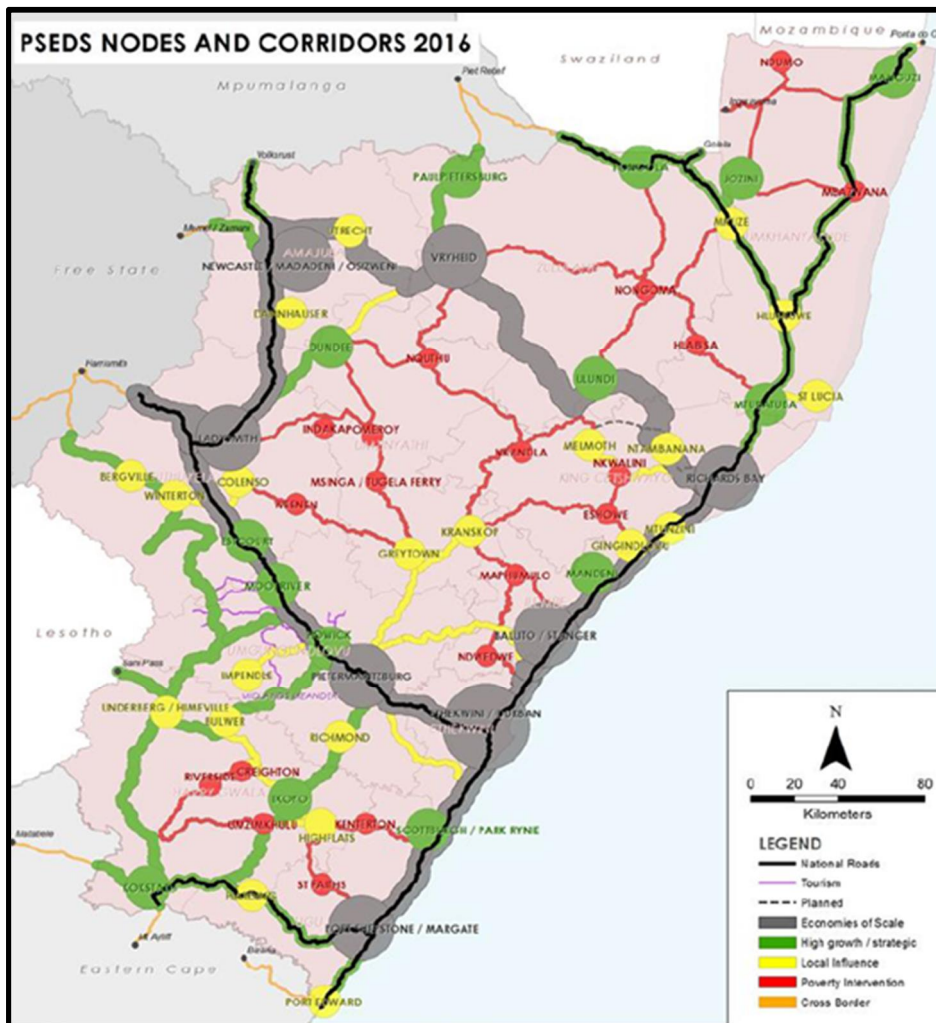
1. Economies of Scale factors as informed by population density contribution to GDP and diverse services to international, national and provincial clients.
2. Strategic factors relating to medium population density areas with high economic growth or high potential for future economic growth.
3. Local influence factors such as centres that are significant as district and municipal centers providing services to the district and local municipality.
4. Poverty alleviation factors relating to high levels of poverty, low unemployment and spatial isolation.

In context of the above, the following set of provincial mapping has been prepared:

**Figure 4: PSEDs Criteria for Identification of Nodes**



**Figure 5: Composite mapping of PSEDs Nodes and Corridors**



## 2.11 SPLUMA PRINCIPLES

The following provides a summary of the development principles contained in the SPLUMA (Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act):

- (a) The principle of **spatial justice**, whereby –
- past spatial and other development imbalances must be redressed through improved access to and use of land;
  - spatial development frameworks and policies at all spheres of government must address the inclusion of persons and areas that were previously excluded, with an emphasis on informal settlements, former homeland areas and areas characterized by widespread poverty and deprivation;
  - spatial planning mechanisms, including land use schemes, must incorporate provisions that enable redress in access to land by disadvantaged communities and persons;
  - land use management systems must include all areas of a municipality and specifically include provisions that are flexible and appropriate for the management of disadvantaged areas, informal settlements and former homeland areas;

- v. land development procedures must include provisions that accommodate access to secure tenure and the incremental upgrading of informal areas; and
  - vi. a Municipal Planning Tribunal considering an application before it, may not be impeded or restricted in the exercise of its discretion solely on the ground that the value of land or property is affected by the outcome of the application.
- (b) The principle of **spatial sustainability** whereby spatial planning and land use management systems must –
- i. promote land development that is within the fiscal, institutional and administrative means of the Republic;
  - ii. ensure that special consideration is given to the protection of prime and unique agricultural land;
  - iii. uphold consistency of land use measures in accordance with environmental management instruments;
  - iv. promote and stimulate the effective and equitable functioning of land markets;
  - v. consider all current and future costs to all parties for the provision of infrastructure and social services in land developments;
  - vi. promote land development in locations that are sustainable and limit urban sprawl; and
  - vii. result in communities that are viable.
- (c) the principle of **efficiency**, whereby –
- i. land development optimises the use of existing resources and infrastructure;
  - ii. decision-making procedures are designed to minimise negative financial, social, economic or environmental impacts; and
  - iii. development application procedures are efficient and streamlined and timeframes are adhered to by all parties.
- (d) the principle of **spatial resilience**, whereby flexibility in spatial plans, policies and land use management systems are accommodated to ensure sustainable livelihoods in communities most likely to suffer the impacts of economic and environmental shocks.
- (e) the principle of **good administration**, whereby –
- i. all spheres of government ensure an integrated approach to land use and land development that is guided by the spatial planning and land use management systems as embodied in this Act;
  - ii. all government departments must provide their sector inputs and comply with any other prescribed requirements during the preparation or amendment of spatial development frameworks;
  - iii. the requirements of any law relating to land development and land use are met timeously;
  - iv. the preparation and amendment of spatial plans, policies, land use schemes as well as procedures for development applications, include transparent processes of public participation that afford all parties the opportunity to provide inputs on matters affecting them; and
  - v. policies, legislation and procedures must be clearly set in order to inform and empower members of the public.

**LOCAL RELEVANCE:** The following actions by the uMhlathuze Municipality are of relevance with regard to the SPLUMA principles:

1. Efforts to densify, improve access to opportunities in non-core areas.



2. Focus on sustainability of natural resource based – including protection of agricultural land resources.

The following is quoted from selected sections of SPLUMA with regard to the preparation of spatial development frameworks:

Section 12 (1) (a): “interpret and represent the spatial development vision of the responsive sphere of government and competent authority”

Section 12 (1) (h): “include previously disadvantaged areas, areas under traditional leadership, rural areas, informal settlements, slums and land holdings of state-owned enterprises and government agencies and address their inclusion and integration into spatial, economic, social and environmental objectives of relevant sphere”.

Section 12 (1) (i): “address historical spatial imbalances in development”

The Municipal SDF is a primary spatial response to the development context, needs and development vision of the municipality (long term development vision). It is a key land use management tool at a strategic level with an important role to play in guiding and managing Municipal decisions relating to the use, development and planning of land.

The Municipal SDF also guides the form and location of future spatial development in a manner that addresses the imbalances of the past i.e. spatial injustice. It enables the municipality to manage its land resources in a developmental and sustainable manner. It provides an analysis of the spatial problems and provides strategies and programs to address the challenges.

## **2.12 SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION**

The concept of Transformation is always associated with social change in South Africa. The National Development Plan 2030 makes a strong statement about the need to “address the challenge of apartheid geography” which is defined in terms of living, working and environmental sustainability. SPLUMA is identified as a tool to give effect to Spatial Transformation.

According to SACN (2013) ... in order to achieve spatial transformation in the cities, government have to rein in the real changes not only in the physical realm but also in the way we approach both the problems and the solutions. The uMhlathuze Municipality, like any other municipality in country is required to undertake processes of spatial transformation in line with the National Development Plan, Provincial Growth and Development Strategy & Plan, Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act. The uMhlathuze Municipal Spatial Transformation Concept is derived from five key Pillars:

**Figure 6: Pillars of Spatial Transformation**



The main objective of uMhlathuze Municipal Spatial Transformation Concept is to address the integrated development, city compacting, structural elements, equal access to land, create sustainable economic development and opportunities which will contribute to job opportunities.

It is also to prioritise development within and along Municipal Nodes and Corridor as well as developing a development partnership with neighbouring Municipalities.

## 2.13 UMHLATHUZE INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT PLAN

The uMhlathuze Municipality has compiled its fourth generation IDP in context of the now expanded municipal area. The following provides a summary of the amended goals and objectives of the Municipality:

**Figure 7: uMhlathuze IDP Goals and Objectives**

NATIONAL KPA 1 : GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION		
GOALS	OBJECTIVES	STRATEGIES
<b>1.1 Democratic, Responsible, Transparent , Objective And Equitable Municipal Governance</b>	1.1.1 To ensure effective and efficient administration complying with its Legal Mandates	1.1.1.1 Provide administrative support for all Council Committees
		1.1.1.2 Strengthening Council Oversight through training on Legislation and Policies
		1.1.1.3 Development of a Corporate Strategy
		1.1.1.4 Development and review of policies that will lead to improved service delivery and legislative compliance
		1.1.1.5 Compliance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act and Compensation for occupational injuries and diseases
	1.1.2 To maintain an organizational performance management system as a tool to monitor progress of service delivery	1.1.2.1 Monitor evaluate measure and review the performance of the municipality against indicators and targets set in the IDP
	1.1.3 Ensure Institutionalisation of Batho Pele Culture	1.1.3.1 Implement a Service Charter
		1.1.3.2 Increase sensitivity of municipal stakeholders to the aspirations of citizens
	1.1.4 To promote a municipal governance system that enhances and embraces the system of participatory Governance	1.1.4.1 Facilitate the Functionality of Ward Committees through continuous capacitation
		1.1.4.2 Development of a Credible Integrated Development plan within prescribed legislative guidelines
		1.1.4.3 Facilitation of Stakeholder and Community participation in policy making
		1.1.4.4 Implementation of communications strategy to help the organisation to communicate effectively
		1.1.4.5 Effective and efficient ICT Systems that enable Informed decision making and communication
	1.1.5 To promote Access to Information and	1.1.5.1 Ensure effective information and accountability prescripts

<b>NATIONAL KPA 1 : GOOD GOVERNANCE AND PUBLIC PARTICIPATION</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
	Accountability	
	1.1.6 To bring the organization to an enabled risk maturity level	1.1.6.1 Implement and maintenance of a sound enterprise risk management
		1.1.6.2 Implement and maintenance of a sound fraud risk management system
		1.1.6.3 Implement and maintenance of business continuity management
	1.1.7 Ensure reliability and maintain independence of internal audit activity	1.1.7.1 Effective Audit Committee
		1.1.7.2 Effective and value adding internal audit activity

<b>NATIONAL KPA 2 : BASIC SERVICES AND INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISION</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
<b>2.1 Integrated infrastructure and efficient services</b>	2.1.1 To expand and maintain infrastructure in order to improve access to basic services and promote local economic development	2.1.1.1 Eradicate water services backlogs through provision of basic water services
		2.1.1.2 Eradicate sanitation services backlogs through provision of basic sanitation services
		2.1.1.3 Eradicate electricity supply backlogs through provision of basic electricity supply services
		2.1.1.4 Provide a weekly domestic solid waste removal service to the community
		2.1.1.5 Provision of public transport infrastructure facilities
		2.1.1.6 Provision and Maintenance of storm water and coastal engineering infrastructure
		2.1.1.7 Strive to improve reliability and service life of Municipal infrastructure, facilities and assets
	2.1.2 To promote the achievement of a non-racial, integrated society, through the development of sustainable human settlements and quality housing	2.1.2.1 Improve community standard of living through accelerated development of Integrated Human settlement

<b>NATIONAL KPA 2 : BASIC SERVICES AND INFRASTRUCTURE PROVISION</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
	2.1.3 To ensure effective Fleet Management	2.1.3.1. Review and Implement Fleet management Plan

<b>NATIONAL KPA 3 : LOCAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
<b>3.1 Viable Economic Growth And Development</b>	3.1.1 To promote and facilitate investment	3.1.1.1 Develop investment promotion and facilitation plan
		3.1.1.2 Develop township economy
		3.1.1.3 Package council land to facilitate economic growth
	3.1.2 Stimulate key sectors that promote economic growth and create jobs	3.1.2.1 Provide support for prioritised sectors
		3.1.2.2 Developing and implement economic development sector plan
	3.1.3 To create enabling environment for the informal economy	3.1.3.1 Review and implement informal economy policy
	3.1.4 Clear City identity	3.1.4.1 To promote the city as destination of choice
	3.1.5 To implement and co-ordinate Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) in a manner that enhances skills development and optimizes decent employment and entrepreneurship	3.1.5.1 Promote economic growth by successful implementation of EPWP community based projects
		3.1.5.2 Promoting economic growth by providing employment opportunities for Women and Youth
		3.1.5.3 Promoting economic growth by providing skills empowerment to the unemployed
<b>3.2 Public Safety and Security</b>	3.2.1 Provision of efficient and effective security services	3.2.1.1 Review and implementation of crime prevention strategy
	3.2.2 To ensure Provision of fire and rescue services	3.2.2.1 Review and Implementation of a fire prevention strategy
<b>3.3 Safe and Healthy Living Environment</b>	3.3.1 Efficient an effective waste management services	3.3.1.1 Review and Implementation of Integrated Waste Management Plan
	3.3.2 To ensure air quality management	3.3.2.1 Implementation of Air Quality Management Strategy
	3.3.3 Cater for alternate future burial option	3.3.3.1 Provision of cemeteries
<b>3.4 Social Cohesion</b>	3.4.1 To promote social cohesion	3.4.1.1 Development of sports and recreation programmes
		3.4.1.2 Development of community facilities
		3.4.1.3 Development of Arts and Culture Strategy

<b>NATIONAL KPA 4 : MUNICIPAL INSTITUTIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND TRANSFORMATION</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
<b>4.1 A Municipality that is Resourced and Committed to attaining the vision and mission of the organisation</b>	4.1.1 To create an appropriate organisational climate that will attract and ensure retention of staff	4.1.1.1 Implement the talent management strategy
		4.1.1.2 Compliancy with Employment Equity Act
		4.1.1.3 Implement EAP programs that promote and support health and well-being of employees
		4.1.1.4 Improve Citizens Skills levels and Education
		4.1.1.5 Create and maintain sound Relationship between management and labour
		4.1.1.6 Maintenance of an organisational structure that in is line with organisational objectives and optimises service delivery

<b>NATIONAL KPA 5 : MUNICIPAL FINANCIAL VIABILITY AND MANAGEMENT</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
5.1 Sound Financial And Supply Chain Management	5.1.1 Compliance with financial legislation and policies	5.1.1.1 GRAP compliance
		5.1.1.2 mSCOA compliant
		5.1.1.3 Review of all financial related policies
		5.1.1.4 Compliance with all MFMA and related local government financial legislation
	5.2.1 Sustainable Financial and supply chain Management	5.2.1.1 Provide continuous Internal Communication on Budget and Financial Management matters
		5.2.1.2 Asset Accounting Management
		5.2.1.3 Accurate and timeous billing and receipting of revenue
		5.2.1.4 Apply Adequate Internal controls
		5.2.1.5 Demand and acquisition management
		5.2.1.6 Contracts and Logistics management
		5.2.1.7 Apply adequate financial management methodologies

<b>NATIONAL KPA 6 : CROSS CUTTING</b>		
<b>GOALS</b>	<b>OBJECTIVES</b>	<b>STRATEGIES</b>
<b>6.1 Integrated Urban and Rural Development</b>	6.1.1 To plan and manage existing and future development	6.1.1.1 Review and Implement Spatial Development Plan
		6.1.1.2 Develop precinct framework plans
		6.1.1.3 Review of Human Settlement Sector Plan
		6.1.1.4 Incremental development of strategic environmental assessment for the entire municipal area
		6.1.1.5 Implementation of uMhlathuze Land Use Scheme
		6.1.1.6 Compliance with SPLUMA by-law and national building act.
		6.1.1.7 Efficient processing of development application and building plans
<b>6.2 Immovable Property Management</b>	6.2.1 To ensure fair valuation of properties	6.2.1.1 Development and maintenance of valuation roll in line with municipal property rates act.
	6.2.2 Effective Management of Council owned Immovable properties.	6.2.2.1 Update immovable asset register
<b>6.3 Disaster Management</b>	6.2.3 To prevent and mitigate disaster incidents	6.2.3.1 Review and Implement Disaster Management Plan

## 2.14 MUNICIPAL ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT TRANSFORMATION ROADMAP

The Municipality embarked on a meticulous and comprehensive process to develop an all-embracing roadmap that will guide the City's interventions and programme of action in relation to economic development, economic transformation and job creation. As a hub of industrial development and investment, the City must position itself as a strategic driver and champion of economic development for the benefit of local enterprises, job seekers, aspirant entrepreneurs and local economy.

The main objective of the roadmap is clarify the City's role in championing economic development, economic transformation and job creation with a view to creating a conducive environment for job intensive and inclusive economic growth. More specifically, the following priority sectors have been identified:

- i. Manufacturing & logistics
- ii. Agriculture, Agro-processing and rural economy
- iii. Maritime & Blue Economy
- iv. Tourism
- v. Wholesale, retail, trade and services
- vi. Mining and beneficiation
- vii. Township economy
- viii. Construction & Built environment
- ix. Green Economy and Energy
- x. ICT & Innovation

## 2.15 UMHLATHUZE VISION 2030 STRATEGIC ROADMAP

During 2017, a Strategic Roadmap for the uMhlathuze Municipality was compiled with a special focus on the identification of critical levers to optimize growth and inclusive development opportunities in the Municipality. The key motivation was formulation of compelling yet practicable strategic goals capable of propelling the city to its next level.

The following strategic initiatives were agreed upon:

1. Improvement of Basic Services
2. Advancing Inclusive Economic Development and Private Sector Investment
3. Social Regeneration and Upliftment
4. Create Environmental Sustainable Development
5. Cross Cutting Initiatives

Hereunder a summary of the respective programmes identified under these strategic initiatives is provided:

**Table 8: Vision 2030 Strategic Roadmap Programmes**

<b>STRATEGIC INITIATIVE: IMPROVEMENT OF BASIC SERVICES</b>	
<b>Programme 1: Basic Services Monitoring and Tracking Programme (Service Delivery Nerve Centre)</b>	To monitor effective delivery of basic services through a 'single view' of the customer and suite of services and projects delivered to communities; in order to prevent duplications of effort and investment, as well as harmonise city's projects and operational activities.
<b>Programme 2: Spatial Transformation and Land Banking</b>	The programme aims to advance spatial transformation goals (equity and access) and strategically forecast long term development goals in order to secure land provision for industrial growth and social purposes.
<b>ADVANCING INCLUSIVE ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND PRIVATE SECTOR INVESTMENT</b>	
<b>Programme 3: Investment Coordination, Monitoring and Alignment</b>	To coordinate and track investment initiatives in the City in order to achieve multi-stakeholder alignment and synergies in the roll-out of private sector investment programmes.
<b>Programme 4: Investment Promotion Initiative</b>	To position the City as an investment and tourism destination of choice to local and international audiences
<b>Programme 5: Logistics and Port-Based Initiatives</b>	The programme aims to optimise the city's competitive position as a Port City and its strategic location along the main route connecting Durban and Mozambique, as well as rail line connecting with the hinterland.



<b>Programme 6: Agricultural Development Initiative</b>	The programme aims to promote and unlock agricultural sector as a feasible and sustainable contributor to economic development of the city.
<b>Programme 7: City of uMhlathuze Knowledge Hub</b>	To establish knowledge repository (virtual / face-to-face) to drive broader business and investor intelligence on the city, support innovation, capture economic and social research, profile trading partners, record project histories and learnings, as well as serve as a base for commissioning ongoing specialist studies relevant to city's development
<b>Programme 8: Investment and Development Funding</b>	The purpose of the programme is to seek supplementary and alternative funding sources meant to activate investment and development in the City - noting the limitations in traditional sources of funding and pressing social provisioning needs.
<b>SOCIAL REGENERATION AND UPLIFTMENT</b>	
<b>Programme 9: Strategic Learning and Growth Initiative</b>	<p>The purpose of the initiative is to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ create interfaces between industry and educational institutions in order to determine skills supply and demand balances</li> <li>○ reconcile learning content priorities between educational institutions and industry to engineer relevance and connectedness</li> <li>○ forecast new skill requirements and facilitating expedited acquisition of such skills through defined partnership agreements and other means</li> <li>○ mobilise and connect the youth of the city with industry and to drive learning, innovation and solutions in line with gainful opportunities</li> </ul>
<b>Programme 10: uMhlathuze City Sports and Arts Initiative</b>	To advance the brand stature, social balance and cohesion of the city through coordinated sports, arts and recreation strategic initiatives
<b>Programme 11: Safety and Security Mobilisation Programme</b>	The programme elevates the agenda of transforming the City of uMhlathuze into a safe and secure environment in which it is fitting to live, work and make business. The programme counteracts the negative insecurity trends and their effects on social well-being, business growth and investment.
<b>Programme 12: Social Regeneration and Engagement Intervention</b>	The programme is a deliberate and structured intervention to counteract moral and social decay within the jurisdiction of the municipality by driving social change programmes and messages through leadership and other community structures.

<b>CREATE ENVIRONMENTALLY SUSTAINABLE DEVELOPMENT</b>	
<b>Programme 13: Climate Change Intervention Programme</b>	The purpose of the programme is to introduce mitigation strategies and management of climate change factors impacting development and welfare of the citizenry in the City
<b>CROSS CUTTING INITIATIVES</b>	
<b>Programme 14: Integrated and Strategic Infrastructure Investment</b>	The purpose of the programme is to develop a long term integrated and strategic infrastructure investment roadmap that is aligned to the Spatial Development Framework and in line with the priorities of the City and investors. This includes infrastructure renewal, upgrade and development of new infrastructure (social and economic infrastructure).
<b>Programme 15: Socio-Economic Transformation Programme</b>	The purpose of the programme is to develop an integrated and focussed socio- economic transformation programme with specific packaged deliverables and interventions aimed at addressing the triple challenges of poverty, unemployment and inequality at local government level working with other spheres of government and social partners

### 3. SPATIAL ANALYSIS

The uMhlathuze Local Municipality is located in the King Cetshwayo District Municipality in the North-Eastern part of KwaZulu-Natal. The uMhlathuze LM is bordered by the following Local Municipalities (LMs) within the King Cetshwayo District:

- Mfolozi (KZ 281)
- uMlalazi (KZ 284)

Following the 2016 Local Government elections, the former Ntambanana Local Municipality was disestablished and a portion of its former area was included into the uMhlathuze Local Municipality. As a result, the uMhlathuze Municipality has an area of 123 325Ha and in 2016, the uMhlathuze population is estimated at to be in the region of 410 465 people.

Richards Bay and Empangeni are the most significant economic centres in the Local Municipality and in the District Municipality. Richards Bay, as a harbour and industrial town, attracts people from surrounding towns, rural settlements and from beyond the district. Empangeni's role mainly as a commercial and service centre to the settlements of Esikhaleni, Eshowe, Nkandla, Buchanana and other rural settlements attracts many people to the range of higher order services available in the town.

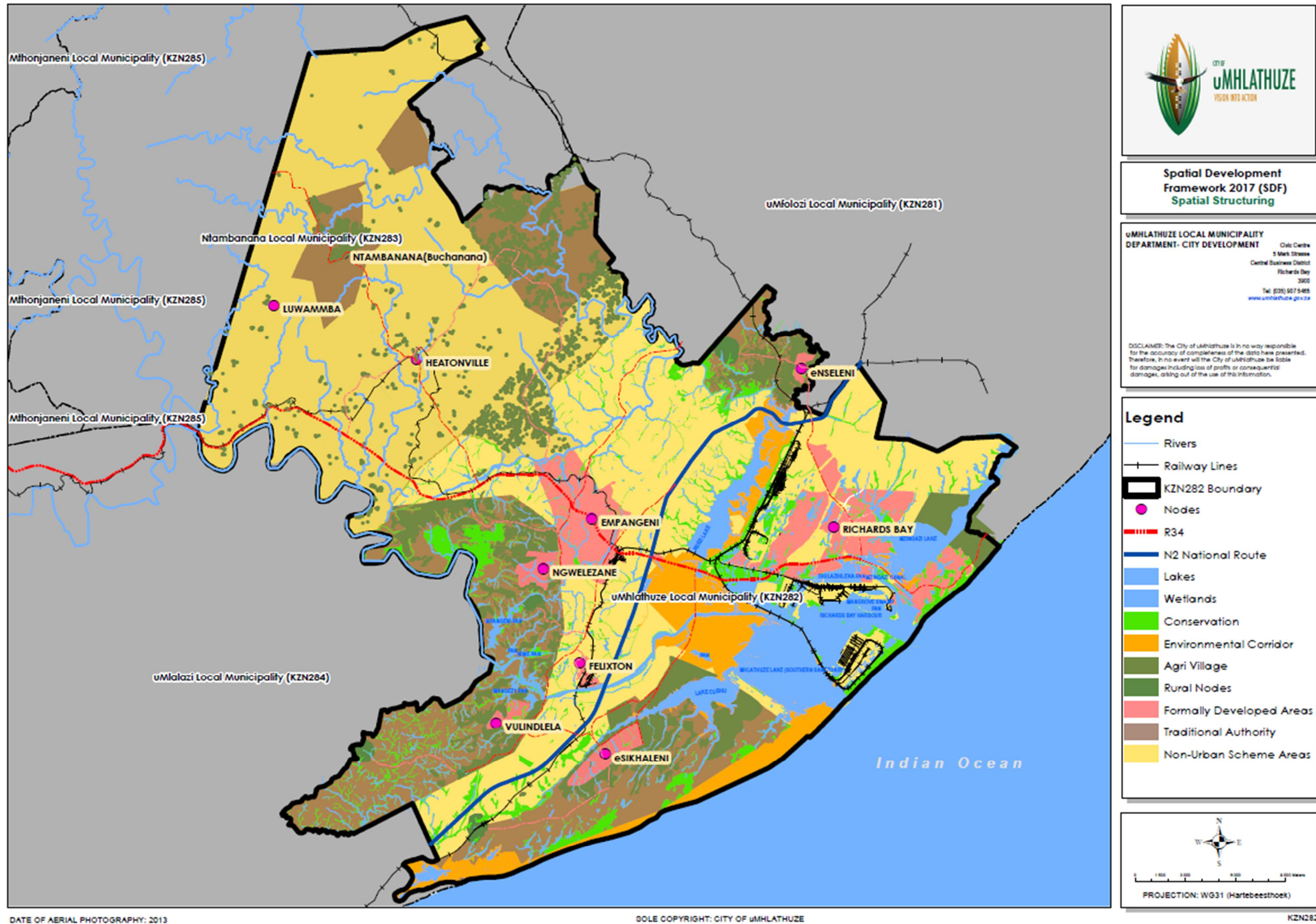
#### 3.1 SPATIAL STRUCTURING ELEMENTS

There are a number of existing natural and man-made phenomenon that have shaped and continue to shape the uMhlathuze Municipality spatial landscape. The area to the east of the Municipality is inundated with a system of wetlands and natural water features such as Lakes Cubhu, Mzingazi, Nsezi and Nhlabane. Major rivers include the Mhlathuze and Nsezi.

The main access into the municipal area is via the N2 in a north south direction and in an east west direction the R34. Other significant roads in the area include the MR431 (that provides a northerly entry into Richards Bay from the N2) as well as the Old Main Road that straddles the N2 on its inland. Railway lines are prevalent in the municipal area but do not provide a passenger service, only a commercial/industrial service is provided.

The municipality has the benefit of about 45km of coastline of which about 80% is in its natural state. Linked to its coastal locality is the Richards Bay deep-water port that has been instrumental in the spatial development of the area in the past and will definitely impact on the areas' future spatial development. There is one airport and a couple of landing strips in the municipal area.

Map 1: Spatial Structuring Elements



The municipality has vast areas of commercial farmlands as well as a number of areas that are significant from an environmental perspective.

The municipal area includes the formal towns of Empangeni, Richards Bay, eSikhaleni, Ngwelezane, eNseleni, Vulindlela and Felixton. Rural settlements include Buchanana, Luwamba, Makwela, Mambuka, Hluma, Matshana and Mabuyela.

### 3.2 LAND OWNERSHIP

The following table provides a breakdown of the land ownership in terms of hectares (Ha) and percentages (%).

**Table 9: Land Ownership Breakdown**

Land Owners	Area(Hectares)	Percentage (%)
Province of KZN	14167	11.49
City of uMhlathuze	4259	3.45
Transnet	2989	2.42
IDZ	107	0.09
Ingonyama Trust Board	63795	51.73
Private	32467	26.33
Lakes	5541	4.49
<b>Total</b>	<b>123325</b>	<b>100.00</b>

The above table indicates that 26% of land within uMhlathuze Municipality is under private ownership and 51% under Ingonyama Trust Board which is normal administered by Traditional Authorities.

One of the biggest Municipal challenges in relation to land ownership is the distribution and allocation of land in the Ingonyama Trust Board land which is mainly administered by Traditional Authorities. Such distribution is common in the peri-urban and infill areas. This situation led to formation of unplanned settlements which put pressure to the Municipality from services provision perspective.

The summary of challenges that are associated with settlements within Peri-Urban and Infill Areas (non-formalised settlements) can be further explained as follow:

- i. **Lack of proper planning:** Under ideal circumstances, settlement planning takes place prior to land allocation and development. The main objective of settlement planning being to ensure and promote sustainable communities and settlements taking into consideration environmental factors, climate change, geotechnical conditions, biodiversity, land legal and basic services issues. Non-planned settlements contribute to generally unsustainable communities and livelihood challenges.
- ii. **Limited basic services:** Unplanned settlements are always subjected to limited services, since planning in these areas always come afterwards and inevitably create challenges for the design and installation of infrastructure. The provision of services in such unplanned areas is treated as in-situ upgrades which is a reaction to community needs with limited sources.
- iii. Settlements are located in the **high risk areas** i.e. environmental sensitive, flood prone areas, wetlands and unstable soils, under power lines, on top of water pipes, sewer pipes etc.: Some structures within non-formalised settlements are located within the

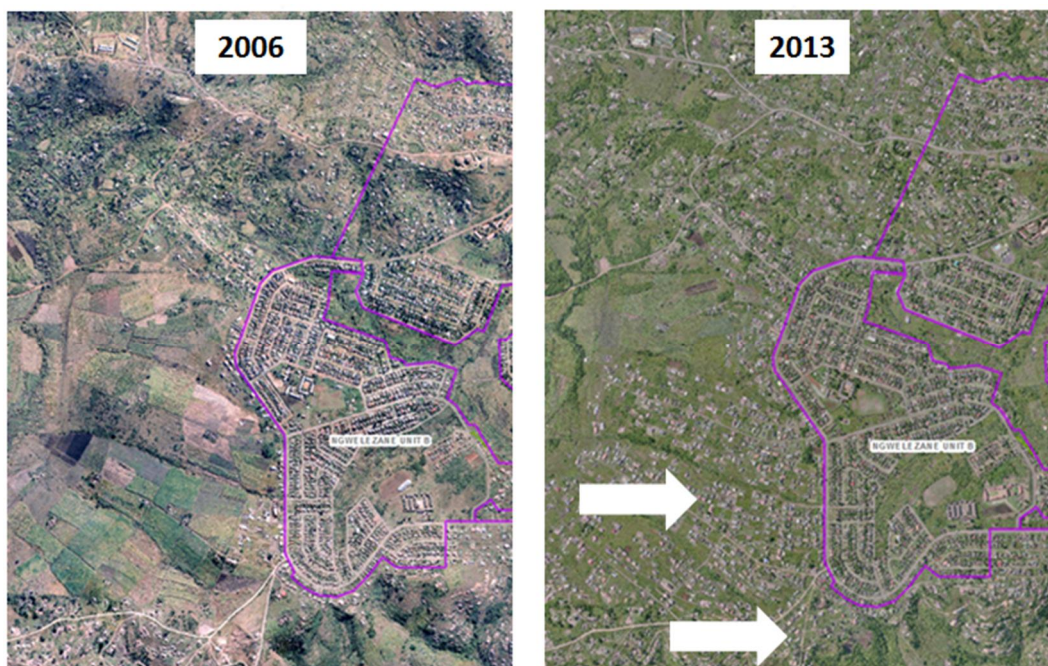


environmental sensitive areas and other high risk areas as listed where no formal planning and development would have taken place if planned.

- iv. **Undesirable Impact on food security:** Land allocation also takes place for residential purposes without assessment of the agricultural value of the land. Sometimes good agricultural land is transformed and used for residential/settlement purposes. The high demand of residential land in the Traditional Council areas has led to a situation where residential development takes precedent in agricultural areas which has a significant impact to food security for humans.
- v. **Undesirable Impact on prime land for grazing:** The random allocation of land without proper guidelines and guiding development frameworks in the peri-urban/infill areas has also contributed to a shortage of grazing land. This has led to a situation where livestock associations from some of these areas are applying to the Municipality to lease land for grazing purposes.
- vi. **Insufficient land for future social and economic facilities due to random distribution of land:** The majority of land that is allocated for residential purposes has led to an increase in population density in these areas. This means that, the demand for land for educational, health and economic facilities also increases. However, the major challenge is that in most cases such needs cannot be accommodated in these areas due to insufficient land being reserved for such purposes.

The following insets provides images of the peri-urban settlement increase between 2006 and 2013 adjoining Ngwelezane and the Richards Bay Airport.

**Figure 8: Peri-urban Development adjoining Ngwelezane**



**Figure 9: Peri-urban Development adjoining the Richards Bay Airport**



It is presented that the above challenges are caused by the limited understanding by stakeholders of the legal mandate of the Municipality as a planning authority with regards to spatial planning, development control, environmental planning, settlement planning etc. - irrespective of land ownership. Traditional Councils are generally not consulting with the Municipality as planning authority on matters relating to settlement planning. As a result, the Municipality is compromised in its ability to efficiently deliver services and formalize development due to the challenges explained on the previous pages. The overall sustainability of settlements is compromised as a result.

In context of the above discussion, the following summary is provided of legislative functions of stakeholders:

### **3.2.1 Functions of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs**

In context of the above, some of the core functions of the Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs is, amongst others:

- to support and enhance the capacity of Traditional Councils
- to ensure the recognition and transformation of Traditional Council areas
- to create an enabling environment for the development of Traditional communities

### **3.2.2 Objectives of Local Government**

Section 152 (1) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa (Act No. 106 of 1996) states that local government are:-

- a) to provide democratic and accountable government for local communities;
- b) to ensure the provision of services to communities in a sustainable manner;
- c) to promote social and economic development;
- d) to promote a safe and healthy environment; and
- e) to encourage the involvement of communities and community organisations in the matters of local government

A municipality has the functions and powers assigned to it in terms of Sections 156 and 229 of the Constitution. Chapter 5 of the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 117 of 1998 clearly defines those functions and powers vested in a local municipality.

In setting out the functions of a Local Municipality, the Municipal Systems Act indicates that the Minister responsible for Local Government may authorize a Local Municipality to perform the following functions of a District Municipality. As such, the uMhlathuze Municipality performs the following:

- i. Potable water supply systems
- ii. Bulk supply of electricity
- iii. Domestic waste-water systems
- iv. Sewage disposal systems
- v. Municipal Health Services

In addition, the objectives of local government are:-

- i. Air and Noise Pollution
- ii. Building, Trading Regulations, Liquor and Public, Nuisance Control
- iii. Fire Fighting Services
- iv. Pounds
- v. Public Places
- vi. Refuse Removal, Refuse Dumps and Solid Waste
- vii. Street Trading
- viii. Street Lighting
- ix. Traffic and Parks
- x. Electricity Reticulation
- xi. Cleansing and Trade Areas
- xii. Beaches and Amusement Facilities
- xiii. Billboards and Display of Advertisements in Public Places
- xiv. Cemeteries, Funeral Parlors and Crematoria
- xv. Licensing, Facilities for Accommodation, Care and Burial of Animals
- xvi. Fencing and Fences
- xvii. Local Amenities
- xviii. Local Tourism
- xix. Municipal Airports
- xx. Municipal Planning
- xxi. Municipal Public Transport
- xxii. Storm Water Management
- xxiii. Local Sport Facilities
- xxiv. Markets Stalls / Trade Areas
- xxv. Municipal Abattoirs
- xxvi. Municipal Parks and Recreation

In context of the above, the following is stated:

The **core function** of a municipality is service delivery and all other activities are seen to be supportive thereof albeit planning for development/service delivery, management of assets, management of land, income generation from leasing of Council assets etc. Care must therefore be taken to ensure that municipal activities work toward achieving sustainable service delivery.



### 3.2.3 Functions of the Ingonyama Trust

Section 2 (b) of the Ingonyama Trust Amendment Act (Act No. 9 of 1997) states that:

“The Trust shall, in a manner not inconsistent with the provisions of this Act, be administered for the benefit, material welfare and social well-being of the members of the tribes and communities as contemplated in the KwaZulu Amakhosi and Iziphakanyiswa Act, 1990 (Act No. 9 of 1990)”

The Ingonyama Trust Board is responsible for the administration of Ingonyama Trust land which is about 2.8 million hectares in extent spread throughout the province of KwaZulu-Natal. The core business of the Trust is to manage the land for the *“material benefit and social well-being of the individual members of the tribes”*.

### 3.2.4 Functions of Traditional Councils

Section 8(1) of the KwaZulu-Natal Traditional Leadership and Governance Act (Act No. 5 of 2005) provides for the functions of the Traditional Councils to inter alia include:-

- administer the affairs of the traditional community in accordance with customs and tradition;
- assist, support and guide traditional leaders in the performance of their functions;
- work together with municipalities in the identification of community needs;
- facilitate the involvement of the traditional community in the development or amendment of the integrated development plan of a municipality in whose areas that community resides;
- recommend, after consultation with the relevant Local House and the Provincial House of Traditional Leaders, appropriate interventions to government that will contribute to development and service delivery within the area of jurisdiction of the traditional council;
- participate in the development of policy and legislation at local level;
- participate in the development programmes of municipalities and of the provincial and national spheres of government;
- promote the ideals of co-operative governance, integrated development planning, sustainable development and service delivery;
- promote indigenous knowledge systems for sustainable development and disaster management;
- alert any relevant municipality to any hazard or calamity that threatens the area of jurisdiction of the traditional council in question, or the well-being of people living in such area of jurisdiction, and to contribute to disaster management in general;
- share information and co-operate with other traditional councils;
- perform the functions conferred by customary law, customs and statutory law consistent with the Constitution.
- to uphold the values of the traditional community;
- reject and proscribe such practices as the sowing of divisions based on tribalism;
- promote peace and stability amongst members of traditional communities; and
- promote social cohesion within the traditional community.

The detailed scrutiny of the Municipal, Ingonyama Trust Board and Traditional Councils objectives and functions, identified the following critical common objectives which need to be the adhered to by all three stakeholders, however co-operation remains a challenge:

- i. Community social well-being
- ii. Encourage sustainable development and service delivery
- iii. Stakeholder involvement in the development planning and decision making

### **3.2.5 Land Allocation Guidelines on Communal Land under Traditional Councils**

There are currently three interdependent levels of authority relevant for planning and land management in Traditional Council areas; namely

- Traditional Councils;
- Ingonyama Trust Board; and
- Municipalities

Normally, the municipalities are not directly involved in the land allocation in traditional council areas. However, they are always required to provide services in these settlements.

During September 2010, the former KZN Provincial Planning and Development Commission prepared the land allocation guidelines on communal land under Traditional Council. The main objective of the guidelines was:

- to promote efficient allocation of communal land by the traditional councils and to promote orderly development including human settlement;
- promote sustainable rural development;
- protection of cultural, agricultural and biodiversity resources; and
- promote safety and security

The following general land allocation guidelines are meant to be followed by Traditional Councils when allocating land

- i. The allocation of land shall be made by a Traditional Council of the area concerned and such allocation shall be confirmed in writing.
- ii. The Traditional Council may only allocate land in an area defined as its area of jurisdiction.
- iii. In the performance of this function, the Traditional Council shall take into account similar developments existing in the area.
- iv. In allocating a site the traditional council shall be guided by the availability of appropriate services and infrastructure, including transportation in the area.
- v. The land allocated will be used or developed only in accordance with the land use plans of the area.
- vi. The Traditional Council should take into account disaster management issues.
- vii. The Traditional Council shall ensure the protection of the natural environmental and cultural resources of the area when allocating land. People may not be allocated sites on wetlands, protected forest, heritage sites, etc.
- viii. The Traditional Council shall ensure the preservation of prime agricultural land and allow a change in land use only in public interest.
- ix. Each household is entitled to one residential site.
- x. Subject to availability of unallocated land, each household is entitled to a portion of arable land.
- xi. An allotment once given remains in the possession of the family and their dependents in accordance with the laws of success, or/ and inheritance, in perpetuity.
- xii. All community members shall have equal access to grazing land unless the rules of the community concerned state otherwise.
- xiii. A person allocated a site may not transfer or sub-let or otherwise dispose his/her allocation without prior written consent of the Traditional Council of the area. The Traditional Council shall not refuse such consent unreasonably.
- xiv. Traditional Council shall make sure that the procedures for allocation, acquisition and termination of land rights are made known to the community.

The Ingonyama Trust Board usually requests municipalities to provide their comments/inputs on lease agreements. However, such requests are mainly for low impact residential development and in most cases some of them already exists and the application is usually submitted for formality purposes.

It happens that, some of the lease applications are not supported by the Municipality due to a number of reasons such as wetland, floodlines, topography, soil conditions etc. but the lease application may still be formalised without considering municipality's input.

### **3.3 SETTLEMENT DENSITIES AND PATTERNS**

Settlement densities are highest in the formal urban areas, i.e. Empangeni, Richards Bay, eSikhaleni, Ngwelezane, eNseleni, Vulindlela and Felixton. Historically, the areas directly adjacent to the above formal urban areas have also been experiencing increasing settlement densification, i.e. the conventional peri-urban areas.

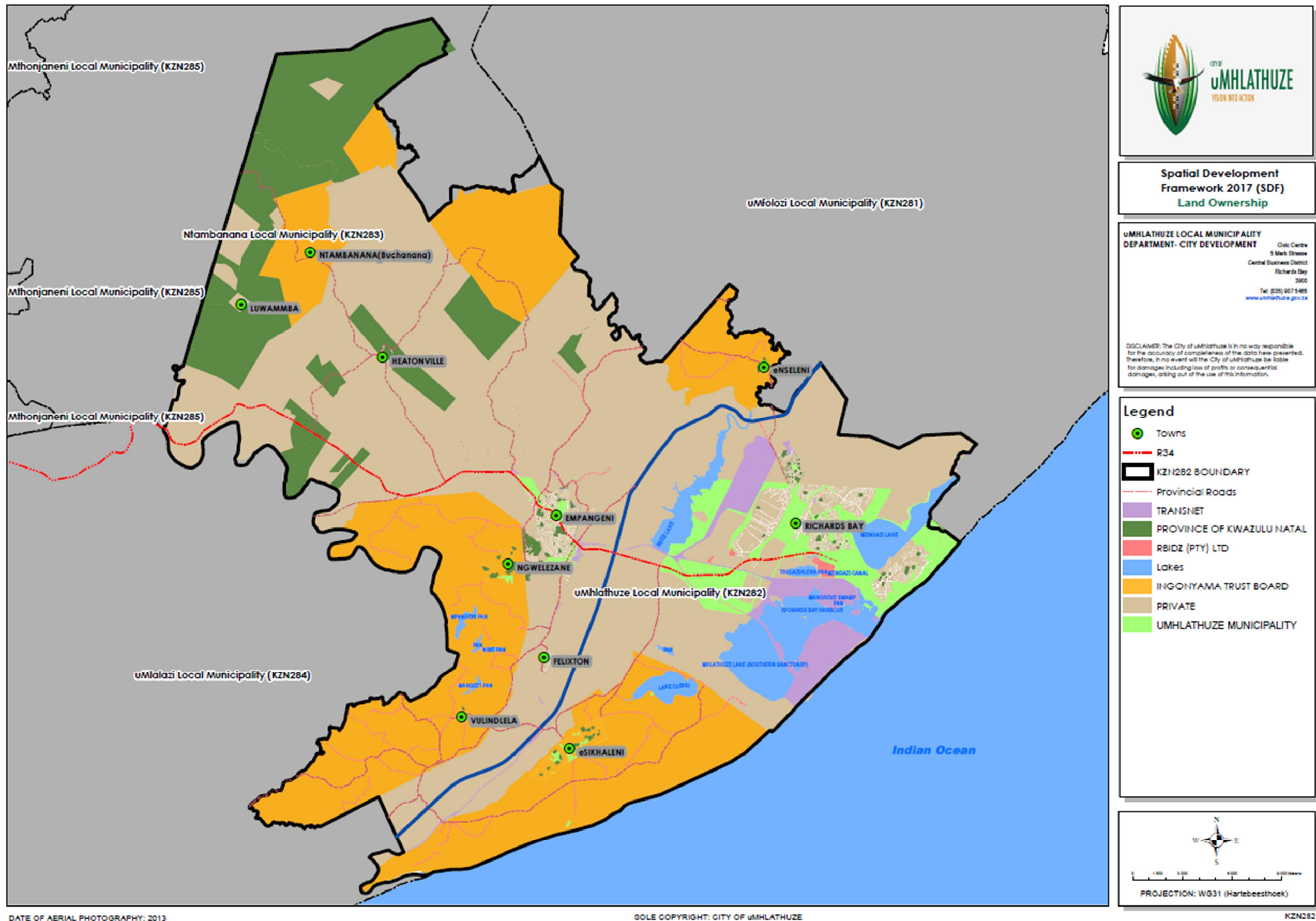
However, this trend has changed in the Traditional Council areas of the municipal area. Areas of denser settlement in the rural (Traditional Council) areas have developed at further distances from the formal urban areas as can be seen from the map inset.

In terms of the uMhlathuze LUS, areas of increasing settlement densification (in the Traditional Council areas) are referred to as "Rapid Urbanization Management Zones". The LUS document (currently under review) notes the statement of intent to be as follow:

**Rapid Urbanization Management Zone:** Zones in the Traditional Authority Area that demarcate areas that have been informally settled adjacent to or near to formal urban areas, and may require interventions to address environmental impacts, upgrade services, and provide formal housing.

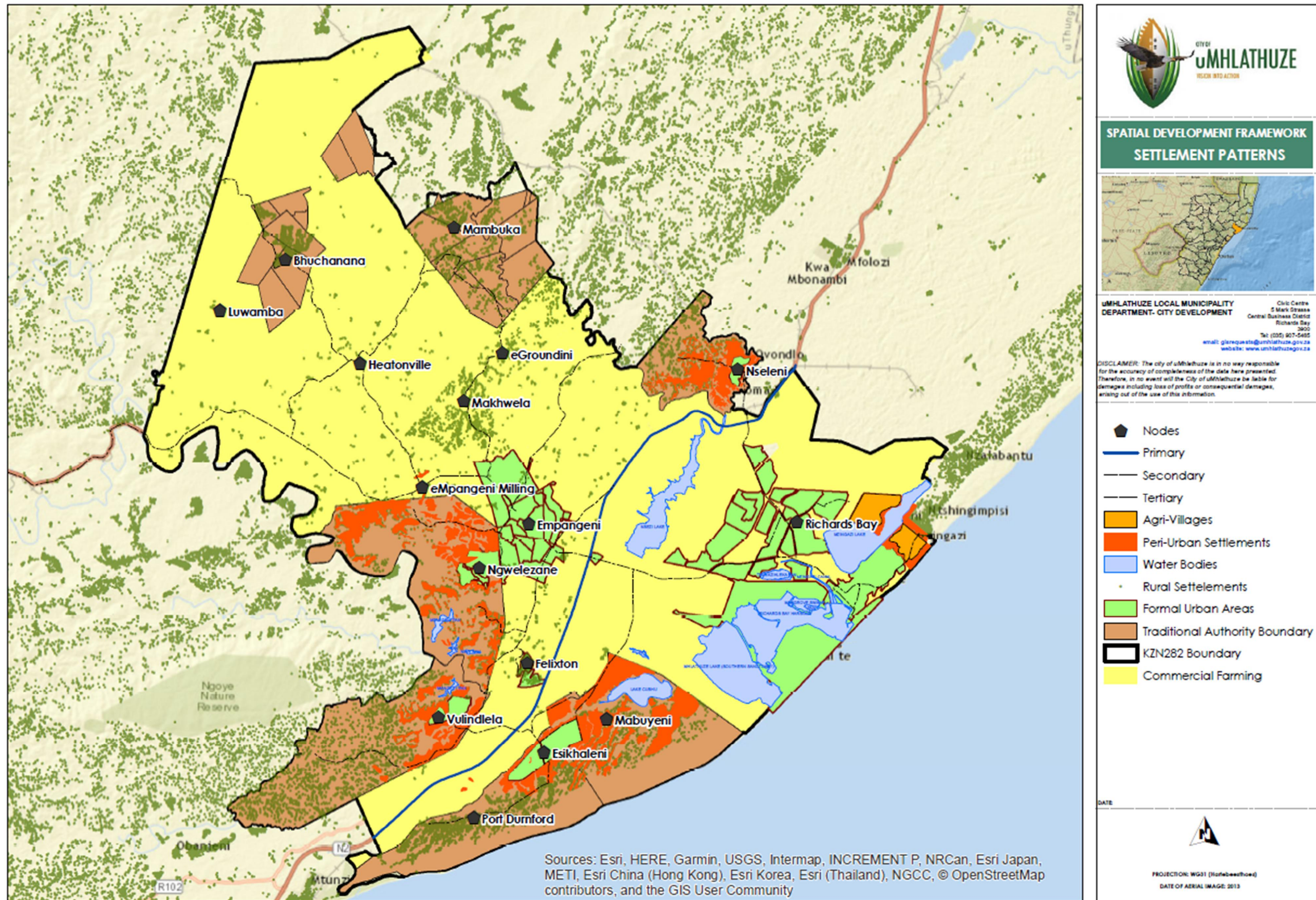
This settlement is seemingly happening on an ad hoc basis given land allocation in the rural areas without pre-planning, i.e. settlement planning. It is imperative to obtain the buy-in from the Ingonyama Trust Board to ensure settlement planning is undertaken in the rural areas to, amongst others, ensure more sustainable service provision the most efficient use of scarce productive agricultural lands.

Map 2: Land Ownership





Map 3: Settlement Patterns





### 3.3.1 Nodes: Local Context

The City of uMhlathuze has identified various nodes within its area of jurisdiction. These nodes were identified by their spatial characteristics, primary land use characteristics, roles as well as the functions of the node to the Municipality and the larger region.

The identified nodes are classified as Primary, Secondary, Tertiary, Opportunity and Rural nodes. Each identified node contains a number of opportunities for development and constraints to development.

### 3.3.2 Analysis of the uMhlathuze Municipal Nodal Areas

A more detailed analysis of the municipal nodes in uMhlathuze is provided herewith.

**Empangeni Node:** Empangeni is located approximately 160 kilometres north of Durban.

**Table 10: Analysis of Empangeni Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is regarded as the major service and retail centre of uMhlathuze Municipality.</li> <li>The CBD commercial floor space presently exceeds 7200 sq. metres.</li> <li>Centres of employment, industrial, residential, offices and commercial activity are provided.</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It functions as a major gateway to the world economy through the nearby Richards Bay Harbour.</li> <li>It plays a dominant role in KZN, especially within the commercial, industrial and agricultural support sectors.</li> <li>It plays a major role in the regional economy as a service centre (commercial, business, transportation, administrative and office core etc.)</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>N2, P2-4, R102, P230, MR166, P425 John Ross Highway and MR496 are major access and linkage systems traversing the Empangeni Node.</li> <li>P166, Ngwelezane highway, Ngwelezane and Turner Road provide access and linkage within and between the other Municipal nodes.</li> </ul>
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> Public &amp; private administration offices, recreation, medical facilities, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, social/welfare facilities, SAPS, churches, post office, library, cemeteries, entertainment, magistrate court, tourism and petrol filling stations .</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> manufacturing, hotel, restaurants, informal trading, retail, finance &amp; insurance, banking facilities, building supplies, furniture, motor showrooms, wholesalers</p> <p><b>Transportation:</b> Rail and Road.</p> <p><b>Rail:</b> Linked to the National System</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Highways- Public (Buses, minibuses, vans &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low to high density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<p><b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas as well as industrial areas.</p>

<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Public parks, private open spaces and conservation areas.
-------------------------------	---

**Richards Bay Node:** Richards Bay is located approximately 180 kilometres north of Durban.

**Table 11: Analysis of Richards Bay Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prominent developing industrial centre of in South Africa.</li> <li>Centres of employment, industrial, residential, mining, offices, eco-tourism, nature reserve and commercial activity.</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is well positioned to full advantage of the export of manufactured goods and raw materials &amp; minerals to Africa and the rest of the World.</li> <li>It functions as a major link to the world economy through the Richards Bay Harbour.</li> <li>It is regarded as the eco-tourism and nature reserve gateway.</li> <li>It plays a dominant role in KZN, especially within the commercial and Industrial Sector.</li> <li>It plays a major role in the regional economy as a service centre (Industrial, retail, commercial, business, transportation, administrative and office core etc.)</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>N2, John Ross Highway, P231 and North Central Arterial are major access and linkage systems traversing the Richards Bay Node.</li> <li>West Central Arterial and East Central Arterial provide access and linkage within and between the other Municipal nodes.</li> </ul>
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> Public &amp; private administration offices, recreation, medical facilities, residential, community halls, public transport facilities, educational facilities, social/welfare facilities, SAPS, tourism, churches, cemeteries, magistrate court and petrol filling stations.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Harbour, manufacturing, hotel, restaurants, informal trading, retail, finance &amp; insurance, banking facilities, building supplies, furniture, motor showroom and, wholesalers.</p> <p><b>Transportation:</b> Rail, Sea, Air and Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Highways- Public (Buses, minibuses, vans &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Rail:</b> Linked to the National System</p> <p><b>SEA:</b> Linked to the World</p> <p><b>AIR:</b> Linked to the National System</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low-high density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<p><b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas as well as industrial areas.</p>
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Urban recreation (Public parks, private open spaces and conservation areas).

**Esikhaleni Node:** Esikhaleni is classified as a Secondary Node based on the type of facilities and services it currently offers to the local people and the rest of uMhlathuze inhabitants. Although the node still functions primarily as a dormitory town it has the potential to develop into a primary node if the local economy becomes more sustainable, specifically in respect of growth and employment opportunities. It is located approximately 10 km from Vulindlela/Dlangenzwa and accessible via the N2. Esikhaleni is located approximately 15 km from Empangeni and 20 km from Richards Bay primary nodes.

**Table 12: Analysis of Esikhaleni Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It offers a combination of mixed used development such as commercial, educational, mixed density and mixed income urban living.</li> <li>Opportunity to formalize better employment opportunities</li> <li>It is surrounded by dense peri-urban development</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within the commercial, administration, transportation and social services.</li> <li>Opportunity to formalize better employment opportunities</li> <li>Opportunity to upgrade to the status of Primary Settlement due to population density, increasing commercial activity as well as proximity to future Port Development</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>N2 and P535 are major access and linkage systems traversing the Esikhaleni Node.</li> <li>P106, Mdlebe Nstthona, Mdlebe Mpuma and Mthombothi Roads provide access and linkage within and between the other Municipal nodes.</li> </ul>
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> Public &amp; private administration offices, recreation, medical facilities, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, social/welfare facilities, SAPS, churches, post office, library, cemeteries, entertainment, community halls, magistrate court and petrol filling station.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> B&amp;B's, restaurants, informal trading, retail, finance &amp; insurance, building supplies, banking facilities, furniture, butcheries, wholesalers, Supermarkets, bottle stores and car washers</p> <p><b>Transportation:</b> Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Highways &amp; Provincial- Public (Buses, minibuses, vans &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low-medium density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<p><b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas as well as commercial areas.</p>
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<p><b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Urban recreation (Public parks, private open spaces and conservation areas).</p>

**Ngwelezane Node:** Ngwelezane is located approximately 10 km from Empangeni and 24 km from Richards Bay primary nodes.

**Table 13: Analysis of Ngwelezane Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It offers a combination of mixed used development such as commercial, educational, mixed density and mixed income (urban and urban peri-urban living), small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets &amp; butchery).</li> <li>It is surrounded by dense peri-urban development</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within administration, transportation and social services.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	<p>R102, P230, MR166, and P425, Ngwelezane Highway and Ngwelezane Road are major access and linkage systems to the Ngwelezane Node and between other Municipal nodes.</p>
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> Public &amp; private administration offices, recreation, medical facilities, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, social/welfare facilities, SAPS, churches, library, entertainment, magistrate court, community halls and petrol filling station.</p>



	<p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> B&amp;B's, restaurants, informal trading, retail, finance &amp; insurance, building supplies, butcheries, bottle stores, Supermarkets and car washers.</p> <p>Transportation: Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial- Public (Buses, minibuses, vans &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low-medium density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<p><b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas as well as commercial areas.</p>
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<p><b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Urban recreation (Public parks, private open spaces and conservation areas).</p>

**Felixton Node:** Felixton is located approximately 15 km from Empangeni and 30 km from the Richards Bay node, 20 km from Esikhaleni and 10 km from the Vulindlela/Dlangezwa node.

**Table 14: Analysis of Felixton Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It offers a combination of mixed used development such as manufacturing industry, educational, medium-high income residential (urban living)</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within manufacturing and educational facilities.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	<p>N2, P2-4 and P343 are major access and linkage systems to the Felixton Node and between other Municipal nodes.</p>
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> Private administration offices, recreation, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, library, entertainment.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Manufacturing, B&amp;B's, informal trading and pubs</p> <p>Transportation: Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial- Public (Buses, minibuses &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (medium-density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<p><b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services.</p> <p>Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas as well as commercial/industrial areas.</p>
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<p><b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Urban recreation (Public parks, private open spaces and conservation areas).</p>

**Vulindlela/Dlangezwa Node:** Located approximately 10 km from Esikhaleni and 20 km from Empangeni.

**Table 15: Analysis of Vulindlela/Dlangezwa Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low –medium income residential (urban &amp; peri-urban living), health facilities, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets &amp; butchery)</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region and provides a tertiary education facility to the region, i.e. University of Zululand.</li> </ul>

<b>Movement System</b>	N2, P2-4 and P535 are major access and linkage systems to the Vulindlela/Dlangezwa Node and between other Municipal nodes.
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, library, entertainment, community hall.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> B&amp;B's, Supermarkets, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers</p> <p>Transportation: Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial- Public (Buses, minibuses &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low-medium density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Public parks and conservation areas).

**Nseleni Node:** Located approximately 15 km from Richards Bay and 15 km from Empangeni.

**Table 16: Analysis of Nseleni Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (urban &amp; peri-urban living), health facilities, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets, bottle stores butchery)</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within health facility (24 hours clinic).</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	N2, P517, P494 and P495 are major access and linkage systems to the Nseleni Node and between other Municipal nodes.
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, library, entertainment, administration offices, limited health services community hall.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Supermarkets, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers</p> <p>Transportation: Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial- Public (Buses, minibuses, vans &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low-medium density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, waterborne system, electrification, solid waste disposal, storm-water management and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas (de-densification) as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Open spaces & conservation areas).

**Buchanana Node** is located in the former Ntambanan Municipal area.

**Table 17: Analysis of Buchanana Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (urban &amp; peri-urban living), health facilities, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets, bottle stores butchery)</li> </ul>
-------------------------	--

<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a role in Region especially with regard to the provision of a health facility.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	N2, P517, P494 and P495 are major access and linkage systems to the Nseleni Node and between other Municipal nodes.
<b>Current Urban Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, residential, public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, library, entertainment, administration offices, limited health services community hall.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Stores, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers</p> <p><b>Transportation:</b> Road.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial- Public (Buses, minibuses, vans &amp; metred taxis) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Mixed used development (low-medium density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, on-site sanitation, electrification, solid waste disposal and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to accommodate increased densities and expansion of urban residential areas (de-densification) as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Open spaces & conservation areas).

**Rural/Neighbouring Nodes:** The main objective of these identified nodes is to provide both commercial, social facilities and infrastructure closer to the people. Specific planning and development interventions are required to identify community services that are to be encouraged at these nodes. An analysis of some of these nodes is provided herewith. Additional assessments and planning on newly identified rural nodes is ongoing.

**Bhejane Node:** Bhejane is located in the outskirts of Nseleni Township (Tertiary Node), approximately 30km from Empangeni and 10 km from Richards Bay primary nodes.

**Table 18: Analysis of Bhejane Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It currently offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (deep rural living), limited health facilities, limited public transport services, agricultural activities, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets, bottle stores butchery)</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within agricultural activities.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	TBD after mapping
<b>Current Rural Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, rural residential, limited public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, community halls.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Supermarkets, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers</p> <p><b>Transportation:</b> Gravel Roads.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial &amp; District- Public (Buses, vans &amp; limited minibuses) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Rural (low-high density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, Pit latrines, electrification (Eskom), and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to meet the current demand and future increased densities and expansion of rural residential areas (de-densification) as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Open spaces & conservation areas).

**Mkhwanazi (North & South Node): Mkhwanazi North Node** is located in the outskirts of Vulindlela Township (secondary node) approximately 20 km from Esikhaleni emerging primary node, 25 km from Felixton secondary node, 30 km from Empangeni and 38 km from Richards Bay primary nodes.

**Mkhwanazi South Node** is located in the outskirts of Esikhaleni Township (emerging primary node) approximately 20 km from Vulindlela, 30 km from Felixton secondary nodes; 45 km from Empangeni and 35 km from Richards Bay primary nodes.

**Table 19: Analysis of Mkhwanazi North & South Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It currently offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (deep rural living), limited health facilities, agricultural activities, limited public transport services, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets, bottle stores butchery).</li> <li>Opportunity for better employment through RBM Zulti South mining.</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within agricultural activities.</li> <li>Mkhwanazi South has tourism potential (Port Dunford).</li> <li>Opportunity for better employment through RBM Zulti South mining.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	TBD after mapping
<b>Current Rural Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, rural residential, limited public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, community halls.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Supermarkets, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers.</p> <p><b>Transportation:</b> Gravel Roads.</p> <p><b>Road:</b> Provincial &amp; District- Public (Buses, vans &amp; limited minibuses) &amp; Private transportation.</p> <p><b>Residential:</b> Rural (low-high density).</p>
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, Pit latrines, electrification (Eskom), and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to meet the current demand and future increased densities and expansion of rural residential areas (de-densification) as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Open spaces & conservation areas).

**Madlebe Node:** Madlebe is located in the outskirts of Ngwelezane Township (Secondary Node), approximately 20km from Empangeni and 40 km from Richards Bay primary nodes.

**Table 20: Analysis of Madlebe Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It currently offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (deep rural living), limited health facilities, agricultural activities, limited public transport services, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets, bottle stores butchery).</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within agricultural activities.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	TBD after mapping
<b>Current Rural Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<p><b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, rural residential, limited public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, community halls.</p> <p><b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Supermarkets, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers</p>

	<b>Transportation:</b> Gravel Roads. <b>Road:</b> Provincial & District- Public (Buses, vans & limited minibuses) & Private transportation. <b>Residential:</b> Rural (low-high density).
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, Pit latrines, electrification (Eskom), and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to meet the current demand and future increased densities and expansion of rural residential areas (de-densification) as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Open spaces & conservation areas).

**Dube Node:** Dube is located in the outskirts of Esikhaleni Township, approximately 30 km from Empangeni, 20 km from Richards Bay primary nodes; 15 km from Vulindlela/Dlangezwa and 25 km from Felixton secondary nodes.

**Table 21: Analysis Dube Node**

<b>Role in the City</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It currently offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (deep rural living), limited health facilities, agricultural activities, limited public transport services, small scale commercial facilities (supermarkets, bottle stores butchery).</li> <li>Opportunity for better employment through RBM Zulti South mining.</li> </ul>
<b>Role in the Region</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Opportunity for better employment through RBM Zulti South mining.</li> <li>It plays a dominant role in Region especially within agricultural activities.</li> </ul>
<b>Movement System</b>	TBD after mapping
<b>Current Rural Form &amp; Land Uses</b>	<b>Social Infrastructure:</b> recreation, rural residential, limited public transport facilities, educational facilities, SAPS, churches, community halls. <b>Commerce &amp; Industry:</b> Supermarkets, bottle stores, informal trading and car washers <b>Transportation:</b> Gravel Roads. <b>Road:</b> Provincial & District- Public (Buses, vans & limited minibuses) & Private transportation, <b>Residential:</b> Rural (low-high density).
<b>Service Levels</b>	<b>Physical Infrastructure:</b> Water supply, Pit latrines, electrification (Eskom), and telecommunication services. Existing capacity will be upgraded to meet the current demand and future increased densities and expansion of rural residential areas (de-densification) as well as commercial areas.
<b>Open Space/Environment</b>	<b>Open Space and Conservation:</b> Recreation (Open spaces & conservation areas).

### 3.3.3 Corridors: Local Context

Transport networks (corridors) are to be promoted as they are the 'veins' of economic growth and a catalyst in economic development. Areas that are highly accessible have better opportunities for economic growth by increasing their market threshold. Good transport systems ensure reliable transport of goods - increasing investor confidence. Diverse goods and services located along the transport network allows for the generation of income by taking advantage of passing traffic.

### 3.3.4 Primary Corridors

N2, John Ross Highway, P230 and MR496 are classified as **Primary Corridors** based on their strategic connectivity i.e. economic growth and development.

- N2: Links UMhlathuze with Durban, Mtubatuba, Hluhluwe, Mkuze, Pongola and Mpumalanga Province.
- John Ross Highway, P230 and MR496: Links UMhlathuze with Eshowe, Melmoth, Ulundi, Ntambana and Buchanana.

### 3.3.5 Secondary Corridors

- SP231, MR166, P425, P2-4, P2-5, P535, P106, Part of John Ross Highway (from Mzingazi Canal to Meerensee Suburb sections), North Central Arterial and Anglers Rod are classified as Secondary Corridors as they provide access and linkages between the nodes the surroundings.
- P231/ North Central Arterial/Part of John Ross Highway: From N2 and John Ross Highway it links Richards Bay with Nseleni, IDZ and Port of Richards Bay other areas around Richards Bay.
- P425: Links Empangeni, Nseleni and surrounding traditional authority areas.
- P2-4 & P2-5: Links Empangeni, Felixton, Esikhaleni and Vulindlela.
- P535 & P106: Links Empangeni, Richards Bay, Vulindlela and Esikhaleni.
- Anglers Rod: Links Richards Bay and its surrounding with Meerensee Suburb, beach front and harbour.

### 3.3.6 Tertiary Corridors

- The P517, P343, Part of P2-4, Felixton High Street, East Central Arterial, West Central Arterial, Bayview Boulevard, Davidson lane, Krewelkring, Nkoninga and Fish Eagle Flight are classified as Tertiary Corridors as they provide access to a specify point of interest (POI).
- P517: Provides access to access to Nseleni and its surroundings.
- P343/Felixton High Street: Provides access to Felixton (Residential, Educational, Mondindustrial/manufacturing).
- Part of P2-4: Provides access to Vulindlela/Dlangezwa and the University of Zululand.
- Nkoninga/Fish Eagle Flight: Provides access to the Richards Bay Airport and Birdwood residential suburb.
- Davidson/Krewelkring: Provides access to Alkantstrand beach and Newark beach.
- Bayview Boulevard: Provides access to Alkantstrand beach, Newark beach, recreational & Sport facilities.
- West Central Arterial: Provides access to the Port of Richards Bay and the Richards Bay CBD.
- East Central Arterial: Provides access to Richards Bay CBD.

From the following maps it can be seen that the two primary nodes on the municipal area are Richards Bay and Empangeni. The towns of Esikhaleni, Ngwelezane, Vulindlela and

Felixton are secondary nodes while Nseleni and Buchanana have been classified as a tertiary node. These descriptions of the nodal areas have been based on the functionality of the respective nodes. A generally well defined corridor hierarchy exists in the municipal area. In most instances, nodal areas have access via at least two major corridors but when the functionality of one of the main access corridors is hampered access is affected due the overall increase in road transport volumes.

With regard to the locality of rural settlements (nodes), these rural settlements are accessible locations for community services and infrastructure. Specific planning and development interventions are required (and underway) to identify community services that are to be encouraged at these nodes.

**Table 22: Summary of Interventions at Nodes**

<b>Typical Interventions: Nodes</b>	
<b>Primary Node</b>	Primary Nodes are centres of economic activity and provide employment, as well as range of social facilities to an extended hinterland. Continued economic growth to be ensured by ensuring maintenance, and upgrade, of critical infrastructure and, where required, urban regeneration studies. Primary nodes are inherently accessible locations and appropriate measures are needed to ensure convenient access to these areas.
<b>Secondary Node</b>	Important regional role, especially with regard to administration, transportation and social services. Generally offers a combination of mixed used development, i.e. educational and medium-lower income residential (urban & peri-urban living), health facilities, small-scale commercial facilities. Important to manage land use and development pressure to ensure sustainability and attraction of secondary nodes. Process to address informal settlement along periphery, i.e. NUSP, underway with support from National Human Settlements. Continual efforts to upgrade service provision to maintain attractiveness of nodes for more investment for future investment thereby ensuring the local economy becomes more sustainable.
<b>Tertiary Node</b>	It offers a combination of mixed used development such as educational, low income residential (urban & peri-urban living), health facilities, and small scale commercial facilities.
<b>Rural Node</b>	Rural settlements are accessible locations for community services and infrastructure. Specific planning and development interventions are required to identify community services that are to be encouraged at these nodes. To this end, Municipality has embarked on process of preparing Nodal Framework Plans.

Corridors provide access/connectivity to the various nodes or specific points of interest listed above. To this end, corridors as transport routes have to be maintained, and, interventions are needed to make them accessible as well. With the latter it is implied that routes, such as pedestrian routes, should be created and facilities provided, i.e. gathering points (public transport points) under cover. Importantly, the levels of interventions for corridors are informed by the function and status of the corridor.





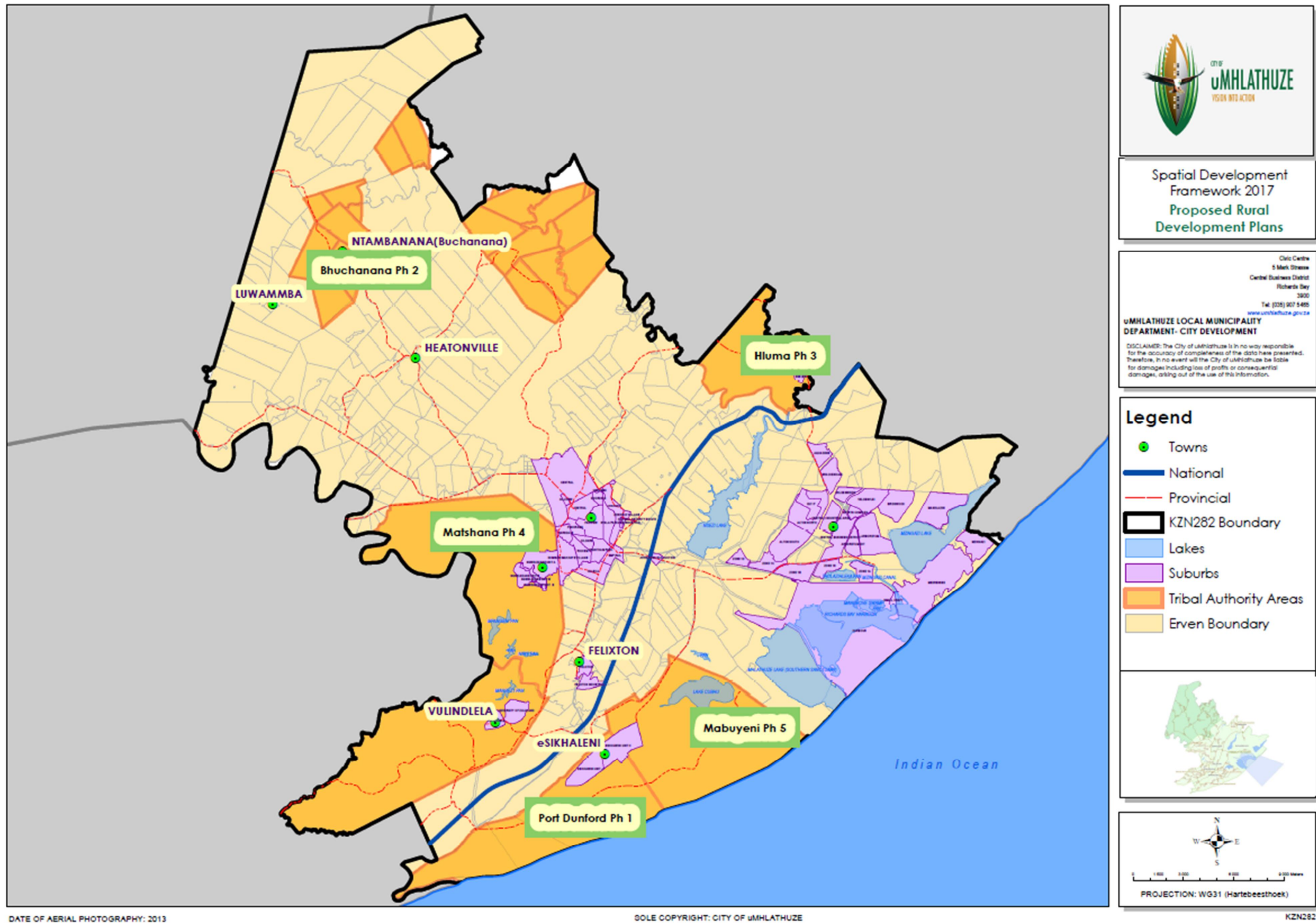
The Municipality is in the process of preparing Rural Development Framework Plans for 5 different rural nodes. This Rural Development Framework Plan project will be implemented in 5 different phases within 5 different financial years. The Table below illustrates the Project Implementation Phases and financial years:

**Table 23: Rural Settlement Plan Phases**

No.	Project Name	Phase	Financial Year
1	Port Dunford Rural Settlement Plan-Mkhwanazi Traditional Authority - Completed	1	2016/2017
2	Buchanana Rural Settlement Plan-Obuka Traditional Authority - Underway	2	2017/2018
3	Hluma Rural Settlement Plan-KwaBhejane Traditional Authority	3	2018/2019
4	Matshana Rural Settlement Plan-Madlebe Traditional Authority	4	2019/2020
5	Mabuyeni Rural Settlement Plan-Dube Traditional Authority	5	2020/2021



**Map 5: Proposed Rural Settlements Plans**



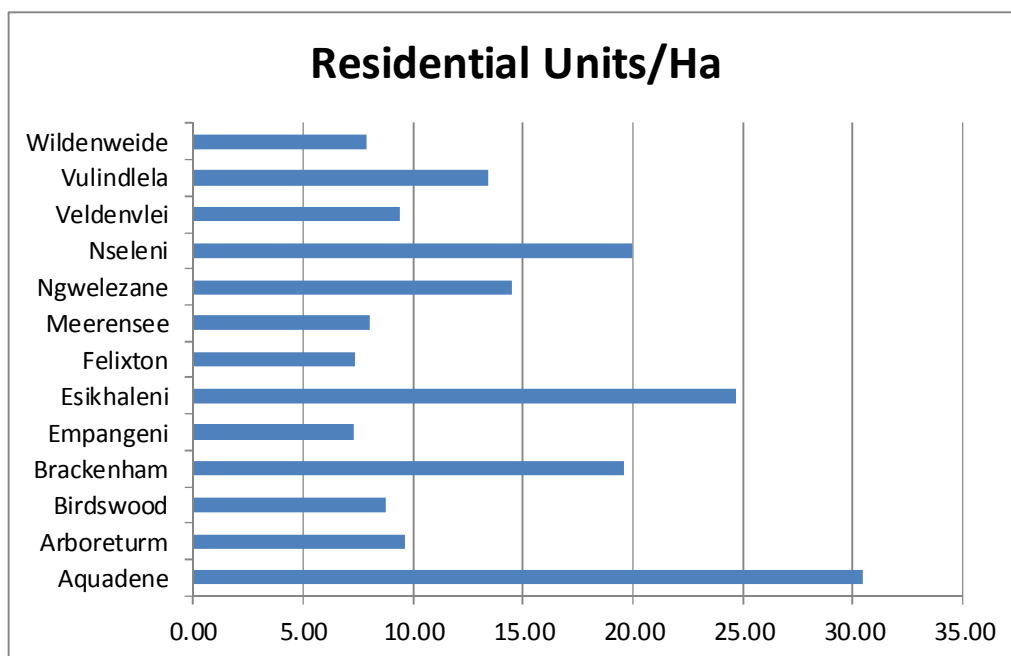
### 3.4 URBAN LAND USE ANALYSIS

The formal urban areas of the municipality have been broken down into residential units or suburbs and an analysis of land uses has been undertaken for each of those.

In addition, a composite land use analysis has also been undertaken of the most prominent land uses in the whole municipal area, i.e. inclusive of the commercial and industrial related areas. The rationale for this analysis is to develop a benchmark for each of the main suburban areas relating to land use. The apparent lack of commercial land uses in former Township areas as opposed to other suburbs is an example of this.

As a first step, the comparative residential densities in units per hectare for the respective urban residential areas in the municipal area have been determined. The following is a graphic presentation of the outcome:

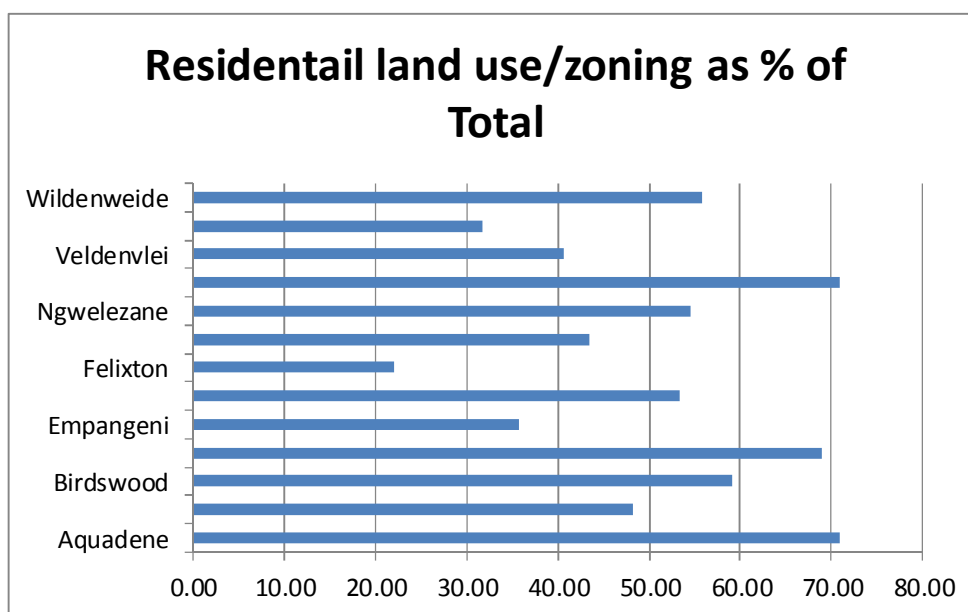
**Figure 10: Comparative Urban Residential Densities**



From the above table it is clear that Aquadene, Brackenham, Esikhaleni and Nseleni have the highest residential densities in the municipal area.

The following figure indicates the comparative percentage (%) of total urban area that is used/zoned for residential purposes as an indication of the dormitory nature of the area.

**Table 24: Residential Land Use Types**



A further analysis of land use zonings/uses has been undertaken for the formal urban areas of the Municipality as per the following. The following information will guide future land use planning scenarios in the Municipality:

- Currently about 7800 Ha of formal urban land is zoned.
- The highest residential densities of single residential units are observed in Aquadene, Esikhaleni, Brackenheim and Nseleni.
- The areas that have the highest percentage of land zoned for general residential purposes are Arboretum, Brackenheim, Empangeni, Esikhaleni, Meerensee, Veldenvlei and Wildenweide.
- In the municipal area as a whole, special residential zoned land accounts for about 20% and Industrial for 21% of the total. Other zonings include land zoned for conservation, open spaces, municipal purposes and community type facilities or services. Commercial accounts for less than 2% of the zoned land.

### 3.5 SUMMARY OF KEY SPATIAL ISSUES

- i. uMhlathuze Municipality has an area of 123 325Ha.
- ii. 51% of the area is under the jurisdiction of the Ingonyama Trust Board.
- iii. Richards Bay and Empangeni are the most significant economic centres in the Local Municipality and in the District Municipality.
- iv. Esikhaleni has the potential to develop into a primary node if the local economy becomes more sustainable, specifically in respect of growth and employment opportunities.
- v. Aquadene, Brackenheim, Esikhaleni and Nseleni have the highest residential densities in the municipal area.
- vi. Existing bulk infrastructure capacities will have to be increased at all nodes to accommodate increased densities and expansion/development.
- vii. Vast peri-urban settlements have challenges and lack proper planning, limited basic services and is located in environmental high risk areas. The result is an undesirable impact on food security and prime grazing land. Insufficient land is available for future social and economic facilities due to random distribution of land - all resulting in the sustainability of settlements being compromised.

- viii. The area to the east of the Municipality is inundated with a system of wetlands and natural water features such as Lakes Cubhu, Mzingazi, Nsezi and Nhlabane. Major rivers include the Mhlathuze and Nsezi.
- ix. The main access into the municipal area is via the N2 in a north south direction and in an east west direction the R34. Other significant roads in the area include the MR431 (that provides a northerly entry into Richards Bay from the N2) as well as the Old Main Road that straddles the N2 on its inland.
- x. Railway lines are prevalent in the municipal area but do not provide a passenger service, only a commercial/industrial service is provided.
- xi. The municipality has the benefit of about 45km of coastline of which about 80% is in its natural state.
- xii. Linked to its coastal locality is the Richards Bay deep-water port that has been instrumental in the spatial development of the area in the past and will definitely impact on the areas' future spatial development. There is one airport and a couple of landing strips in the municipal area.

## 4. DEMOGRAPHIC AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC ANALYSIS

### 4.1 DEMOGRAPHIC INDICATORS

The population increase (as at 2016) in the King Cetshwayo District, broken down per municipality is indicated in the following table.

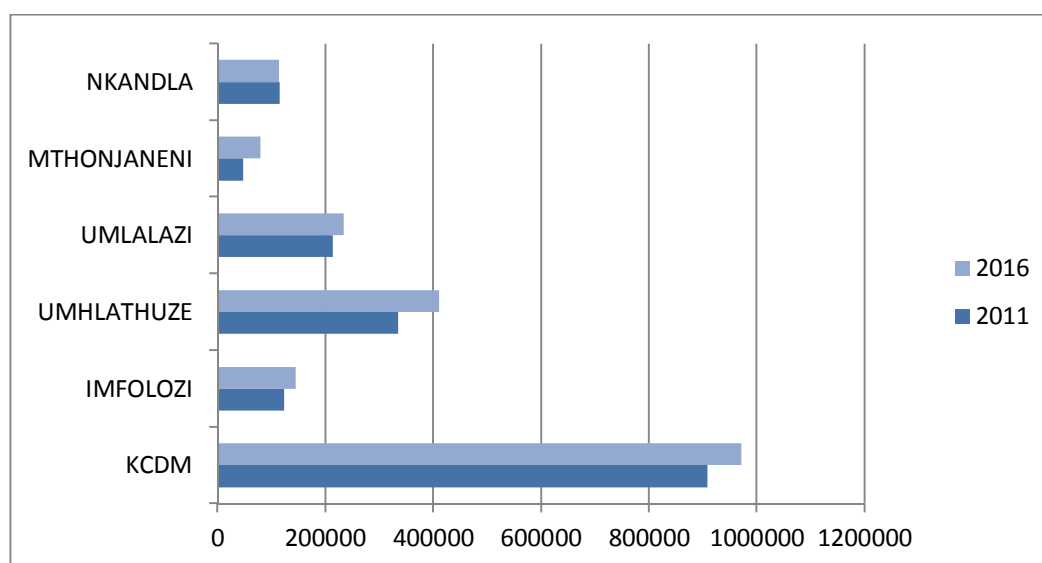
**Table 25: Population Numbers in KCDM**

	KCDM	IMFOLOZI	UMHLATHUZE	UMLALAZI	MTHONJANENI	NKANDLA
<b>2011</b>	907519	122889	334459	213601	47818	114416
<b>2016</b>	971135	144363	410465	233140	78883	114284
<b>% Growth</b>	<b>7,01%</b>	<b>17,47%</b>	<b>22,73%</b>	<b>9,15%</b>	<b>64,97%</b>	<b>-0,12%</b>

Source: Community Survey 2016

From the above it is noted that the uMhlathuze and Mthonjaneni Local Municipalities have experienced the largest population increase, mainly due to the dissemination and incorporation of the former Ntambanana Municipality into the two listed municipalities.

**Figure 11: Population Numbers in KCDM**

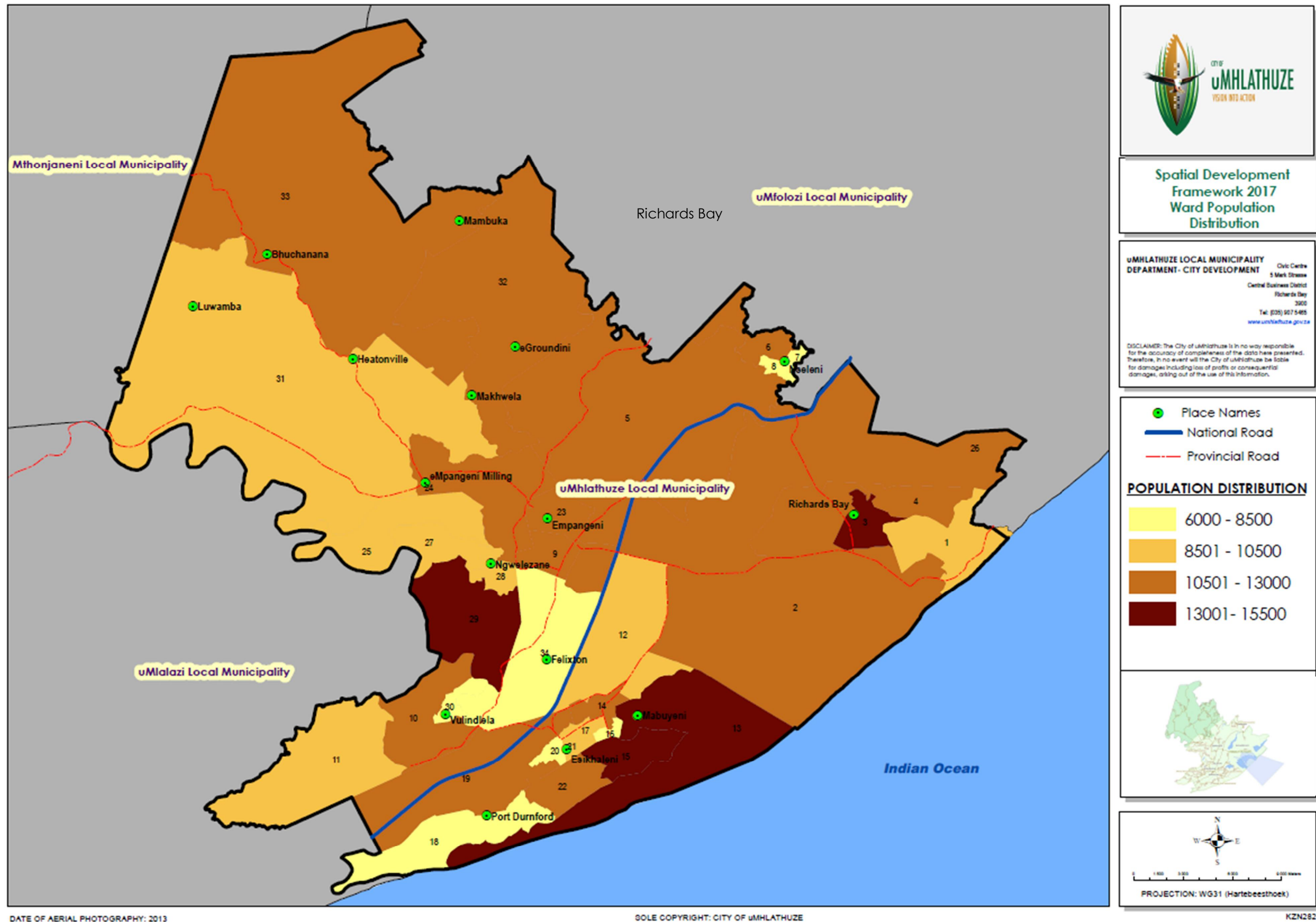


Source: Census 2011

The following map inset provides a visual representation of the population density distribution in the uMhlathuze Municipal area.



**Map 6: Population Density**





From the above inset the higher population densities in the formal urban, and surrounding areas, as well as Traditional Council areas can be observed. It is known that entrepreneurship development and sustainability efforts in townships have been hampered by a number of reasons including inequalities, level of education, and lack of adequate information. The uMhlathuze Municipality is actively engaging relevant role-players in the Township Economy to address these challenges.

In context of the above, it has to be borne in mind that a portion of the population increase is the result of an enlarged municipal area following the inclusion of 3 wards from the former Ntambanana post the 2016 Local Government Elections.

Population growth scenarios have been applied to the base figure from the 2016 Community Survey. Adequate data and research is not available at this time to apply an historic growth trend as the composition of the municipality, in terms of boundaries and wards, has changed post the Local Government Elections of 2016. The following base data has therefore been used:

- A baseline population in the uMhlathuze Municipality of 410 465 people in 2016 as per the Community Survey
- A calculated household size of 3.95 as derived from 2011 census data
- A total number of 103 915 households in the municipal area derived from the above

Apart from indicating population growth scenarios, an indication is also provided on the estimated land required to accommodate the increase in households in the municipal area. In this regard, the following base data (assumptions) has been applied:

- Household size of 3.95
- Residential land utilization of 15 units/hectare or 25 units/hectare

The increase in the population from 1996 to 2011 has been just below 2% per annum in the uMhlathuze Municipality as indicated in the following table:

**Table 26: Population Growth Scenarios from 2016 to 2030**

	<b>2 016</b>	<b>2 017</b>	<b>2 018</b>	<b>2 019</b>	<b>2 020</b>	<b>2 021</b>	<b>2 022</b>	<b>2 023</b>	<b>2 024</b>	<b>2 025</b>	<b>2 026</b>	<b>2 027</b>	<b>2 028</b>	<b>2 029</b>	<b>2 030</b>
1.5% Increase	410 465	416 622	422 871	429 214	435 653	442 187	448 820	455 552	462 386	469 322	476 361	483 507	490 759	498 121	505 593
<b>Households</b>	<b>103 915</b>	<b>105 474</b>	<b>107 056</b>	<b>108 662</b>	<b>110 292</b>	<b>111 946</b>	<b>113 625</b>	<b>115 330</b>	<b>117 060</b>	<b>118 816</b>	<b>120 598</b>	<b>122 407</b>	<b>124 243</b>	<b>126 107</b>	<b>127 998</b>
2% Increase	410 465	418 674	427 048	435 589	444 301	453 187	462 250	471 495	480 925	490 544	500 355	510 362	520 569	530 980	541 600
<b>Households</b>	<b>103 915</b>	<b>105 993</b>	<b>108 113</b>	<b>110 276</b>	<b>112 481</b>	<b>114 731</b>	<b>117 025</b>	<b>119 366</b>	<b>121 753</b>	<b>124 188</b>	<b>126 672</b>	<b>129 205</b>	<b>131 790</b>	<b>134 425</b>	<b>137 114</b>
3% Increase	410 465	422 779	435 462	448 526	461 982	475 841	490 117	504 820	519 965	535 564	551 631	568 180	585 225	602 782	620 865
<b>Households</b>	<b>103 915</b>	<b>107 033</b>	<b>110 244</b>	<b>113 551</b>	<b>116 957</b>	<b>120 466</b>	<b>124 080</b>	<b>127 803</b>	<b>131 637</b>	<b>135 586</b>	<b>139 653</b>	<b>143 843</b>	<b>148 158</b>	<b>152 603</b>	<b>157 181</b>
4% Increase	410 465	426 884	443 959	461 717	480 186	499 393	519 369	540 144	561 750	584 220	607 588	631 892	657 168	683 454	710 793
<b>Households</b>	<b>103 915</b>	<b>108 072</b>	<b>112 395</b>	<b>116 890</b>	<b>121 566</b>	<b>126 429</b>	<b>131 486</b>	<b>136 745</b>	<b>142 215</b>	<b>147 904</b>	<b>153 820</b>	<b>159 973</b>	<b>166 372</b>	<b>173 026</b>	<b>179 947</b>
5% Increase	410 465	430 988	452 538	475 165	498 923	523 869	550 062	577 565	606 444	636 766	668 604	702 034	737 136	773 993	812 693
<b>Households</b>	<b>103 915</b>	<b>109 111</b>	<b>114 566</b>	<b>120 295</b>	<b>126 310</b>	<b>132 625</b>	<b>139 256</b>	<b>146 219</b>	<b>153 530</b>	<b>161 207</b>	<b>169 267</b>	<b>177 730</b>	<b>186 617</b>	<b>195 948</b>	<b>205 745</b>

From the above, the following is highlighted:

- At a steady population increase of 1,5% per annum, the municipal population will surpass 500 000 people by 2030.
- The municipality will reach a population of 500 000 before 2021 if a population growth rate of 5% takes place over the next few years.
- At such a 5% per annum population growth rate the number of households in the municipality will double by 2030.

**Table 27: Corresponding Residential Land Requirements from 2016 to 2023**

	2 011	2 016	Increase	2 017	Increase	2 018	Increase	2 019	Increase	2 020	Increase	2 021	Increase	2 022	Increase	2 023
1.5% Increase	334 459	410 465	6 157	416 622	6 249	422 871	6 343	429 214	6 438	435 653	6 535	442 187	6 633	448 820	6 732	455 552
<b>Households</b>		<b>103 915</b>	<b>1 559</b>	<b>105 474</b>	<b>1 582</b>	<b>107 056</b>	<b>1 606</b>	<b>108 662</b>	<b>1 630</b>	<b>110 292</b>	<b>1 654</b>	<b>111 946</b>	<b>1 679</b>	<b>113 625</b>	<b>1 704</b>	<b>115 330</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha		6 928	104	7 032	105	7 137	107	7 244	109	7 353	110	7 463	112	7 575	114	7 689
Urban Residential Land @ 25 units/ha		4 157	62	4 219	63	4 282	64	4 346	65	4 412	66	4 478	67	4 545	68	4 613
2% Increase		410 465	8 209	418 674	8 373	427 048	8 541	435 589	8 712	444 301	8 886	453 187	9 064	462 250	9 245	471 495
<b>Households</b>		<b>103 915</b>	<b>2 078</b>	<b>105 993</b>	<b>2 120</b>	<b>108 113</b>	<b>2 162</b>	<b>110 276</b>	<b>2 206</b>	<b>112 481</b>	<b>2 250</b>	<b>114 731</b>	<b>2 295</b>	<b>117 025</b>	<b>2 341</b>	<b>119 366</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha		6 928	139	7 066	141	7 208	144	7 352	147	7 499	150	7 649	153	7 802	156	7 958
Urban Residential Land @ 25 units/ha		4 157	83	4 240	85	4 325	86	4 411	88	4 499	90	4 589	92	4 681	94	4 775
3% Increase		410 465	12 314	422 779	12 683	435 462	13 064	448 526	13 456	461 982	13 859	475 841	14 275	490 117	14 704	504 820
<b>Households</b>		<b>103 915</b>	<b>3 117</b>	<b>107 033</b>	<b>3 211</b>	<b>110 244</b>	<b>3 307</b>	<b>113 551</b>	<b>3 407</b>	<b>116 957</b>	<b>3 509</b>	<b>120 466</b>	<b>3 614</b>	<b>124 080</b>	<b>3 722</b>	<b>127 803</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha		6 928	208	7 136	214	7 350	220	7 570	227	7 797	234	8 031	241	8 272	248	8 520
Urban Residential Land @ 25 units/ha		4 157	125	4 281	128	4 410	132	4 542	136	4 678	140	4 819	145	4 963	149	5 112
4% Increase		410 465	16 419	426 884	17 075	443 959	17 758	461 717	18 469	480 186	19 207	499 393	19 976	519 369	20 775	540 144
<b>Households</b>		<b>103 915</b>	<b>4 157</b>	<b>108 072</b>	<b>4 323</b>	<b>112 395</b>	<b>4 496</b>	<b>116 890</b>	<b>4 676</b>	<b>121 566</b>	<b>4 863</b>	<b>126 429</b>	<b>5 057</b>	<b>131 486</b>	<b>5 259</b>	<b>136 745</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha		6 928	277	7 205	288	7 493	300	7 793	312	8 104	324	8 429	337	8 766	351	9 116
Urban Residential Land @ 25 units/ha		4 157	166	4 323	173	4 496	180	4 676	187	4 863	195	5 057	202	5 259	210	5 470
5% Increase		410 465	20 523	430 988	21 549	452 538	22 627	475 165	23 758	498 923	24 946	523 869	26 193	550 062	27 503	577 565
<b>Households</b>		<b>103 915</b>	<b>5 196</b>	<b>109 111</b>	<b>5 456</b>	<b>114 566</b>	<b>5 728</b>	<b>120 295</b>	<b>6 015</b>	<b>126 310</b>	<b>6 315</b>	<b>132 625</b>	<b>6 631</b>	<b>139 256</b>	<b>6 963</b>	<b>146 219</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha		6 928	346	7 274	364	7 638	382	8 020	401	8 421	421	8 842	442	9 284	464	9 748
Urban Residential Land @ 25 units/ha		4 157	208	4 364	218	4 583	229	4 812	241	5 052	253	5 305	265	5 570	279	5 849

From the above, the following is noted:

- o An estimated additional 1300 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare.
- o An estimated additional 600 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 25 units per hectare

**Table 28: Corresponding Residential Land Requirements from 2023 to 2030**

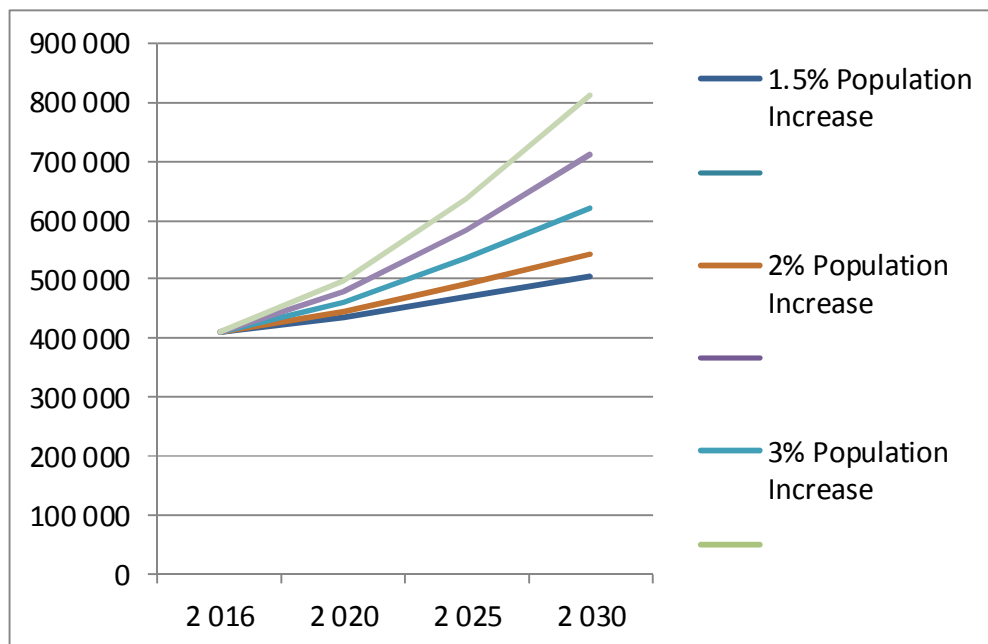
	<b>2 023</b>	Increase	<b>2 024</b>	Increase	<b>2 025</b>	Increase	<b>2 026</b>	Increase	<b>2 027</b>	Increase	<b>2 028</b>	Increase	<b>2 029</b>	Increase	<b>2 030</b>
1.5% Increase	455 552	6 833	462 386	6 936	469 322	7 040	476 361	7 145	483 507	7 253	490 759	7 361	498 121	7 472	505 593
<b>Households</b>	<b>115 330</b>	<b>1 730</b>	<b>117 060</b>	<b>1 756</b>	<b>118 816</b>	<b>1 782</b>	<b>120 598</b>	<b>1 809</b>	<b>122 407</b>	<b>1 836</b>	<b>124 243</b>	<b>1 864</b>	<b>126 107</b>	<b>1 892</b>	<b>127 998</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha	7 689	115	7 804	117	7 921	119	8 040	121	8 160	122	8 283	124	8 407	126	8 533
Urban ResidentialLand @ 25 units/ha	4 613	69	4 682	70	4 753	71	4 824	72	4 896	73	4 970	75	5 044	76	5 120
2% Increase	471 495	9 430	480 925	9 619	490 544	9 811	500 355	10 007	510 362	10 207	520 569	10 411	530 980	10 620	541 600
<b>Households</b>	<b>119 366</b>	<b>2 387</b>	<b>121 753</b>	<b>2 435</b>	<b>124 188</b>	<b>2 484</b>	<b>126 672</b>	<b>2 533</b>	<b>129 205</b>	<b>2 584</b>	<b>131 790</b>	<b>2 636</b>	<b>134 425</b>	<b>2 689</b>	<b>137 114</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha	7 958	159	8 117	162	8 279	166	8 445	169	8 614	172	8 786	176	8 962	179	9 141
Urban ResidentialLand @ 25 units/ha	4 775	95	4 870	97	4 968	99	5 067	101	5 168	103	5 272	105	5 377	108	5 485
3% Increase	504 820	15 145	519 965	15 599	535 564	16 067	551 631	16 549	568 180	17 045	585 225	17 557	602 782	18 083	620 865
<b>Households</b>	<b>127 803</b>	<b>3 834</b>	<b>131 637</b>	<b>3 949</b>	<b>135 586</b>	<b>4 068</b>	<b>139 653</b>	<b>4 190</b>	<b>143 843</b>	<b>4 315</b>	<b>148 158</b>	<b>4 445</b>	<b>152 603</b>	<b>4 578</b>	<b>157 181</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha	8 520	256	8 776	263	9 039	271	9 310	279	9 590	288	9 877	296	10 174	305	10 479
Urban ResidentialLand @ 25 units/ha	5 112	153	5 265	158	5 423	163	5 586	168	5 754	173	5 926	178	6 104	183	6 287
4% Increase	540 144	21 606	561 750	22 470	584 220	23 369	607 588	24 304	631 892	25 276	657 168	26 287	683 454	27 338	710 793
<b>Households</b>	<b>136 745</b>	<b>5 470</b>	<b>142 215</b>	<b>5 689</b>	<b>147 904</b>	<b>5 916</b>	<b>153 820</b>	<b>6 153</b>	<b>159 973</b>	<b>6 399</b>	<b>166 372</b>	<b>6 655</b>	<b>173 026</b>	<b>6 921</b>	<b>179 947</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha	9 116	365	9 481	379	9 860	394	10 255	410	10 665	427	11 091	444	11 535	461	11 996
Urban ResidentialLand @ 25 units/ha	5 470	219	5 689	228	5 916	237	6 153	246	6 399	256	6 655	266	6 921	277	7 198
5% Increase	577 565	28 878	606 444	30 322	636 766	31 838	668 604	33 430	702 034	35 102	737 136	36 857	773 993	38 700	812 693
<b>Households</b>	<b>146 219</b>	<b>7 311</b>	<b>153 530</b>	<b>7 677</b>	<b>161 207</b>	<b>8 060</b>	<b>169 267</b>	<b>8 463</b>	<b>177 730</b>	<b>8 887</b>	<b>186 617</b>	<b>9 331</b>	<b>195 948</b>	<b>9 797</b>	<b>205 745</b>
Urban Residential Land @ 15 units/ha	9 748	487	10 235	512	10 747	537	11 284	564	11 849	592	12 441	622	13 063	653	13 716
Urban ResidentialLand @ 25 units/ha	5 849	292	6 141	307	6 448	322	6 771	339	7 109	355	7 465	373	7 838	392	8 230

From the above, the following is noted:

- An estimated additional 6800 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2030 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare.
- An estimated additional 4000 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2030 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 25 units per hectare

The following graph is a graphical illustration of the above tables indicating a 1.45%, 2%, 3%, and 5% annual population growth rate.

**Figure 12: Population Growth Projections to 2030**



## 4.2 SOCIO-ECONOMIC INDICATORS

The following series of maps provides information pertaining to:

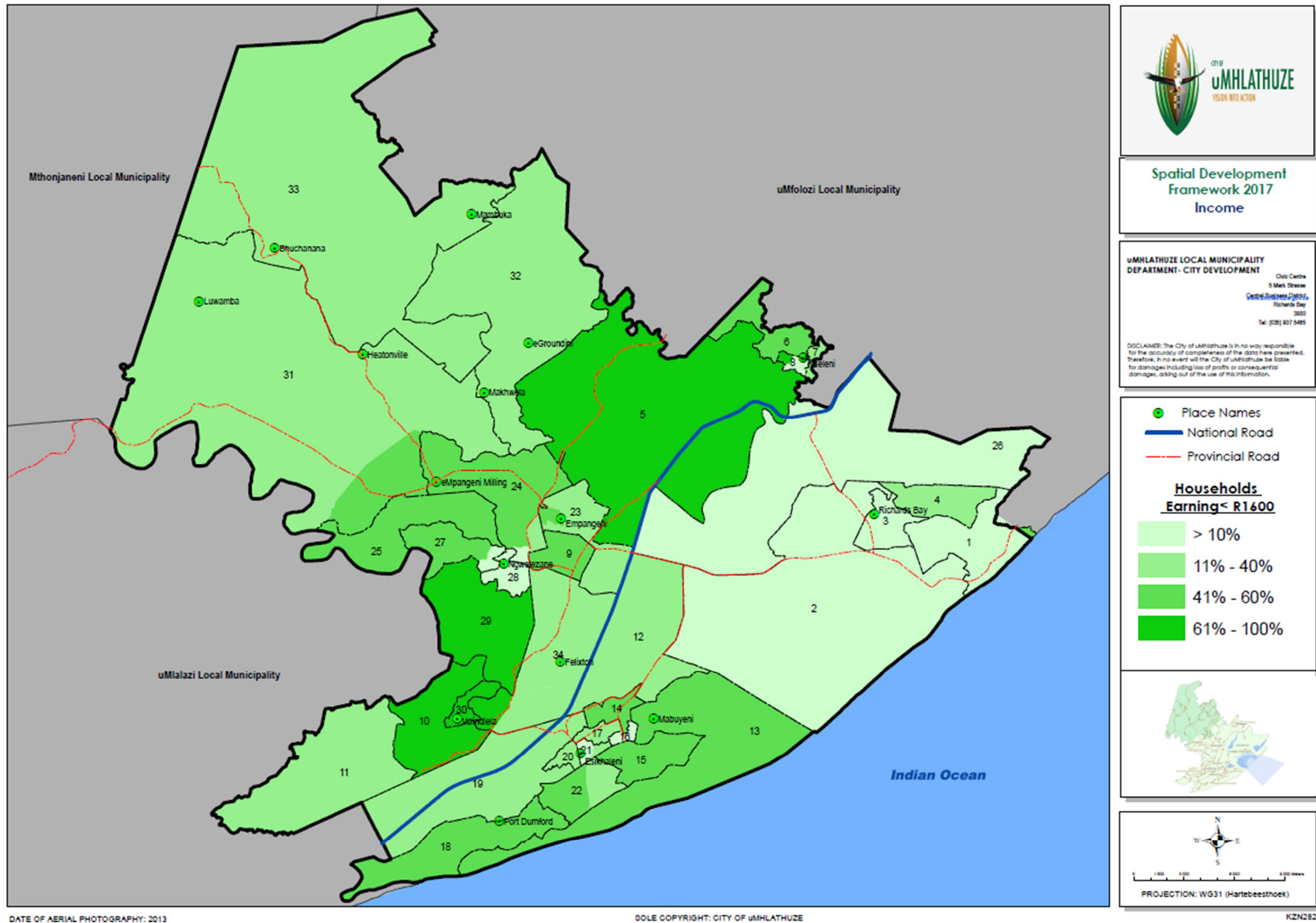
- Adult education levels
- Household income levels below R1 600 per month
- Unemployment levels
- Households access to piped water
- Household access to hygienic toilets

The following is summarised from the mapping provided:

- Regarding the comparative percentage of adults over the age of 20 years that do not have schooling, the incidence of this is highest (more than 61%) in Wards 5, 10, 13, 14, 18, 25, 32 and 33. This largely coincides with Traditional Authority areas.
- Regarding income levels as a percentage of households that earn less than R1600 per month it is noted that Wards 5, 10 and 29 are the most impoverished in this regard.
- Regarding unemployment levels and the wards with the highest percentage of unemployed individuals are 4, 5, 12, 18, 24 and 28.

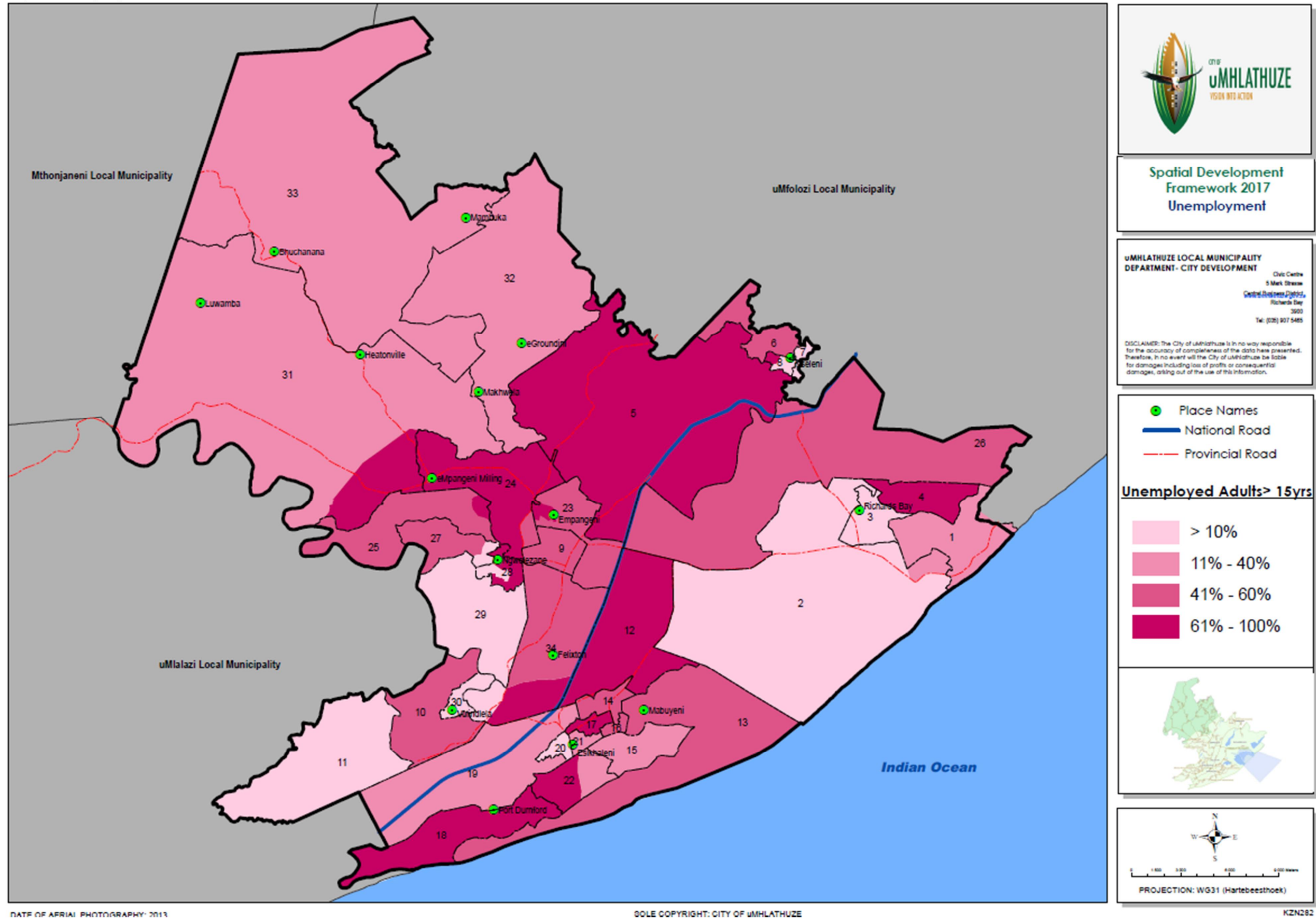


**Map 8: Income Level below R1600 per month**





**Map 9: Unemployment Levels**





### 4.3 SUMMARY OF KEY DEMOGRAPHIC AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC ISSUES

- In uMhlathuze, the highest population densities are found in the in the formal urban and surrounding areas, i.e. peri-urban areas.
- According to the 2016 Community Survey, uMhlathuze had 410 465 people and 103 915 households at the time at an average households size of 3.95.
- Population growth scenarios have been applied to the base figure from the 2016 Community Survey. Adequate data and research is not available at this time to apply an historic growth trend as the composition of the municipality, in terms of boundaries and wards, has changed post the Local Government Elections of 2016.
- At a steady population increase of 1,5% per annum, the municipal population will surpass 500 000 people by 2030.
- The municipality will reach a population of 500 000 before 2021 if a population growth rate of 5% takes place over the next few years. At such a 5% per annum population growth rate the number of households in the municipality will double by 2030.
- An estimated additional 1300 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare. An estimated additional 600 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 25 units per hectare.
- An estimated additional 6800 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2030 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare. An estimated additional 4000 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2030 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 25 units per hectare.
- Regarding the comparative percentage of adults over the age of 20 years that do not have schooling, the incidence of this is highest (more than 61%) in Wards 5, 10, 13, 14, 18, 25, 32 and 33. This are largely coincides with Traditional Authority areas.
- Regarding income levels as a percentage of households that earn less than R1600 per month it is noted that Wards 5, 10 and 29 are the most impoverished in this regard.
- Regarding unemployment levels and the wards with the highest percentage of unemployed individuals are 4, 5, 12, 18, 24 and 28.
- In the past, entrepreneurship development and sustainability efforts in townships have been hampered by a number of reasons including inequalities, level of education, and lack of adequate information.

## **5. ENVIRONMENTAL ANALYSIS**

### **5.1 GEOMORPHOLOGY**

The geomorphology of the landscape is generally described as a low-relief area that is bounded by a coastline and a high-relieve terrain on the landward side. Forming part of the Zululand Coastal Plain, the area indicates a history of erosion and sedimentation, and sea level fluctuations. Past geomorphologic processes have resulted in a unique landscape that supports complex hydrological systems, which in turn have resulted in high level of species diversity. The low level coastal floodplain is subject to natural flooding, climate change and sea level rise, and may increase flood risks over time. Landscape features are therefore important factors for decision-making and development planning.

### **5.2 GEOTECHNICAL CONDITIONS**

The uMhlathuze area is characterized by hydrological and geotechnical constraints. The following provided outlines the following categories:

- Developable with minor constraints
- Developable with more costly constraints
- Developed
- No Development recommended
- No restriction on development

### **5.3 WATER RESOURCES**

The geology and geomorphology of the area controls the transport and storage of water and influences the hydraulic functions of the ground water system. Furthermore, the soils are very permeable and almost all the rainfall infiltrates into the groundwater, where it is temporarily stored before being discharged into the streams, lakes and wetlands. Consequently the streams are generally perennial and seldom stop flowing even in drought conditions. This also creates a large underground storage reservoir that consistently sustains the coastal lakes which form the main water supply resources for the municipality.

### **5.4 BIODIVERSITY**

The municipal area falls within the Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany Biodiversity hotspot which is recognized as the second richest floristic region in Africa: containing approximately 80 % of the of South Africa's remaining forests, rich birdlife and many other significant flora and fauna species. The uMhlathuze Municipal Area supports a total of 174 Red Data species, which has been reported as amongst the highest in the country for an area of its size. This remarkable concentration of Red Data Species is one of the main reasons that the remaining percentage of its surface area under indigenous cover is considered largely irreplaceable by KZN Wildlife for meeting its conservation objectives in the province.

## 5.5 AIR QUALITY

In 2006, a study was initiated to assess air quality within the municipality and use this as one of the tools to inform their Spatial Development Framework and to ensure all environmental aspects were considered for current and future planning. This is in line with the City's vision and mission statements, which stress the improvement of quality of life through sustainable development.

In order to achieve the main objective of the study, the following steps were followed:

- Determination of ambient air quality limits to be adopted as targets for areas within the City of uMhlathuze;
- Determination of areas where local air quality limits are exceeded or are in danger of being exceeded;
- Determination of buffer zones for existing industrial areas; and,
- Identification of possible future industrial development areas that would not impact on the health and well-being of the residents in uMhlathuze or on the sensitive environment.

## 5.6 THE COAST

The uMhlathuze municipality is bordered by approximately 48 km of coastline, which presents a number of economic, conservation and recreational opportunities. The shoreline is characterized by sandy beaches, well established dune formations, estuarine environments, and hosts the country's largest deep water Port.

As is the case with most coastal municipalities in KwaZulu-Natal, the Municipality has encountered severe coastal erosion, which requires a management response that would prevent further loss of beaches, damage to property and infrastructure. Being predisposed to disruption of natural wave action because of the Port entrance, Alkantstrand beach at Richards Bay requires a reliable sand bypassing scheme. In the absence of sand budget on the Northern beaches, the municipality has to implement soft engineering techniques to mitigate against an eroding coastline. Any further development of the coast is furthermore required to take cognizance of the Coastal setback lines adopted by the municipality.

## 5.7 ENVIRONMENTAL ASSETS

**Economic Development:** Coastal Dunes contain heavy minerals that are sought after for mining, which is a key sector in the context of regional economic development and national plans.

**Tourism:** The beaches are significant tourism assets for the municipality, attracting an Annual Beach Festival a hosting beach events at Alkanstrand, and providing seasonal holiday destination and on-going recreational amenity. Other tourism assets worthy of preservation are the area's lakes and forests, heritage sites, conservation areas around Mzingazi River, and the estuary found south of the Port. The proposed developments of the waterfront, has a strong tourism focus. Environmental assets and socio-economic indicators have therefore been considered in the conceptual plans for the Waterfront.

**Water Resources:** The coastal Lakes (Lake Mzingazi, Lake Cubhu and Lake Nseze) are important water resources for the municipality. The development of Richards Bay in

particular, with its industrial development, has seen a significant increase in the abstraction rates of these lakes over the past 20 years.

**Ecological Features:** Water logged areas have been drained to accommodate development but has in the process, created important hydrological and ecological linkages. In certain instances, these artificial regimes, have resulted in the formation of valuable natural assets that support high levels of biodiversity and species endemism. An example of such is the Thulazihleka Pan system in Richards Bay.

## 5.8 THREATS TO ECOSYSTEM GOODS AND SERVICES

**Atmosphere:** Local ambient air quality conditions, particularly in industrial areas, indicate the inability for such areas to deal with any further emissions. This is because the quality of the air influences people's well-being and ecological integrity. It has been reported that there will be adverse risks to human health and to the environment, as well as exacerbating climate change, should current trends prevail.

**Hydrology and Water Resources:** The area is characterized by a complex hydrology and climate change would therefore have an impact on water resources in the area. At present, the availability and variability of water within the catchment is fully subscribed or allocated and there are predictions that the demand for water will grow. Against this backdrop, there are questions where future water will come from. Furthermore a decline in water quality in streams, lakes and rivers pose a risk for communities that extract water for subsistence, domestic or personal consumption

**Pollution:** Established developments, by virtue of specific land-uses, and growing population pressures, have resulted in intrinsic pressures on the environment. These manifest in the form of pollution which impact on the environment on various scales from localized illegal dumping to air and water pollution.

**Landscape:** Specific qualities of a landscape (natural vegetation, water bodies, landscaped parks etc.) provide aesthetically pleasing environments for the inhabitants of the area. The cumulative impact of development pressure and future planning scenarios however, pose a major threat to visual quality and a sense of place.

**Coastal Management:** Coastal Dune areas are sensitive to change and erosion remains a key concern along a coastline that is susceptible to the sea level rise.

**Biodiversity:** A large proportion of the Biodiversity Hotspot is being transformed and degraded by human activities, resulting in many vegetation types being vulnerable to further disturbances. These disturbances threaten species complexity and lead to imbalances within ecosystem.

## 5.9 ENVIRONMENTAL PRIORITIES AND OBJECTIVES

Having considered various sources of information, and given the current sphere of governance and accountability, the City of uMhlathuze has identified and prioritized the following as key to meeting its environmental targets and objectives:

- To ensure legal compliance of environmental bylaws and legislative requirements by all (Council, Employees, Contractors)
- To ensure sufficient suite of local environmental bylaws and effective enforcement thereof
- Regulation of land use and enforcement of usage of land in terms of the land use management system

- To minimize air pollution (prevention and reduction) in the City of uMhlathuze through efficient monitoring
- To reduce overall water pollution within the municipality as a result of land use practices through monitoring hotspots and imposing stringent requirements during environmental authorisation and planning processes
- To ensure management of all water resources in a sustainable manner by adhering to lake management plans and water services bylaws
- To ensure the management of soil and land resources in a sustainable manner through environmental and land use planning
- To ensure the protection of habitats and natural resources that would contribute to conservation targets of the province
- To preserve heritage resources by preventing damage and loss through development planning processes and through the tourism sector
- Complying with the provisions of the National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal Management Act
- Maintaining the biological diversity and productivity of coastal ecosystems through implementation of a coastal management programme and estuary management plans
- To comply with the provisions of National Environmental Management: Waste Act
- To improve energy efficiency of existing facilities and reducing demand and facilitating renewable energy/co-generation initiatives and projects
- To be prepared and anticipate disaster management within the municipality
- To ensure that the municipality maintains its environmental assets through environmental tools such as project specific EIA's, the EMF and the Environmental Framework of the SDF
- To increase the knowledge and understanding, and prepare for vulnerability to environmental changes within the municipality

## **5.10 THE ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES MANAGEMENT PLAN**

The Municipality adopted an Environmental Services Management Plan (ESMP) as broader planning tool to guide spatial development. The ESMP outlines a number of goals for Environmental Services Management. Two critical goals are:

- To define cohesive and functional spatial management units within the municipal area that needs to be managed in order to optimise the delivery of environment services.
- To develop management plans for each management unit that identify the management activities required to secure environmental services supply.

The areas that provide environmental services to the City are spatially defined, and the following “Levels” of protection were determined:

- Nature Reserves (Level 1): Included in the nature reserve zone are areas of high biodiversity and environmental significance that require a high level of legal protection. Included are unique habitats or areas that are considered important at International, National or Provincial level; estuaries, lakes, major wetlands, natural forests, coastal buffers and critically endangered habitats that are protected in terms of international or national legislation and/or treaties. It is recommended that these areas be proclaimed as nature reserves in terms of relevant legislation such as the National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act.
- Conservation Zone (Level 2): Included in the conservation zone are areas of biodiversity / environmental significance, which are not viable for proclamation as nature reserves, but that require some form of legal protection. Included are unique or regionally important natural habitats; wetland and forest areas that are protected in

terms of national legislation; and all areas that fall within the 1:100 year flood line. No transformation of the natural assets or the development of land for purposes other than conservation should be permitted in this zone. Sustainable use of renewable resources is permitted.

- **Open Space Linkage Zone (Level 3):** Included in the open space linkage zone are areas that provide a natural buffer for Level 1 and 2 Zones, areas that provide a natural link between Level 1 and 2 Zones and areas that supply, or ensure the supply of, significant environmental services. Transformation of natural assets and the development of land in these zones should only be permitted under controlled conditions.
- **Development Zone (Level 4):** Includes all areas that are not included in Level 1, 2 and 3 zones. Areas in this zone are either already developed or transformed and contain land and natural assets that are not critical for environmental service supply. However, it is recognised that the development of these zones can impact on environmental services supply. As such, they should be developed in a manner that supports, or at least does not adversely impact on, the sustainability of environmental service supply in Level 1, 2 and 3 zones.

## 5.11 THE ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT FRAMEWORK (EMF)

An Environmental Management Framework was commissioned for the Richards Bay Port expansion area and the IDZ. The EMF was initiated by the Department of Agriculture and Environmental Affairs through the Danish Government funding agency (DANIDA), whilst the Municipality, Port and the IDZ were consulted extensively throughout the process. The study area was confined to the Port expansion and IDZ area owing to environmental sensitivity (mainly hydrological and ecological) versus enhancement of socio-economic incentives that such development would foster.

Key findings of the EMF are summarised hereunder:

### 5.11.1 Port Expansion

- The port and harbour area falls within environmental management zones of the EMF which both yield high levels of sensitivity in terms of biodiversity and geotechnical constraints.
- The Transnet Due Diligence Investigation for the acquisition of land for the proposed port development framework has however identified areas that are potentially suitable for offsetting the above environmental risks. These areas would first have to be accepted either prior to, or in the process of the EIA, should Transnet be granted environmental authorization. It must be noted that in the absence of formal guidelines, there was reluctance on the part of the environmental authorities to pay attention to offset development in the EMF.
- The EMF identified a number of existing activities that render further constraints to the proposed expansion of the port:
  - The slimes dam from the mining operations at Hillendale (Exxaro) poses a risk to the hydrological and ecological integrity of the area. This is a concern in terms of this being a possible offset area should the Port proceed with its EIA application for the proposed Port expansion;
  - The Foskor Gypsum Stack or slimes dam between Bayside and the Papyrus Swamp is a contaminated site with potential to severely constrain future port expansion;
  - The location of Bayside Aluminium; and

- The potential conflict between conservation and port/harbour expansion that would require strict development control.

### 5.11.2 IDZ Development

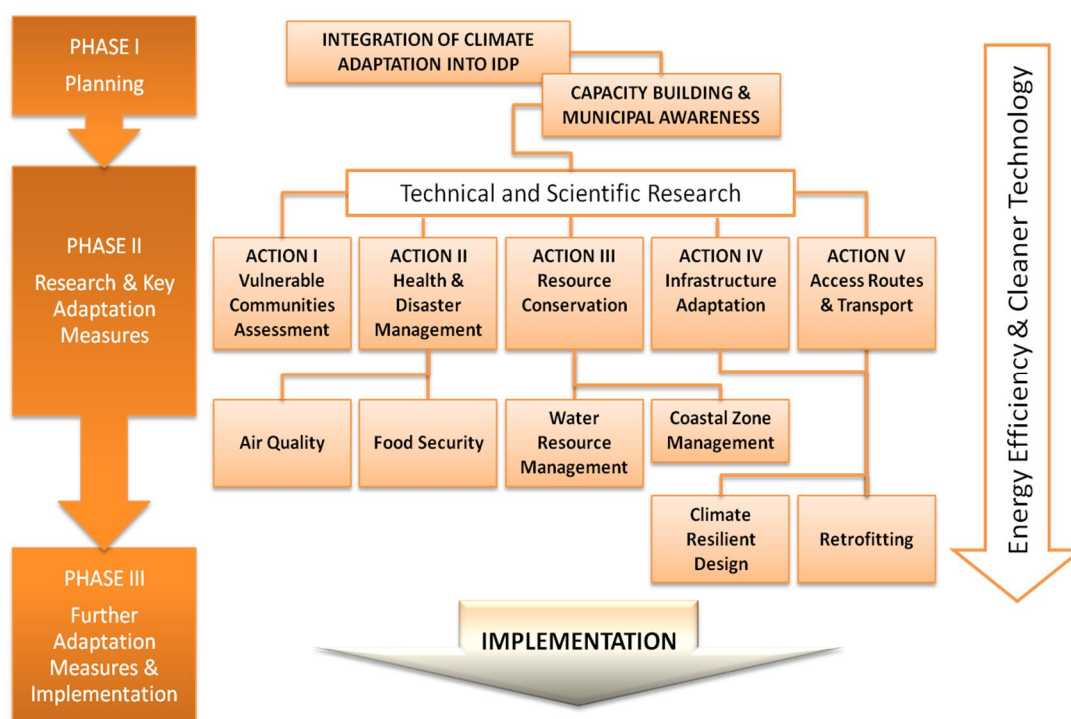
- The EMF sensitivity analysis points to areas that are of great concern for the IDZ geotechnical constraints as well as the presence of Kwambonambi Grassland in certain areas, notably IDZ 1D and the IDZ 1C site.
- There are also a number of significant environmental management issues that would require strict management measures in terms of air quality.

## 5.12 RESPONSE TO CLIMATE CHANGE

Regardless of the attempts to mitigate the impacts of climate change, it is widely accepted that many of the anticipated changes are destined to take place. The climate change strategy was therefore drafted on the basis of two fundamental principles, i.e. **mitigation** and **adaptation** through the implementation of the Climate Change Municipal Action Plan.

The Municipal Action plan adopts a phased approach to allow for a systematic and realistic response to potential climate impacts. Represented in the following figure, it is proposed that the plan be adopted over a 5-year period, coinciding with the rollout of the Municipality's Integrated Development Plan (IDP).

**Figure 13: Phased Approach to Municipal Action Plan for Climate Change**



The following table provides a more detailed explanation of the above:

**Table 29: Phased Approach to Municipal Action Plan**

<b>Phase 1</b>	<p><b>Integration into the IDP</b></p> <p>The long term vision of the municipality is to mainstream all sector plans within the IDP and within decision-making procedures to allow for protection of resources and communities, in line with the Climate Change Strategy.</p>
	<p><b>Appointment of a Climate “Champion”</b></p> <p>The climate champion would ensure that the Municipality's projects and activities are carried out in accordance with local and international environmental legislation and policy, and within the Integrated Development Plan (IDP). In summary, this role would include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Awareness creation in terms of local climate change impacts</li> <li>○ Development of climate change mitigation and adaptation plans</li> <li>○ Ensure integration into IDP</li> <li>○ Initiating international fundraising for climate change related projects; which would utilise existing personnel</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Municipal Awareness Programme</b></p> <p>The process of mainstreaming climate change issues into municipal planning should begin within the Municipality itself, with the aim of disseminating this knowledge to decision makers. This should be initiated through a brief awareness campaign for various departments (perhaps through a presentation by the climate champion within branch meetings), and provision of a communicative pamphlet or brief. This should serve, at a minimum, to initiate climate thinking within Municipal structures.</p>
	<p><b>Climate Change Working Group</b></p> <p>The establishment of a Climate Change Working Group or partnership will encourage communication between Municipal departments, industry and NGO role-players for open discussion of climate impacts and solutions from various points of view.</p>
<b>Phase 2 Adaptation Actions</b>	<p><b>Vulnerable Communities Assessment</b></p> <p>It is recommended that the Municipality undertake a vulnerability profile of the area in order to determine geographically where climate-related health impacts are likely to be exacerbated by differential vulnerability. The results of this assessment will provide maps indicating areas of concern and priority with regard to climate change impacts in the Municipality – an example may be communities living within flood line areas, which would be vulnerable to floods.</p>
	<p><b>Health and Disaster Management</b></p> <p>A two-step response to Health and Disaster management is recommended:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ An assessment of health care facilities in the Municipality in terms of capacity and facilities. Identification of obvious shortcomings or priority areas.</li> <li>○ Completion of the Disaster Management Plan taking into account the need for responses to climate change induced flood or storm events and/or disease outbreaks. This Plan furthermore requires communication and dissemination to the Municipality and public.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Agriculture and Communities</b></p> <p>Food security of Municipal residents, particularly in peri-urban and rural settlements, is a long-term concern for the Municipality. Although responsibility in terms of food security for the public is not considered to lie with the</p>



	<p>Municipality, but rather with government, it is important that the Municipality assess agricultural concerns and is aware of the need to alleviate climate-induced pressure on food security. Some examples include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Launching of marketing campaigns for local fresh produce</li> <li>○ Establishment of food production partnerships within the communities (CBOs)</li> <li>○ Knowledge sharing regarding crop type and yield assessment for future initiatives</li> </ul> <p>This may lead to longer term research projects into crop viability and livelihoods assessment. The Municipality could potentially apply for international funding for such initiatives.</p> <p><b>Resource Conservation</b></p> <p>Water resources are of extreme importance within South Africa, and water quality is of particular concern in the uMhlathuze area. The following responses to this issue are recommended:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ The Municipality, in conjunction with Mhlathuze Water should evaluate the existing infrastructure to determine the sustainability of that infrastructure to supply water in an uncertain climatic future. The investigation should prepare a "Future's demand" profile for the city in terms of water requirements which should be evaluated in terms of climate influenced rainfall.</li> <li>○ The Municipality forming a partnership with the Catchment Management Forum to allow for reporting and assessment of water quality testing and management.</li> <li>○ Make improvements to urban drainage, the use of sustainable drainage systems, schemes that 'make space for water'</li> <li>○ Stormwater retention/detention ponds and constructed wetlands</li> <li>○ Incorporation of extreme precipitation events into storm sewer design, land use planning and zoning to avoid locating structures and buildings in flood/landslide prone areas (these will need to be mapped as a component of re-setting the city 1:50 year floodlines).</li> </ul> <p><b>Biodiversity</b></p> <p>Through discussions with local stakeholders, the development of an Invasive Species Management Plan is critical in addressing of biodiversity and conservation concerns within the Municipality.</p> <p><b>Infrastructure Adaptation</b></p> <p>A culture of 'climate resilient' infrastructure design and construction needs to be instilled within the Municipality's decision makers, engineers and architects. In terms of city buildings, roads and water management structures, the Municipality may respond through the 'retrofitting' of facilities (widening of storm water channels, fitting of cooling devices, etc.) or through the proactive construction of new infrastructure with climate change impacts in mind. Dialogue with engineers and architects are required to disseminate climate change modelling data and to discuss the implications, both practically and economically, and to allow for discussions around the best possible action.</p> <p>This action applies to both residential and commercial buildings, and includes the following aspects:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Determining whether the existing dams and reservoirs provide adequate storage capacity under variable rainfall conditions.</li> </ul>
--	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Evaluate whether pipeline infrastructure can cope with increased flows</li> <li>○ Establishment of a culture of 'climate resilient' planning.</li> <li>○ The establishment of effective building guidelines, including, for example, the use of vegetation buffers and reduced amounts of impervious surfacing to reduce runoff.</li> <li>○ Revision of the Municipality's flood lines and adequate design of storm water drains and water storage structures. These should take into account heavier, more intense floods and increased runoff.</li> <li>○ Use of 'climate resilient' building materials (particularly for informal housing).</li> <li>○ Prevention of settlement and development in floodplains.</li> <li>○ Confirmation and consideration of the ocean setback lines and beach erosion study in terms of projected sea level rise, and risk assessment for these with regard to vulnerable communities and infrastructure.</li> </ul>
	<p><b>Transport Planning</b></p> <p>It is recommended that the Municipality identify problem areas for widening of bridges (retrofitting) or provision of alternate routes. Problem areas already identified include the Richards Bay Minerals and the Nseze Lake Routes. It is understood that road and transport infrastructure is managed at a provincial level; however the Municipality should play an important role in the identification of problem areas and the lobbying to provincial government in terms of infrastructure improvement. Part of the process also entails a campaign to encourage incentives for car-pooling and the use of cleaner fuels for Municipal vehicles. Dialogue should be initiated on the introduction of safe and energy efficient public transport mechanisms, which could aim to improve air quality and congestion in the city centre.</p>

The first two phases of the Climate Change Strategy require thorough implementation, follow up and monitoring. These actions should be continuously assessed and supplemented with new findings, and updated with municipal plans, goals and communication resources. Through this iterative process the City of uMhlathuze would demonstrate its proactive response to the threat of climate change, for the City, its industries and local communities.

The Municipality has identified partnerships to assist with attaining its Climate Change objectives as outlined hereunder:

#### **ICLEI:**

- Represents an International Affiliation / network of Local Governments that deal with Climate Change and Sustainable Development agenda
- Membership provides access to international events and bodies e.g. COPs, UN events, training and networking with local governments across the globe on various development programmes
- The CoU has benefited from such in the past from Low Emissions Development Programmes

#### **INTERNATIONAL WATER STEWARDSHIP PROGRAM:**

- Commissioned by the German Federal Ministry for Economic Cooperation and Development (BMZ) through the GIZ
- In South Africa, partnered with the World Wildlife Fund and National Business Initiative
- The uMhlathuze Water Stewardship Partnership was established in 2017 amidst the drought. Deals with sustainability issues affecting water security within important catchments

### 5.13 COASTAL DEVELOPMENT SETBACK LINES

A service provider was commissioned to determine an updated development setback line for the beaches of Richards Bay, north of the existing harbour entrance, taking into account this long-term erosion trend. This line is to provide for a 100-year setback/buffer, which would provide the Municipality and proposed developers with long-term certainty regarding property safety. This could be termed an extreme setback, as development setback lines are generally determined for a 50-year period.

A numerical shoreline model was calibrated with 17 years of beach survey and bypassing data to an average accuracy of 11 m. It was found that the rate of beach nourishment, from sand bypassing at the port, plays a determining role in the location of the 100-year setback. Three scenarios of future sand bypassing were evaluated:

No bypassing from 2006 onwards – Scenario 1 – as the Worst Case Scenario:

*It was found that the magnitude of erosion predicted for Scenario 1 invalidated basic assumptions made in the study. The 100-year setback line could therefore not be determined for this scenario, and a 50-year setback line is presented instead. This lies up to 350 m landward of the present shoreline.*

**Continued bypassing at the average annual rate of the past 17 years (607 200 m<sup>3</sup>/yr) – Scenario 2 – as the Most Realistic Scenario:**

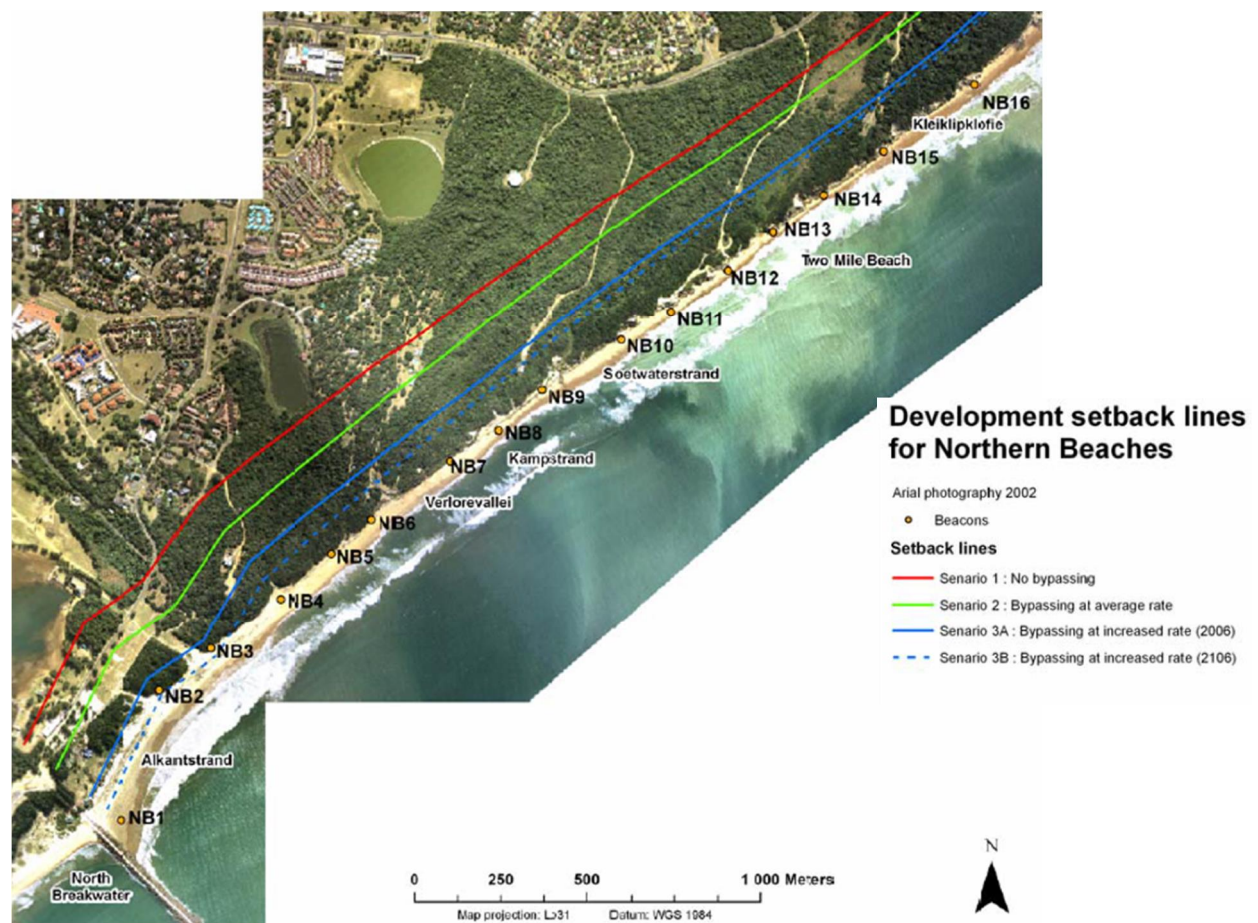
The setback line for Scenario 2, which is possibly the most realistic scenario, lies up to 250 m landward of the present shoreline. Some existing developments are located seaward of it, which could therefore be impacted in future due to beach erosion.

**Bypassing at an increased rate (950 000 m<sup>3</sup>/yr) – Scenario 3 – as the Best Case Scenario:**

Two setback lines are provided for Scenario 3, as the accretion of the beach that is predicted to occur during the course of the scenario effectively means that the line would shift seawards over time. Implementation of this setback line would require that the National Ports Authority agree to the increased sand bypassing and is subject to finding suitable material for bypassing.

The next most critical factor in determining the location of the setback line was found to be the occurrence of slip failures/dune slumps of the high dunes. An analysis of aerial photographs indicated that such slips could result in rapid coastal retreat in the order of 110 m. It is recommended that the geotechnical stability of the dunes be investigated in detail, if the retreat distances used in this study are to be refined. The following figures provide the setback line for the three scenarios explained above.

**Figure 14: Development Setback Lines along Northern Beaches**



**Figure 15: Coastal Erosion and Installed Defences**



## 5.14 THE IMPACT OF BIODIVERSITY ON SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT

Please note that this impact has only been determined for the pre-2016 LGE portion of the municipality, and, as such, has to be expanded upon to include the whole post-2016 LGE municipal area.

This section attempts to assess the state and condition of biodiversity assets within the jurisdiction of the uMhlathuze Municipality and implications thereof in terms of future development potential. The Biodiversity assets are mapped out and represented by, amongst others, the vegetation types within catchments.

The assessment is based on the functionality of geographically defined units rather than on individual vegetation types because the former implicitly includes the importance of spatial patterning and inter-connectedness. Functionality is defined here as the perceived ability of a landscape unit to maintain biodiversity. This must not be confused with the commonly used notion of the role of diversity in ecosystem functioning (supply of goods and services), which is addressed in the Environmental Services Management Plan of the municipality (KZ 282).

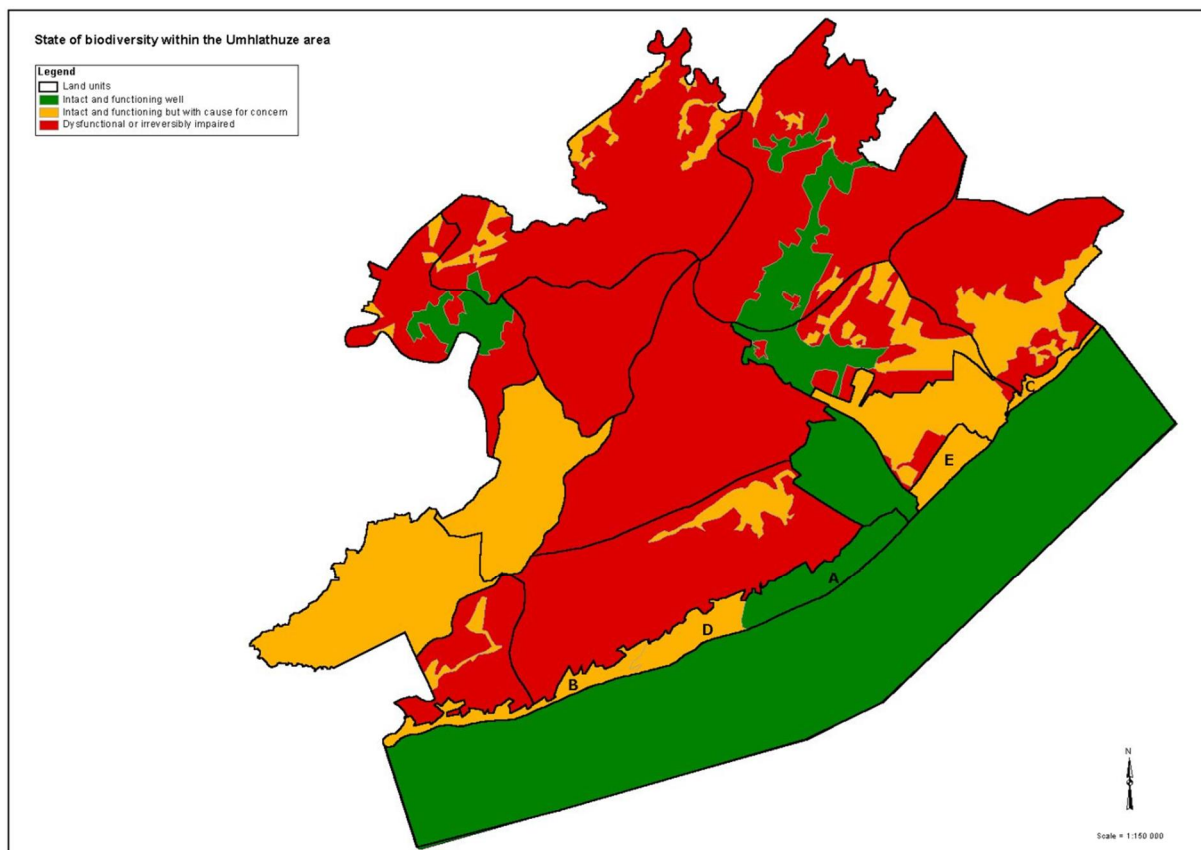
Other biodiversity assets of significance include the following.

- Estuary (landscape 6) and Lake Cubhu
- Nseleni valley (landscape 10), with fragmented extension into landscape 12 (upstream)
- An east-west corridor within Richards Bay (landscape 9)
- Grasslands, savanna and thicket of the upper
- Portion of the Mhlathuze catchment within KZ282 (landscape 13)
- Lake Mzingazi and environs (landscape 8)

The functionality assessment of biodiversity units is graphically summarized in the following figure, in which the ranks are simplified into a three colour code:

- Green for intact and functioning well
- Orange for intact and functioning but with cause for concern (e.g. Fragmentation is continuing apace or pronounced pollution inputs)
- Red for dysfunctional or irreversibly impaired

## Map 10: State of Biodiversity Based on Functional Units



The ranking of each landscape unit is provided in the following table, whilst the scale for ranking of functionality is as follows:

- 1 High functionality
- 2 Moderate functionality
- 3 Low functionality
- 4 Dysfunctional
- 5 Irreversibly impaired



**Table 30: The Functionality of Landscape Units in Respect of Maintaining Biodiversity**

<b>Landscape unit</b>	<b>Size</b>	<b>Condition</b>	<b>Landscape context</b>	<b>Functionality Rank</b>
<b>1</b> Dune Forest (compartment 1 - South estuary)	Large and intact; stable	Good; edge: area low; little fragmentation. Advancing coastline has resulted in slumping in places. Will mostly be removed by dune mining.	Key north-south linkage along coast for dune forest biota (national importance). Well connected to interior through estuary and rivers. Key winter refuge for Afromontane (Ngoye) birds (national importance). Rainfall receiver (flood attenuation), hence key water source for Lake Cubhu and estuary (sanctuary).	<b>1</b>
<b>1</b> Dune Forest (compartment 2 - North Umlalazi)	Large but shrinking;	Moderate; high edge: area ratio; increasingly dissected by cultivation. Further threat of fragmentation from an advancing coastline that has resulted in slumping in places. Will mostly be removed by dune mining.	Key north-south linkage along coast for dune forest biota (national importance), southern peninsula especially important as a stepping stone. Integral component of Umlalazi Nature Reserve. Connected to interior through Umlalazi river. Key winter refuge for Afromontane (Ngoye) birds (national importance), with which it is connected via inland forest fragments (landscape 3). Rainfall receiver (flood attenuation), hence key water source for Umlalazi estuary (international importance because it never closes) and for Lake Cubhu and estuary (sanctuary). Umlalazi river and estuary is a regional fish nursery.	<b>2</b>
<b>1</b> Dune Forest (compartment 3 - North harbour mouth)	Moderate size, apparently stable	Moderate; insular with residential to west and mined area to north. Advancing coastline has resulted in slumping in places.	Key north-south linkage along coast for dune forest biota (nationally important). Main source of plant propagules and animal populations for recolonization of mined areas to the north. Connected to interior through corridors to Lake Mzingazi and beyond. Key winter refuge for Afromontane (Ngoye) birds (national importance). Rainfall receiver (flood attenuation). Key water source for Lake Mzingazi (national importance).	<b>2</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>1</b> Disturbed Dune Forest (compartment 5-between 1 and 2)	Small, increasing	Poor - mainly current or recently logged plantation. Secondary regrowth infested with alien plants. Western boundary dissected by cultivation. Further threat of fragmentation from an advancing coastline that has resulted in slumping in places.	Important for linkage between forest north and south of estuary, secondary growth functioning in a manner similar to an ecotone. Rainfall receiver (flood attenuation). Key water source for Lake Cubhu and estuary (sanctuary).	<b>4</b>
<b>1</b> Relict Dune Vegetation and Stabilized sands (compartment 4 - between estuary and harbour mouths)	Small, disappearing	Poor - much derived from redeposited area following harbour construction. Predominantly alien trees and scrub.	Important north-south linkage across the harbour and estuary, which is otherwise a big gap. Appropriate and important area for intervention. Rainfall receiver (flood attenuation).	<b>4</b>



Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>2</b> Lake Cubhu and catchment	Catchment highly transformed by cultivation and urbanisation	Remaining biodiversity assets: Coastal Forest patches within plantations; drainage lines fragmented by cultivation; mostly untransformable wetlands.	<p>Lake Cubhu is a key natural feature of national importance, still intact but 'driven' entirely by this landscape and the dune cordon (ie a self-contained system). It is also a key water source because of its size.</p> <p>Lake Cubhu still clearly linked to the estuary (sanctuary), which is essential for crustacean migrations. Integrity of the connecting 'neck' is essential.</p> <p>Swamps protecting key inlet points are critical buffers for maintaining water quality.</p> <p>Water quality threatened by organic inputs from Esikhawheni (organic soups in reedbeds).</p> <p>Drainage lines support very poor aquatic diversity.</p> <p>Poor water quality apparently reflected by water-borne diseases.</p> <p>Dune mining could threaten the hydrological dynamics maintaining Lake Cubhu.</p> <p>Forest patches are dysfunctional because of a high perimeter-to-edge ratio and heavy infestation with alien plants.</p> <p>Forest patches serve a key stepping-stone role for wintering birds from Ngoye Forest en route to the dune cordon.</p> <p>Drainage systems are becoming dysfunctional because of the extent of fragmentation by cultivation.</p>	<b>4</b>
<b>3</b> Umlalazi catchment on Quaternary sands	Catchment transformed by commercial and communal agriculture	Remaining biodiversity assets: Coastal Forest patches within plantations along drainage lines whose condition is declining.	<p>An important water source for the internationally important Umlalazi estuary but declining in delivery of water because of plantation forestry.</p> <p>Forest patches are moderately functional (better perimeter-to-edge ratio than those in landscape 2), but are infested with alien plants.</p> <p>Forest patches serve a key stepping-stone role for wintering birds from Ngoye Forest en route to the dune cordon.</p>	<b>4</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>4</b> Umlalazi catchment within hills	Catchment transformed by mainly communal agriculture	Remaining biodiversity assets: drainage lines and associated fragments too steep for cultivation are all that remain.	Catchment still hydrologically sound, producing water for Mtunzini and a key source for the Umlalazi river and estuary. A degree of inter-connectivity remains for remnant biodiversity because of drainage lines, but overall it is too fragmented to function very effectively. Drainage lines offer a limited biodiversity corridor between Ngoye forest and the Umlalazi river.	<b>5</b>
<b>5</b> uMhlathuze river on Quaternary sands	Almost completely transformed, including drainage lines	Terrestrial systems and drainage lines have been irreversibly impaired. Umlathuze river in poor condition for aquatic biota because of low flow resulting from abstraction and impoundments (eg Goudetrou Dam, Felixton) and a weir. Remnant floodplain vegetation and some swamp forest occurs along the river. Much of floodplain has been transformed to sugarcane.	Landscape unit constitutes a significant biodiversity barrier between the coast and hinterland. Umhlathuze river offers a dysfunctional linkage for aquatic and floodplain biota. Umhlathuze river is a key 'driver' of the estuary (sanctuary) for hydrological and sedimentation dynamics. Lake Nsezi was originally formed by backfill from flooding of the Umhlathuze.	<b>5</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>6</b> Estuary (sanctuary) complex	Large connected components of mangrove forest, salt marsh, mudflats and <i>Phragmites australis</i> marsh around the periphery of the open water	Good condition but experiencing increasing human impact - logging of mangrove trees and fish poaching.	Important estuary because of size, only estuaries of comparable size in SA are Knysna, Kosi and Durban. International bird refuge for palearctic migrants, especially small-bodied waders (more reliable than St Lucia). Important nursery for regional marine fisheries. One of the largest mangrove systems in southern Africa. Critical for the migration of crustaceans and other biota to Lake Cubhu. Supports an important prawn nursery. Functioning depends critically on inputs from the Umhlathuze river and from Lake Cubhu. Increased sedimentation from harbour construction and from deterioration of the catchment has resulted in a flood-tide delta developing rapidly that could alter functioning.	<b>1</b>
<b>7</b> Harbour estuary and associated shoreline	Water body is large and functional, shoreline fragmented.	Estuary was transformed from a shallow to a deep structure with harbour construction, and is in moderate condition. Shoreline development has resulted in reduced components of moderate size, becoming dysfunctional.	A deep water estuary that is dominated by marine components. International bird refuge for palearctic migrants, especially large-bodied waders. Supports a crustacean nursery (especially prawns and crabs) probably larger than that of the sanctuary. Has allowed significant quantities of alien marine species to establish and proliferate. Still supports some of the original pre-development 'climax' mangroves. Maintains an active connection with Lake Mzingazi for crustacean and other aquatic biota. Complements the estuary of the sanctuary.	<b>3</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>8</b> Lake Mzingazi and catchment	Catchment extensively transformed by urbanization, plantation forestry and communal agriculture.	Much of the catchment has been irreversibly impaired by transformation. Remaining biodiversity asset includes dry forest, swamp forest and wetlands. Informal settlement has spread along much of the lake's perimeter, threatening water quality because there is no sewage system. Water quality is moderate. Forestry has reduced water inputs.	Lake Mzingazi is a freshwater body of national significance because of its size and location. Its functioning depends on the condition of the catchment. Important as a secondary nursery for crustacean species, including five prawn species, which require an open connection with the harbour be maintained. Lake Mzingazi once supported bird colonies, but no longer. Forests on the southwest bank support a notable bird diversity. An important source of water for Richards Bay.	<b>3</b>
<b>9</b> Richards Bay town and environs	Despite urbanization and industrial development, large, interconnected fragments remain.	Remaining biodiversity asset: Coastal Grassland, hygrophilous grassland, wetlands, dry forest and swamp forest. Varies from good or moderate condition to heavily impacted by alien plants or industry. Fluoride leakage into the environment may affect skeletal development of vertebrates.	Kwabonambi grasslands of national conservation significance. Most southerly remnants of Coastal Grassland, re-encountered only at St Lucia, of which large, functional portions remain. Diverse vegetation types maintain a key east-west biodiversity corridor between Lake Mzingazi and the Enseleni river (Landscape 10). Thulazihleka Pan is an important bird locality and feeding area.	<b>3</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>10</b> Nseleni river and immediate catchment	Most of the catchment has been transformed by commercial agriculture and forestry, but large, well connected portions remain along the river.	Remaining biodiversity asset: grasslands, dry forest, swamp forest, wetlands, occurring as a consolidated unit of good to moderate condition. Berm has transformed lower reaches of river into a lake. Water quality impacted by eutrophication (algal blooms)	The Nseleni valley provides a key link for biodiversity between coastal units and the interior. A key regional repository of biodiversity of both plants and the supported trophic web, especially of secretive species. One of the most intact remaining areas of biodiversity within KZ282. Contains the only formally conserved component in KZ282. This valley and the sanctuary meet RAMSAR criteria. Wetlands are critical for maintaining water quality and the quality of input into the sanctuary. Transformed local catchment has been irreversibly impaired.	<b>1</b>
<b>11</b> Upper Umhlathuze river: immediate catchment	Most terrestrial areas transformed, some discrete blocks remaining plus water bodies	Remaining biodiversity asset: large freshwater lakes and associated wetlands with contiguous remnant dry forest and grassland. Water bodies vulnerable to quality of water input; remaining terrestrial blocks in poor to moderate condition	Lakes are of national significance as they contain red data fish species. Lakes are off-channel (cut-off) lakes that therefore accumulate agro-chemicals and effluent. Their water quality is poor. Lakes and associated dryland vegetation connected to a degree via riverine stretches.	<b>4</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>12</b> Upper Enseleni Catchment	Mostly transformed with some sizeable remnant blocks of dryland vegetation	Remaining biodiversity asset: grassland, thicket, savanna, dry forest, swamp forest and wetlands associated with river. Remnant blocks in moderate to poor condition. Landscape in poor condition that would become dysfunctional with further fragmentation. Transformed areas are irreversibly impaired for biodiversity.	The remaining asset enjoys a degree of interconnectedness via riverine stretches to the intact landscape along the lower reaches of the Nseleni river.	<b>4</b>
<b>13</b> Upper Umhlathuze catchment	A large, well-integrated block of indigenous vegetation with satellites. Remainder of catchment transformed by communal and commercial agriculture. Umhlathuze affected by weir abstraction.	Remaining biodiversity asset: grassland, thicket, savanna and dry forest. Much of the remaining vegetation is heavily utilized by livestock and humans.	A core area of the little remaining inland grassland, savanna and thicket vegetation, covering the local altitudinal range. In the context of KZ282, an important representative of lowveld vegetation that is different to anything on the coast. Connected to some degree with remnants on landscape 12.	<b>2</b>
<b>14</b> Empangeni environs	Almost completely transformed by urbanization and agriculture.	Few remaining fragments, mostly in poor condition	Irreversibly impaired for maintaining biodiversity. Offers a significant barrier to flow and movement of biodiversity.	<b>5</b>

Landscape unit	Size	Condition	Landscape context	Functionality Rank
<b>15</b> Marine section	Narrow continental shelf; extensive sandy beaches and almost no rocky shelves (Port Durnford)	Large scale effluent discharge into the continental shelf by pipelines	Key interface between tropical and temperate marine biota in KZN. Key conduit for the movement of marine larvae, especially of prawns to the Tugela banks.	<b>1</b>

The greater uMhlathuze Municipal Area supports a total of 174 Red Data species, which according to the South African National Biodiversity Institute, ranks amongst the highest in the country for an area of its size. This remarkable concentration of Red Data Species is one of the main reasons that most of the remaining percentage of undeveloped, indigenous land cover, is considered irreplaceable by Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife for meeting its conservation objectives in the Province.

**Table 31: Red Data Species of Significance**

Vegetation Type	Red Data Species (Significance)	Conservation Target
Grasslands	124	100 % following a detailed survey. Conservation of a substantial portion of the remaining natural asset in the region is required if conservation objectives are to be pursued
Forests	90	
Nseleni River_Lake Nsezi System	70	
Large Wetlands	55	
Estaries	28	
Lakes	18	
Mhlathuze River System	11	
Swamp Forests	9	

All of the remaining ecosystem types are important for supporting Red Data Species, implying that there is a direct conflict with future development imperatives. The Spatial Development Framework has identified such development opportunities for the area. Port expansion with associated industrial development is the single most significant opportunity in the area with tremendous potential to grow the local, regional and national economy. Existing planning approaches in the area also present opportunities for to enhance conservation and hence tourism objectives. The limited space to accommodate the growth demand in the area reflects the realities of ecological risks that may arise and the anticipated conflict between conservation and development. The situation highlights the need for closer collaboration and coordinated planning between environmental stakeholders and prospective developers.

Irrespective of attempts by authorities to protect environmental assets in terms of land use limitations for the obvious reasons provided, a number of other factors are impeding attempts. There is a continuous encroachment of development (mainly unauthorised) into public open space areas and create ways need to be explored to manage these vast open areas.

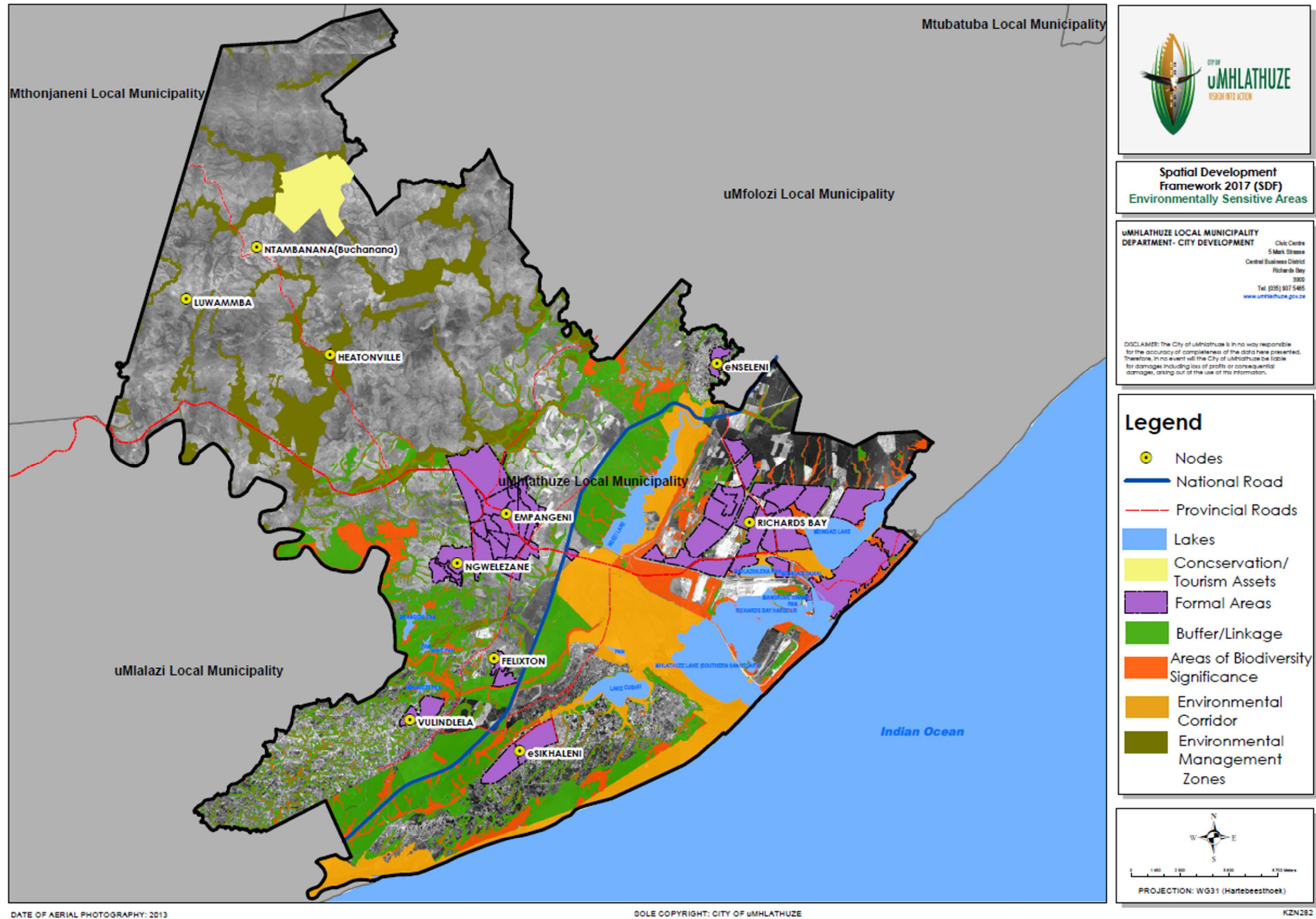
A consolidated map has been prepared for the whole municipality on environmental sensitivities. A comparative level of information is not available for the whole municipal area and additional research is required to achieve such.



## **5.15 SUMMARY OF KEY ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES**

- The complex hydrology of the area, whilst attributing to unique natural features, poses challenges for development. This is particularly the case where logical spatial expansion need to take place.
- The impacts of Climate Change are being experienced in a local scale in the following respects:
- Abstraction of water from the various Coastal Lakes have reached ecological reserve limits during periods of extended drought. The long term ecological and aquatic impacts are unknown, particularly where these systems feed into estuarine systems
- Severe flood events have yielded disaster implications for unplanned settlements with flood prone/ flood risk areas. Whilst this is the case, these are settlements that impact on environmental services by virtue of wetland degradation.
- The Richards Bay northern beaches in particular have been confronted with severe erosion, with a result that emergency coastal defenses were required. It is also a fact that the Northern beaches are not being adequately replenished at the required rate of sand volumes from the Transnet sand bypassing scheme.
- Environmental Offsets linked to the Port expansion render significant unknowns from an institutional/ governance perspective but equally from the perspective of physically transforming the affected environmental from current land use.
- Further land development is likely to render biodiversity implications

Map 11: Environmental Sensitive Areas



## **6. AGRICULTURAL OVERVIEW**

South African agricultural background can be best understood against the backdrop of the 1913 Natives Land Act which deprived black South Africans, especially Africans, any right to land ownership or lease in specified areas of the country.

The underlying principles to rural development and land reform are:

- Deracialising the rural economy;
- Democratic and equitable land allocation and use; and,
- Sustain production discipline for food security.

In 2009, the Cabinet adopted the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme (CRDP), which speaks to both land reform and rural development. The strategic thrust of the CRDP is agrarian transformation.

In 2010 government introduced fourteen (14) outcomes approach. The 14 outcomes are linked to a service delivery agreement between national Ministers and Members of Executive Committee. This approach has forged co-ordination amongst various line function departments and strengthened monitoring and evaluation.

Outcome 7 intends to address and promote 'vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities; and, food security for all'. The objectives of Outcome 7 will be achieved through the implementation of activities under the following five outputs:

- sustainable agrarian reform with a thriving small and large scale farming sector;
- improved access to affordable and diverse food
- improved rural services to support rural livelihood;
- job creation and promoting economic livelihoods; and
- an enabling institutional environment for sustainable and inclusive growth

### **6.1 THE ALIGNMENT OF COMPREHENSIVE RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME AND NATIONAL DEVELOPMENT PLAN**

Chapter six (6) of the National Development Plan focuses on an integrated and inclusive rural economy. It also state that by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country. The 2030 vision also includes a better integration of the country's rural areas, achieved through successful land reform, infrastructure development, job creation and poverty alleviation.

The CRDP has three development deliverables:

- meeting basic human needs,
- rural enterprise development; and,
- rural industries sustained by credit facilities and markets.

The identified rural nodes within the uMhlathuze Municipality intends to address and fulfil the objectives of the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme and National Development Plan.

The Municipality has prepared draft area analysis for each identified node, and it will further surveys when preparing the detailed Spatial Development Plans for each identified node.

The Municipality will also ensure that communities within the identified nodes will be consulted, in line with a bottom up community based approach.

The following table provides a breakdown of land potential/capability in terms of hectares and percentages.

**Table 32: Land Capability Breakdown**

<b>Land Capability</b>	<b>Size(Hectares)</b>	<b>Percentage (%)</b>
High Land Potential	11 548	9.89
Good Land Potential	73062	62.55
Moderate Land Potential	21 565	18.46
Restricted Land Potential	2258	1.93
Very Restricted Land Potential	6975	5.97
Waterbodies	1400	1.20
<b>Sub-Total</b>	<b>116808</b>	<b>100.00</b>

The need to compact and densify becomes apparent when considering the above. Limited high potential agricultural land is available and agriculture plays a critical role in the country, district and uMhlathuze Municipality in respect of employment, GDP and food security.

## **6.2 AGRICULTURAL SUPPORT PLAN**

The uMhlathuze Municipality has recently compiled an Agricultural Support Plan. The preparation of the plan has been informed by the reality that small farmers struggle to survive and to participate in food value chains resulting in the exclusion from capital markets and a struggle for economic survival.

Agriculture is known to be central in the economic development of rural areas given proper infrastructure and proper planning. In addition, rural communities are particularly vulnerable to climate change and an agricultural support plan was identified as a mechanism to assist farmers to operate and contribute to improved food security. In essence, the plan has identified farmers, their specialization and support require for effective production.

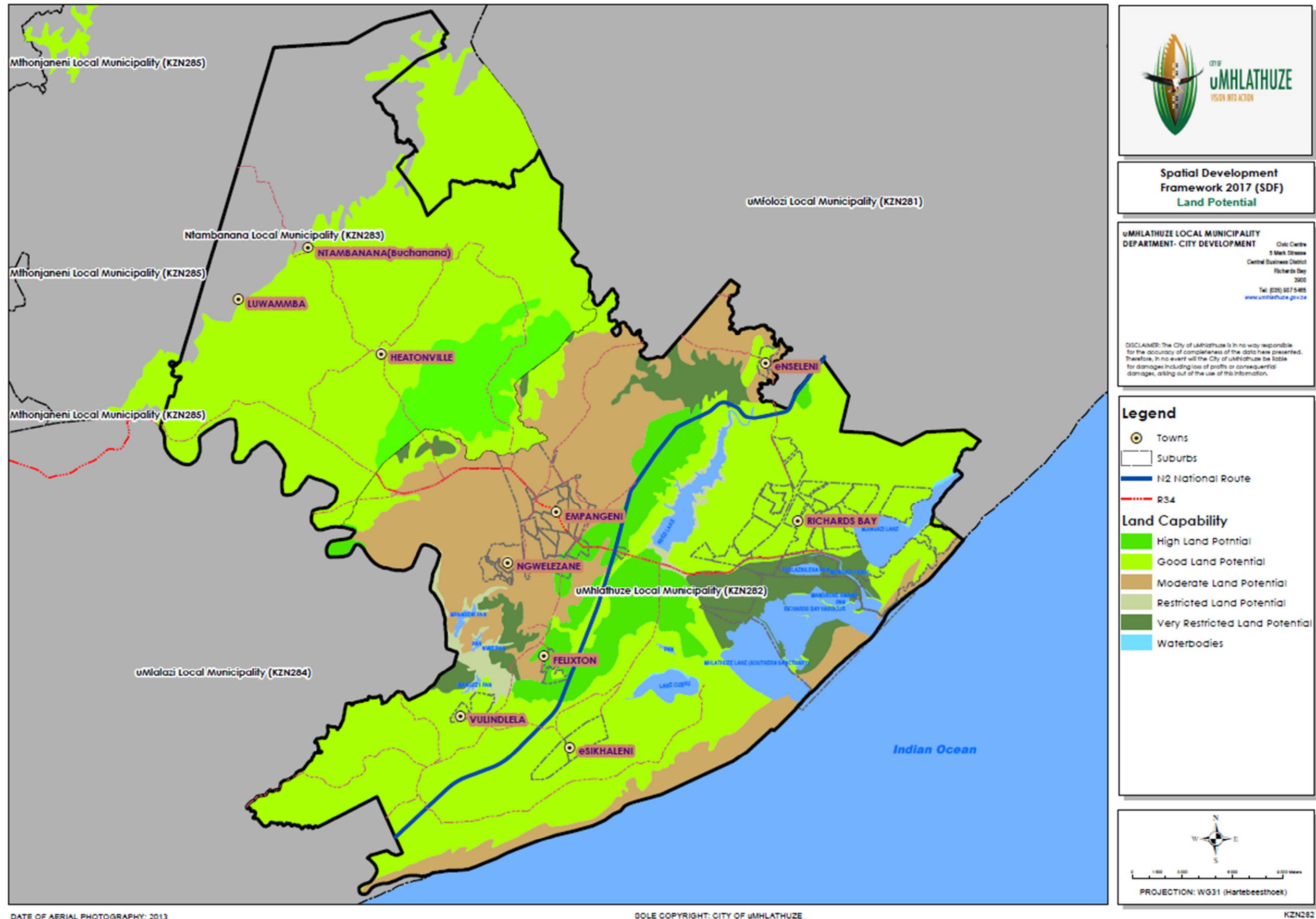
Amongst others, the plan has considered market demand, niche commodities and the natural resource base and has recommended a contract model.

At overleaf, the following mapping is provided:

- Overall Land Potential for the Municipal Area as informed by Land Capability Classes.
- Agricultural Potential for livestock and vegetation respectively as informed by the outcomes of the Agricultural Support Plan.
- The distribution of Agricultural Projects per Ward noting the correlation with areas of low income (poverty), high unemployment and poor socio-economic conditions.

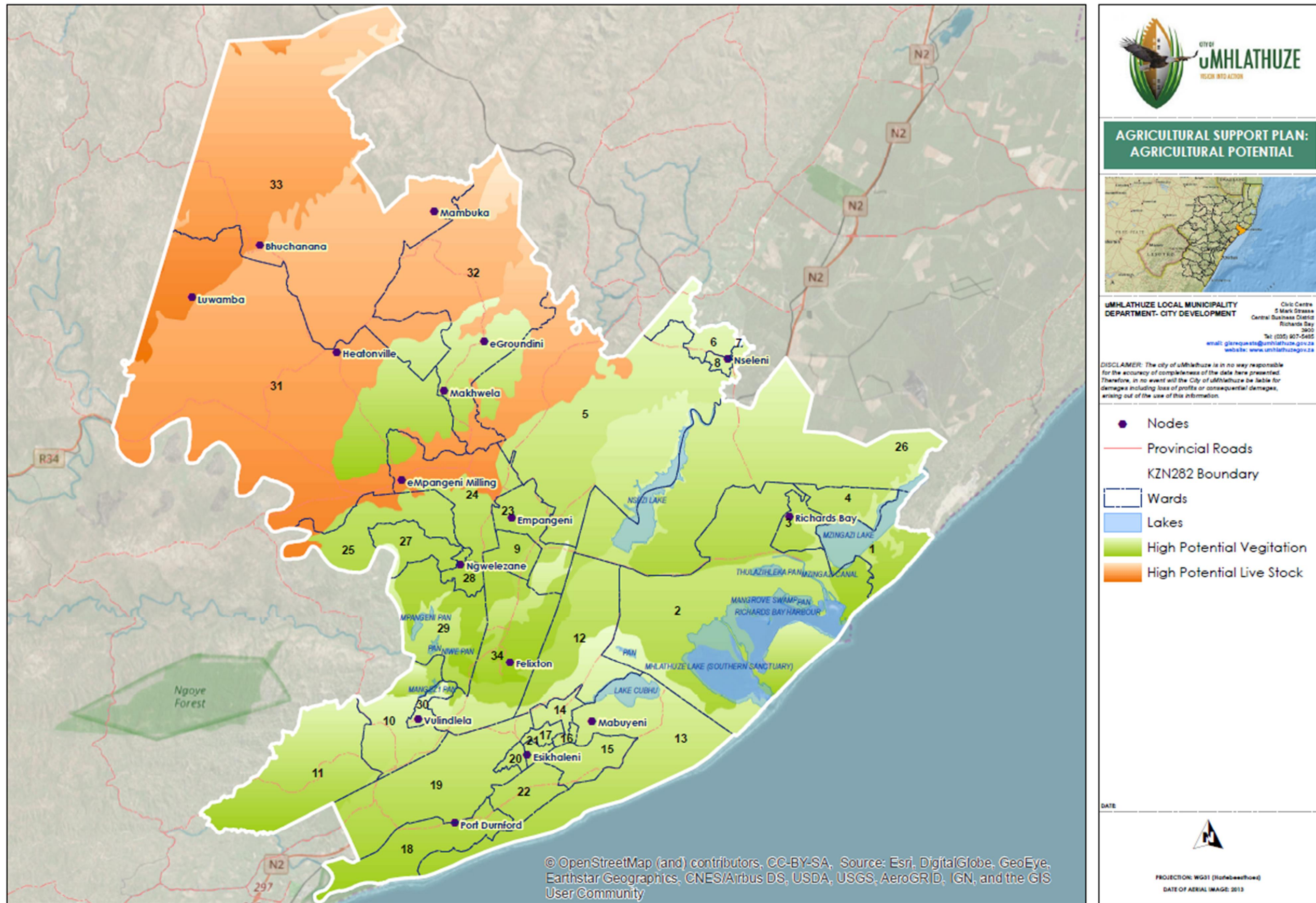


Map 12: Land Capability



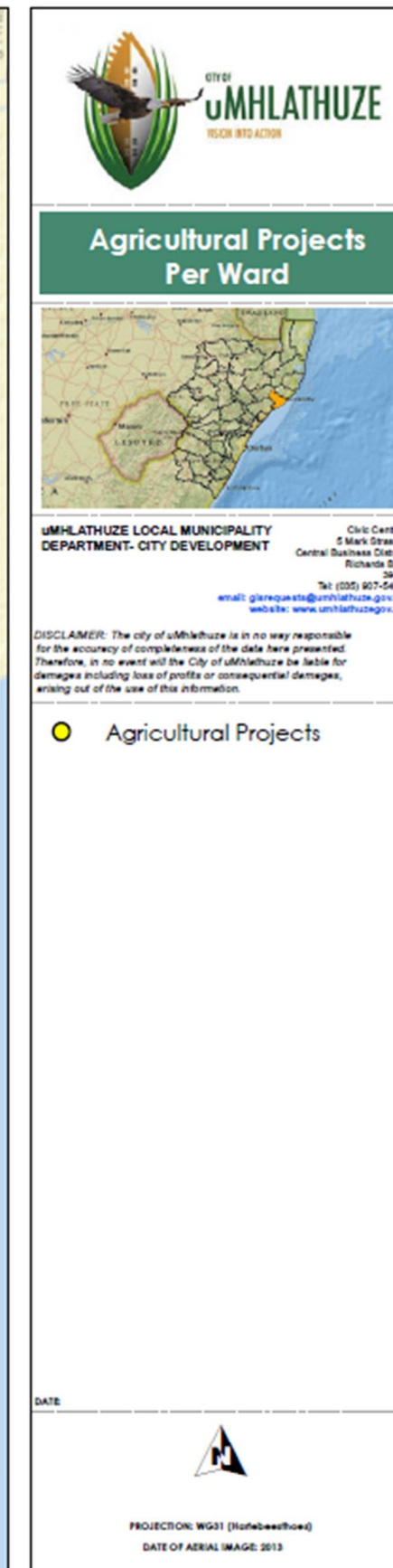
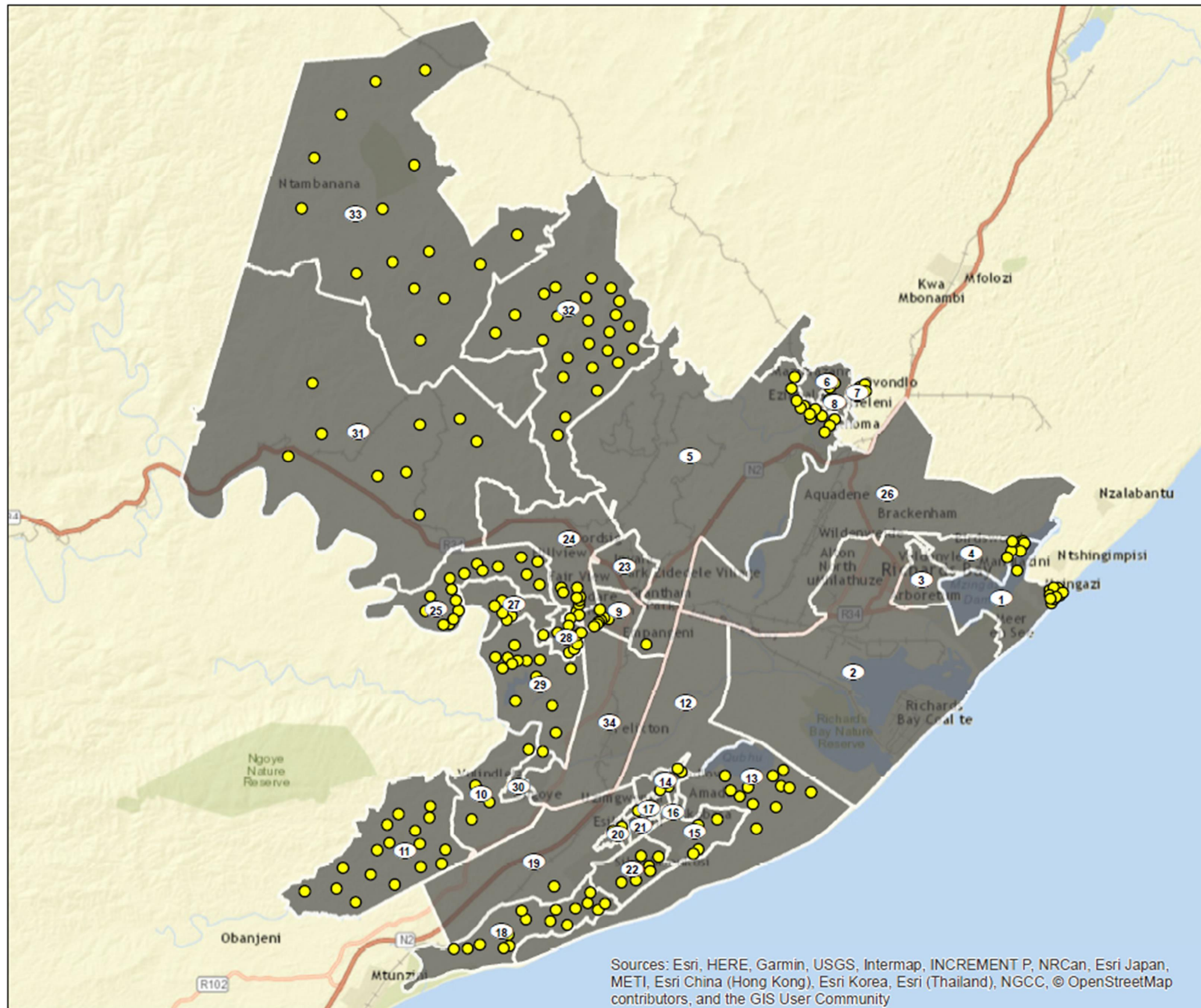


Map 13: Agricultural Potential





**Map 14: Agricultural Projects per Ward**





## 7. LAND REFORM

Land claims are made against the State in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act (No. 22 of 1994) and are resolved by way of physical land redistribution or other appropriate/practical means, e.g. financial compensation. Following the commencement of the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act (Act No. 15 of 2014), people who missed the 31 December 1998 deadline to lodge land claims now have an opportunity to lodge claims until 30 June 2019. It is important to note that the intention of land claims is **not** to stop development.

The Municipality is constantly engaging with the Land Claims Commission to attend to matters relating to land claims in the municipal area.

It has been determined that the following land claims in the municipality are being attended to:

1. Mandlazini / Mambuka Land Claim (Ref No Krn6/2/2/E/21/0/0/3)
2. Mambuka Amendment Claim (Amendment Notice 255 Of 2017)
3. Mbonambi Land Claim (Ref No Krn6/2/2/E/21/0/0/67)
4. Mndaba Group Land Claim (Ref No Krn6/2/2/E/21/0/0/53)

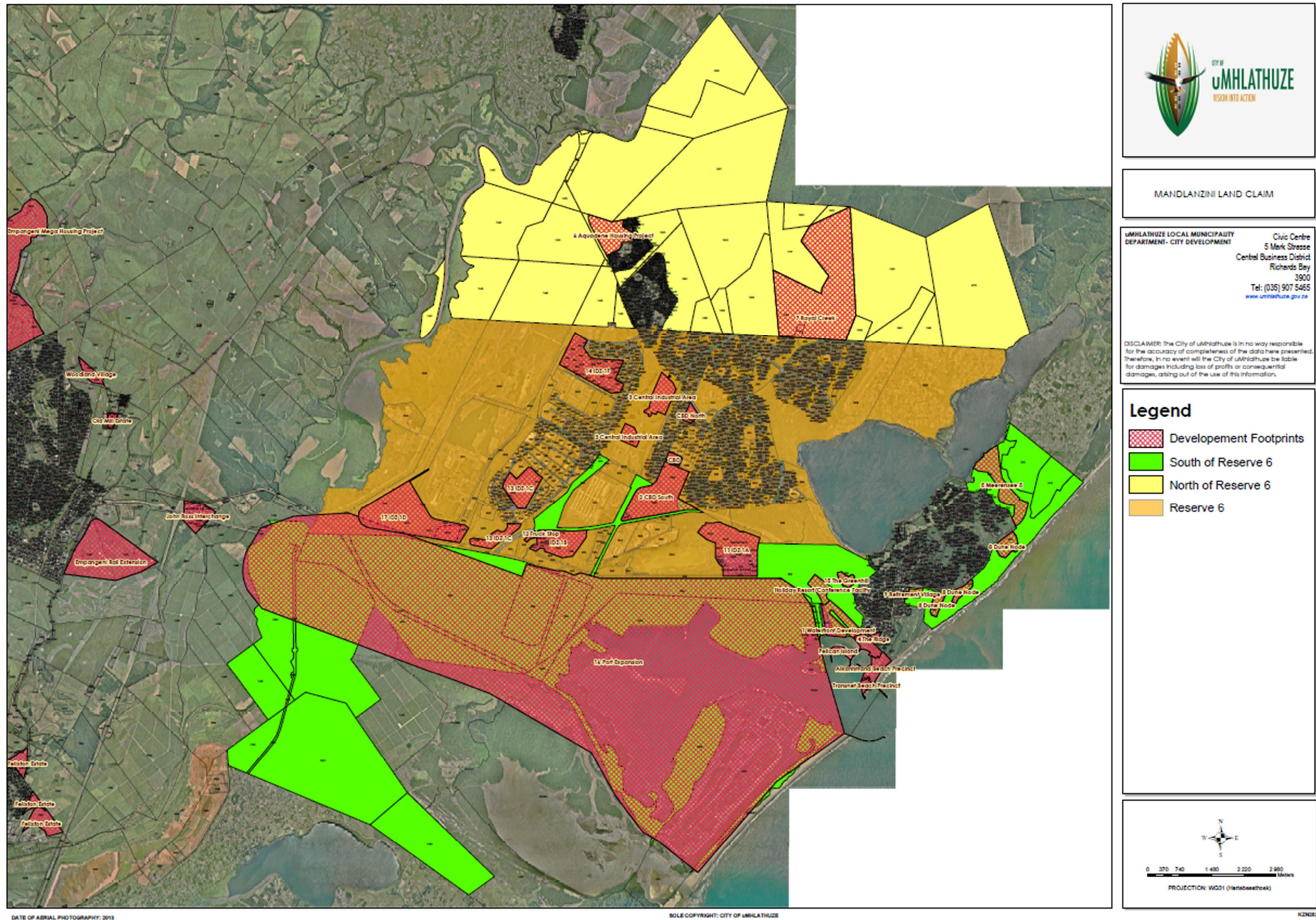
Mapping, based on information available, in respect of numbers 1, 2 and 3 above is provided. The relation of the Mambuka claim in relation to developments is also indicated.

### 7.1 SUMMARY OF KEY LAND REFORM ISSUES

- The opportunity to lodge land claims has been extended to 30 June 2019 and, to a degree, some developers feel uncertain about the prospects of pursuing a development on land that may be subject to claim in future. However, the Regional Land Claims Commission has made it clear that the intention of land claims is not to hinder development.

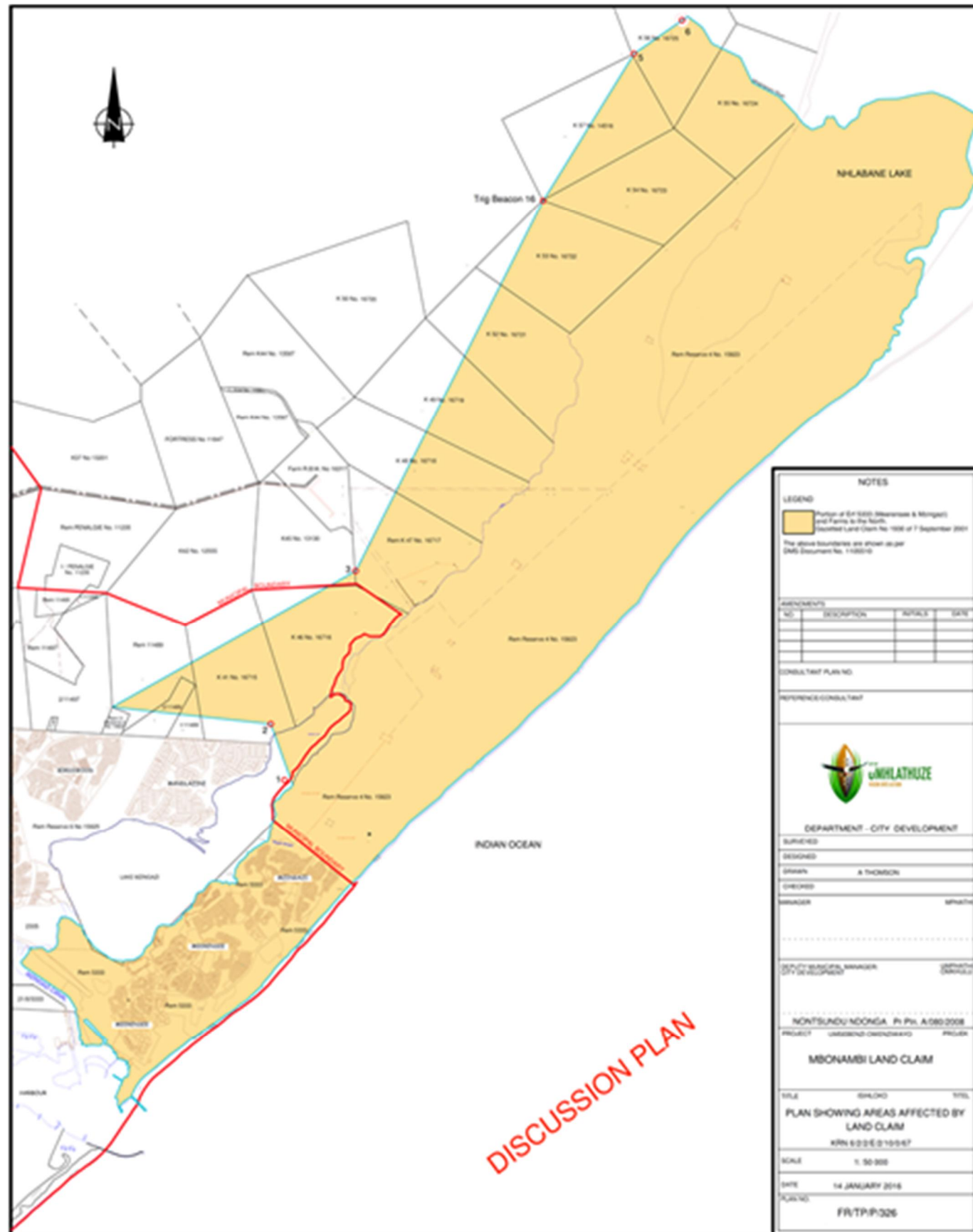


**Map 15: Extent of Original and Extended Mambuka Land Claim**

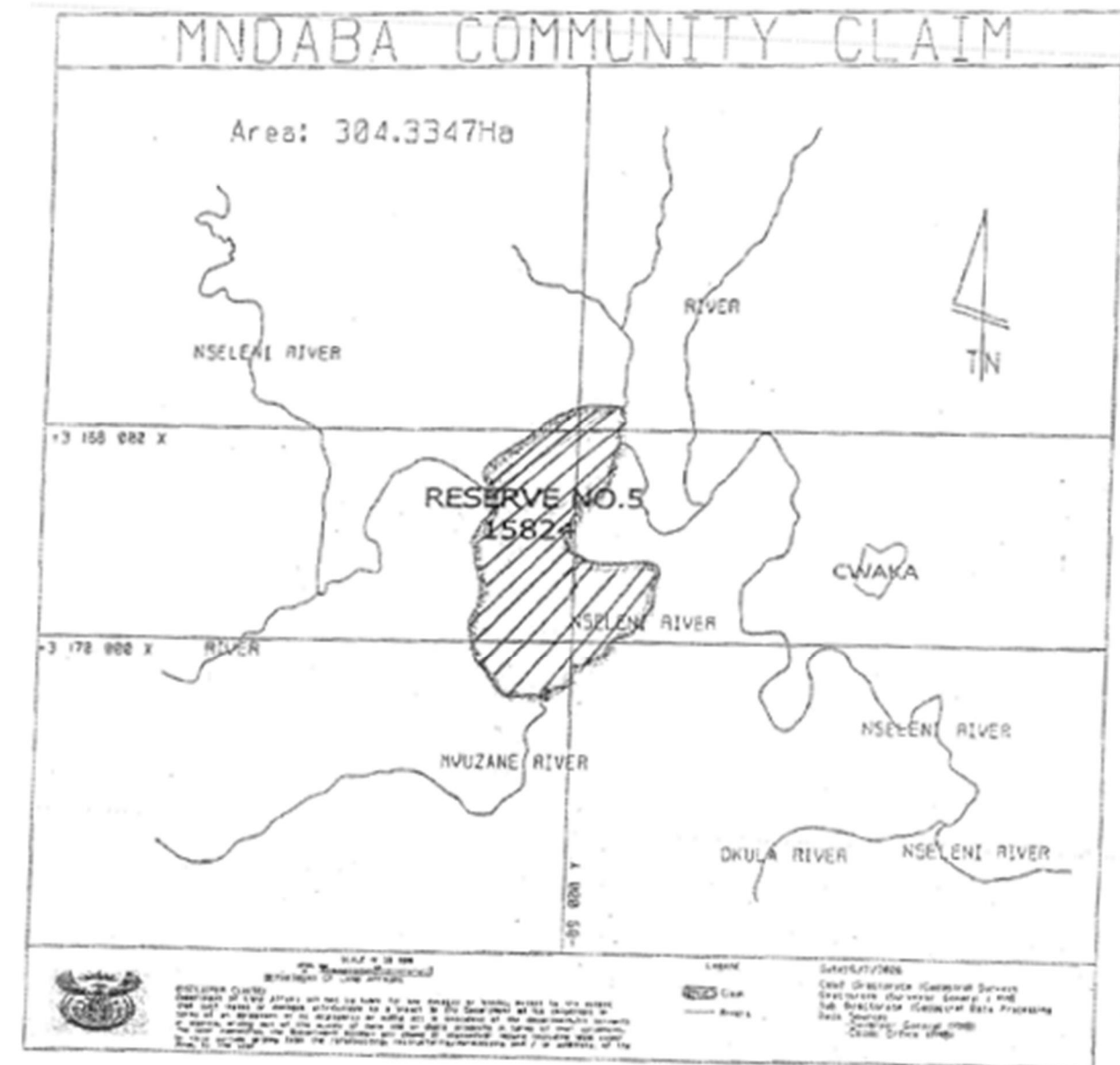




Map 16: Mbonambi Land Claim



Map 17: Mndaba Land Claim



## 8. INFRASTRUCTURE ANALYSIS

Bulk Infrastructure Master Plans are in the process of require review and update in line with the extended municipal boundary. The information extracted from the respective existing plans relates to the former Wards 1 – 30 while the analysis of backlogs have been based on the new extended municipal area, i.e. Ward 1 – 34.

As such, the following maps are provided:

- Access to piped water mapping illustrates that wards 31 and 33 have high percentages of households – more than 61% - that do not have access to piped water.
- Access to hygienic toilets mapping indicates that wards 5 and 33 have more than 61% of their households without access to hygienic toilets.

### 8.1 BULK WATER MASTER PLAN

The Bulk Water Master Plan (BWMP) was finalised during 2014 with the following objectives in mind:

(The plan is currently under review)

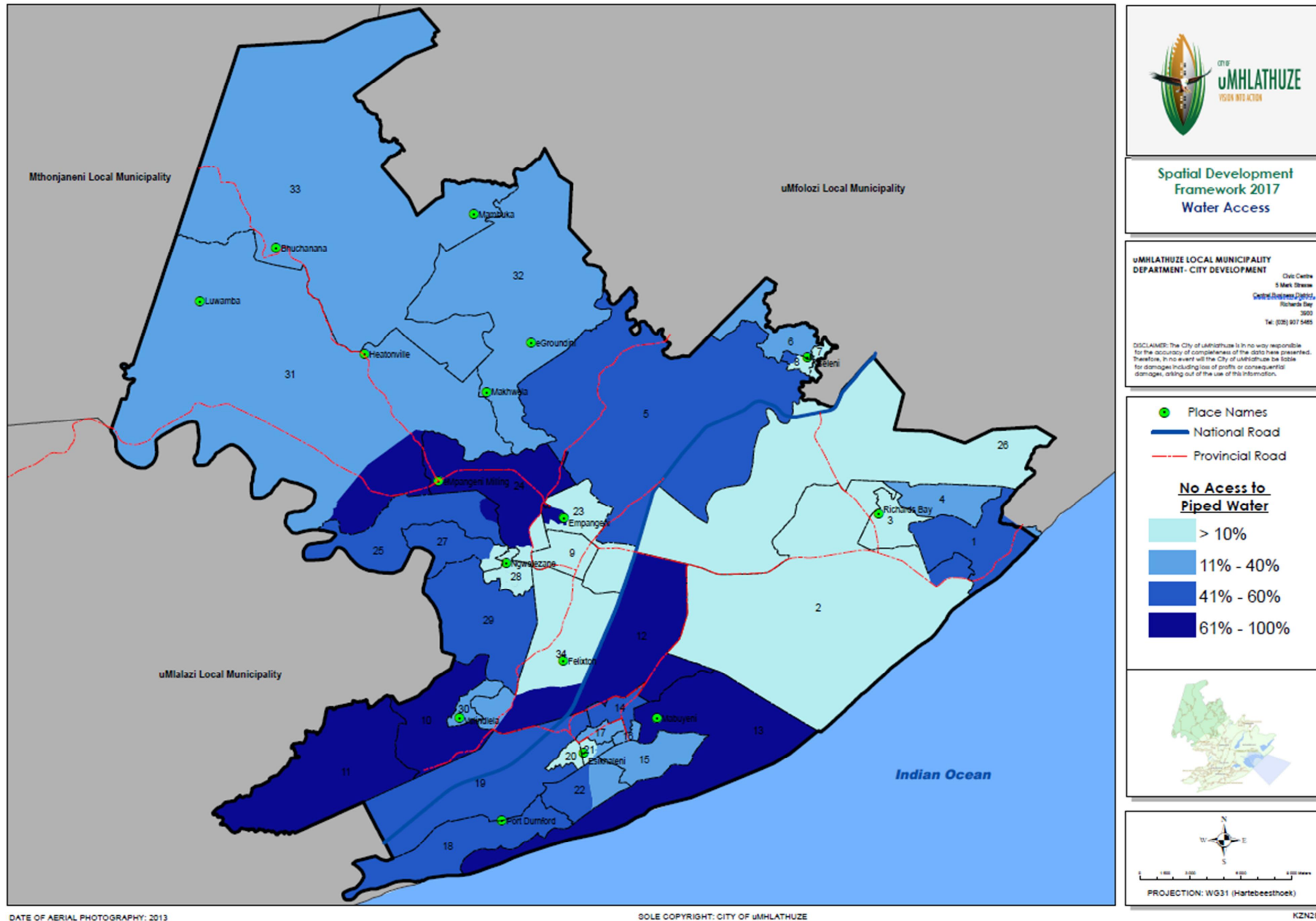
- Propose a rational bulk water supply scheme for the municipal area; and
- Identify financing options.

For the purposes of the BWMP, the bulk water system has been taken as those components upstream of key supply reservoirs together with the reservoirs. Hydraulic modelling was undertaken. Default values for residential land uses were determined using the Guidelines for Human Settlement Planning and Design. The data from the City of uMhlathuze was used for non-residential land uses and major water consumers.

Proposals in the City of uMhlathuze's Integrated Development Plan (IDP), Spatial Development Framework (SDF) and the Human Settlements Plan were used as the main sources of information for future development. The planning of the bulk water system was based on the land use change proposals/applications that are identified in the IDP, SDF and the Human Settlements Plan as well as the development potential of expansion areas provided in the SDF.

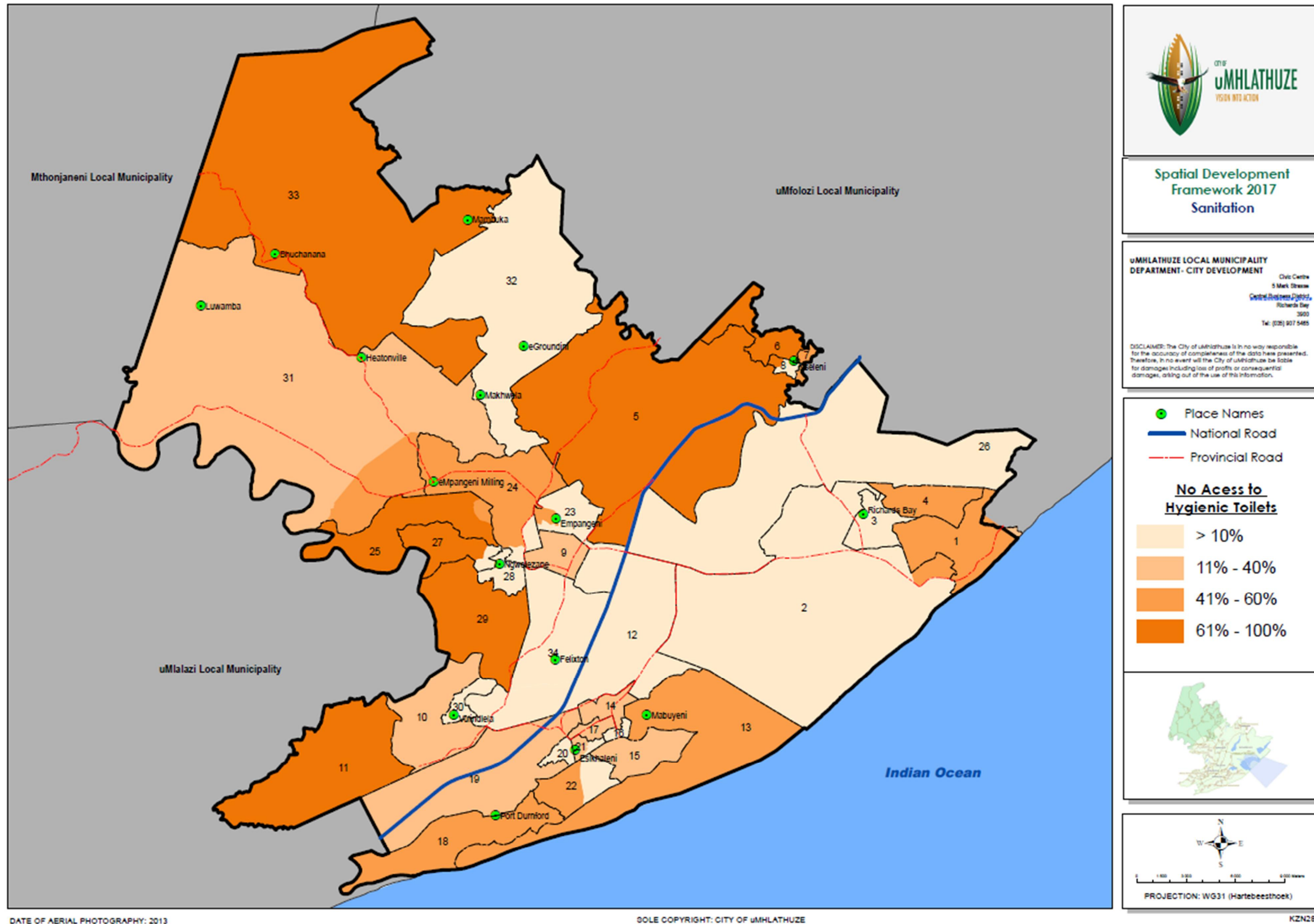
Estimates of capital cost were determined using figures from other studies that have been undertaken for the City of uMhlathuze together with information from projects elsewhere.

Map 18: Access to Piped Water





Map 19: Access to Hygienic Toilets



DATE OF AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY: 2013

SOLE COPYRIGHT: CITY OF uMHLATHUZE

KZN282

The analysis throughout the BWMP takes into account three water requirement conditions, namely the:

- o Estimated water requirement for the existing development;
- o Estimated water requirement for the existing development together with the anticipated water requirement for the planned and approved developments; and
- o Estimated water requirement for the existing development, the anticipated water requirement for the planned and approved developments together with the anticipated water requirement for the remaining potential of expansion areas A to H.

For the purposes of this BWMP a population growth rate of 2% per annum was adopted and the following should be noted:

- o Expansion areas A to H are significant in size and, based on a mixed use concept, have the potential to accommodate 94 000 residential units accommodating between 230 000 and 420 000 people.
- o Proposed and approved developments together with an allowance for the development of Expansion Area C (east of Empangeni) contain some 27 500 residential units, many of which are in the other expansion areas. At an annual average population growth rate of 2%, the human settlements and private sector projects of some 27 500 new units would meet the requirements till around 2027.
- o The remaining development potential of the expansion areas is some 66 500 residential units, which should be adequate beyond 2040.
- o Plans have been presented or approved for some 550 ha of industrial and commercial development, most of which is in expansion areas C, E and F.

The estimated AADD potable water requirements can be summarised as follow:

**Table 33: Estimated AADD Potable water requirements**

Unit	Estimate existing requirement	Anticipated requirement for existing, planned and approved developments	Anticipated requirement for existing, planned and approved developments and the remaining potential of areas A to H
<b>Litres/day</b>	104 739 763	154 313 149	280 547 923
<b>MI/Day</b>	105	155	280

The estimated daily peak potable water requirements

**Table 34: Estimated Daily Peak water requirements**

Unit	Estimate existing requirement	Anticipated requirement for existing, planned and approved developments	Anticipated requirement for existing, planned and approved developments and the remaining potential of areas A to H
<b>Litres/day</b>	154 198 843	225 080 324	414 019 018
<b>MI/Day</b>	155	225	415

The existing reservoirs that have been taken as the bulk water system reservoirs are:

- o Mandlazini
- o Meerensee
- o Forest
- o Felixton



- Pearce
- Hillview
- Nseleni
- Ngwelezane

In order to serve the areas in which planned and approved developments are situated and to cater for the additional potential of expansion areas A to H, the following additional reservoir locations are proposed:

- Hill Top
- Perkins Estate
- Pentlands
- Beacon 157
- Korhaan Hill
- 12555

An indicative programme for the augmenting of the bulk water supply system has been derived and the following key points are noted with regard to water availability and water balance:

- Present indications are that the City of uMhlathuze's lawful water use together with the allocation from Mhlathuze Water would be adequate for the water requirements of the existing development together with the planned and approved developments in the city as a whole. However, an additional AADD allocation of some 10 MI/d would be necessary from Mhlathuze Water to augment the 37 MI/d available for the Nsezi/Ngwelezane (Empangeni) sub-system.
- The existing development together with the planned and approved developments would be sufficient to meet the estimated population growth till around 2025. With the addition of a further AADD of 10 MI/d from Mhlathuze Water the medium term water requirements should be met.
- In order to meet the AADD of the existing development, the anticipated water requirement of the planned and approved developments as well as the anticipated water requirement of the remaining development potential of the expansion areas, the City of uMhlathuze would need to look to Mhlathuze Water for a further allocation of some 16 MI/d for the Mzingazi/Nsezi (Richards Bay/eNseleni) sub-system and for a further allocation of some 97 MI/d for the Nsezi/Ngwelezane (Empangeni) sub-system.

In order to meet the estimated **daily peak water requirements** for the existing development together with the anticipated water requirement for the planned and approved developments the following is noted:

- The City of uMhlathuze would need to look to Mhlathuze Water for 120 MI/d to 125 MI/d of potable water for the Mzingazi/Nsezi (Richards Bay/eNseleni) sub-system and for the Nsezi/Ngwelezane (Empangeni) sub-system.
- In order to meet the estimated daily peak water requirement for the existing development, the anticipated water requirement for the planned and approved developments as well as the anticipated water requirement for the remaining potential of the expansion areas, the City of uMhlathuze would need to look to Mhlathuze Water for around 300 MI/d for the Mzingazi/Nsezi (Richards Bay/eNseleni) sub-system and the Nsezi/Ngwelezane (Empangeni) sub-system.
- It is not envisaged that the capacity of the Mzingazi WTW would be augmented as the current capacity is adequate to attain full benefit from the City of uMhlathuze's lawful water use of 59.62 MI/d on average. This would enable the full capacity of the existing WTW and pumping infrastructure to be utilized in the Mzingazi/Nsezi (Richards Bay/eNseleni) subsystem.

- In order to take advantage of the infrastructure in the eSikhaleni sub-system it would be necessary to increase the capacity of the eSikhaleni WTW from 27 MI/d to 40 MI/d. This would be adequate to meet the anticipated daily peak water requirement of some 39 MI/d for the estimated water requirement for the existing development, the anticipated water requirement for the planned and approved developments together with the anticipated water requirement for expansion area A.

The City of uMhlathuze has five wastewater treatment works (WWTW) and a marine outfall and it is suggested that this wastewater should be suitable for **re-use** if adequately treated.

- An investigation concluded that it should be realistic to re-use some 20 MI/d of the wastewater being discharged to sea through the Alton/Arboretum marine outfall – a figure that could increase as a result of further developments.
- The indirect re-use of treated wastewater (which could be around 20 MI/d) discharged from the City of uMhlathuze's Nseleni, Empangeni, Ngwelezane and Vulindlela wastewater treatment works to the Nseleni River and the Mhlathuze River upstream of Mhlathuze Water's Nsezi WTW could make up the possible shortfall of almost 10 MI/d for the Nsezi/Ngwelezane (Empangeni) sub-system.
- The expected AADD water requirement for the existing, planned and approved developments as well as the remaining potential of the expansion areas could exceed the City of uMhlathuze's lawful water use together with its allocation from Mhlathuze Water's lawful water use by almost 120 MI/d. By that time, potential wastewater for re-use could be some 100 MI/d.

The City of uMhlathuze is implementing a 5 year strategic management plan for **water conservation and water demand management**. The plan includes investigating areas for prioritisation, reducing water losses, to monitor the network and to evaluate performance. Inadequate human and financial resources are hampering the ongoing implementation of the required interventions. In the event of distribution losses being more than 12%, bulk water conveyance and storage capacity might be necessary earlier.

With regard to **refurbishment and replacement** of assets, it would be prudent for the water assets that are nearing the end of their 'lifespans' and that have 'days remaining' of 1851 days (5 years) or less in the asset register to be investigated in order to ascertain the need for them to be refurbished or replaced. Same applies to troublesome assets.

The following indicative capital funding requirements are noted:

**Table 35: Indicative Capital funding requirements**

2015 - 2020	2021 - 2025	After 2025
R375 million	R390 million	R1 250 million

The post 2025 funding includes for a possible extension of the Nsezi WTW/Mandlazini Reservoir supply main, a possible third 47.5 MI reservoir at Mandlazini as well as for a WWTW at the head of the Alton/Arboretum marine outfall for the re-use of wastewater. This figure may be less following more detailed investigations in this regard.

In addition, an annual maintenance and refurbishment/replacement budget should be provided in addition to the budgets required for capital cost and recurrent expenses. Maintenance is estimated at 4% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure per annum; and refurbishment/replacement at 2% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure as follow:

**Table 36: Indicative maintenance and refurbishment funding requirements**

	2020	2025	+/- 2040
	Million Rand per annum	Million Rand per annum	Million Rand per annum
Maintenance	13	29	78
Refurbishment/replacement	7	15	39

## 8.2 BULK SEWERAGE MASTER PLAN

For the purposes of the BSMP, the bulk sewerage system has been taken as sewers 200 mm in diameter and larger, pump stations and pumping mains associated with such sewers and sewage/wastewater treatment facilities.

Land use information that is available is not at the level of detail that would be ideal for a BSMP. Consequently, proposals in the Integrated Development Plan (IDP), Spatial Development Framework (SDF), the Municipal Human Settlements Plan (the Human Settlements Plan) and township layout plans were used as the main sources of information for future development.

Bulk sewers were planned along watercourses above or at the level of the 1:100 year flood levels. The BWMP and the BSMP were both based on the premise that the City of uMhlathuze's water demand management (WDM) and water conservation (WC) interventions would be successful to the extent that the water use reduction would allow for increased household use in the existing built areas and that additional water would be required for future developments that have been identified in Richards Bay and Empangeni together with development in the expansion areas that the SDF and Human Settlements Plan have identified. Pump stations constitute weak points in sewerage systems and it is desirable to keep the number of pump stations to a minimum. Consequently, the proposals take a long-term perspective on the way in which development can be done over time to limit the need for pumping, even if additional WWTW may be required.

The planning has been done for the full development potential. Thereafter proposals were formulated for the progressive installation of the bulk sewerage infrastructure in line with the land use change proposals/applications that are identified in the IDP, SDF and the Human Settlements Plan. Subsequently, possible locations for additional sewers, pump stations, pumping main routes and WWTW were identified.

For the purposes of the BSMP a population growth rate of 2% per annum was adopted, which is the same as the average annual population growth rate adopted for the BWMP. The estimated increase in housing units, based on the above is reflected in the following table:

**Table 37: Estimated Increase in Housing Units**

Population change at an annual growth rate of 2.00% pa	Household size (persons/household)	Estimated new unit requirement			
		2015	2025	2030	2040
	2.5	10 200	42 200	62 200	102 200
	3.0	8 500	35 167	51 833	85 167
	3.9	6 538	27 051	39 872	65 513
	4.5	5 667	23 444	34 556	56 778

The IDP, SDF and Human Settlements Plan contain proposals for human settlement projects, private sector projects and expansion areas designated A to H.

**Expansion areas** A to H are significant and the initial concept is that they would contain mixed land uses. The potential would be some 102 000 residential units accommodating between 255 000 and 460 000 people.

**Proposed and approved developments** together with an allowance for the development of expansion area C (east of Empangeni) contain some 35 000 residential units. At an annual average population growth rate of 2.00%, the human settlements and private sector projects of some 35 000 new units would meet the requirements to some-time between 2025 and 2030.

The **expected combined sewage/wastewater flow** to the macerators and WWTW in the seven sewerage sub-systems is summarised herewith:

**Table 38: Expected combined sewage/wastewater flow**

Flow category	Unit	Estimated existing flow	Anticipated flow for existing, planned and approved developments	Anticipated flow for existing, planned and approved developments and the remaining potential of areas A to H
ADF	litres/day	35 096 000	74 901 532	168 604 718
	MI/d (rounded off)	35	75	170
PDWF	litres/second	813	1735	3 900
PWWF	litres/second	1 016	2 170	4880

In addition to the existing sewerage sub-systems, the topography upon which the City of uMhlathuze is situated lends itself to the establishment of two further sub-systems and possibly to a third new sub-system. The three potential additional sewerage sub-systems would cover:

- Most of **expansion area A** (which could include Vulindlela), the eastern and south western part of expansion area B and expansion area C draining to what is referred to as the proposed Area ABC WWTW;
- Most of **expansion areas D, E and H** draining to what is referred to as the proposed Area DEH WWTW; and
- Possibly the eastern part of expansion area F draining to what is referred to as the possible **Area F** WWTW.

Some of the sewers and pumping mains require very significant augmentation. The development patterns and timing will influence when the additional sewer capacity will be required. In some cases it might be within a short time, while in others it might be several decades.

Currently the flow to the existing **macerators** and WWTW is some 35 MI/d. The required capacities for the anticipated flow for the existing, planned and approved developments are expected to be around 75 MI/d. The required capacities for the anticipated flow for the existing, planned and approved developments together with the remaining potential of expansion areas A to H are expected to be of the order of 185 MI/d.

Consideration was given in the modelling to the capacities of **existing pump** stations as well as to the need for further pump stations. Additional pump stations are proposed to deliver sewage/wastewater from expansion areas A to H to the designated macerator or WWTW.

The City of uMhlathuze has undertaken a study into the potential for the re-use of wastewater currently being discharged to the Alton/Arboretum marine outfall. The investigation

concluded (subject to more detailed investigation) that it should be realistic to re-use some 15 MI/d of the wastewater being discharged to sea through the Alton/Arboretum marine outfall initially and that the volume could increase to some 30 MI/d after 2030.

Some 100 MI/d of treated wastewater is expected to be available for **re-use** from the existing, planned and approved developments together with the remaining potential of expansion areas A to H. This represents slightly more than half of the sewage/wastewater that is expected to be generated.

The City of uMhlathuze is implementing a water management programme through a five year strategic management plan for **water conservation and water demand management**.

The indicative programme and cost estimate for augmentation of the bulk sewerage system is shown in the table herewith:

**Table 39: Cost Estimate for Augmentation of Bulk Sewerage System**

	<b>2015-2020</b>	<b>2020-2025</b>	<b>After 2025</b>
Component	Total (Rand)	Total (Rand)	Total (Rand)
Alton			
Total	95 000 000	2 000 000	148 000 000
Arboretum/Area F WWTW			
Total	87 000 000	183 000 000	257 000 000
Empangeni/Area DEH WWTW			
Total	112 000 000	2 000 000	849 000 000
eNseleni			
Total	-	-	-
eSikhaleni			
Total	-	-	-
Ngwelezane			
Total	-	-	-
Vulindlela			
Total	-	-	-
Area ABC WWTW			
Total	106 000 000	203 000 000	506 000 000
<b>Total for all sub-systems</b>	<b>400 000 000</b>	<b>390 000 000</b>	<b>1 760 000 000</b>

The indicative cost to refurbish or replace infrastructure is outlined herewith:

**Table 40: Indicative Refurbishment Cost**

	<b>2015-2020</b>
Component	Total (Rand)
Alton	
Total	27 075 000
Arboretum	
Total	125 550 000
Empangeni	
Total	49 164 000
eNseleni	
Total	-
eSikhaleni	
Total	8 350 000
Ngwelezane	
Total	3 500 000
Vulindlela	
Total	7 252 000
<b>Total for all sub-systems</b>	<b>220 891 000</b>

Particular attention should be given to the relationship between the Alton and Arboretum macerators and the manner in which they will be refurbished and augmented. Significant allowances have been made for them in both the indicative capital and refurbishment/replacement cost estimates.

An annual **maintenance and refurbishment/replacement budget** should be provided in addition to the budget required for recurrent expenses. The following proportion of the estimated capital cost of the additional infrastructure is proposed:

- Maintenance at 4% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure per annum; and
- Refurbishment/replacement at 2% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure.

**Table 41: Estimated Annual Maintenance and Refreshment Budget**

	2020	2025	+2040
	Million Rand per annum	Million Rand per annum	Million Rand per annum
Maintenance	16	32	100
Refurbishment/replacement	8	16	50

### 8.3 WASTE WATER RE-USE PROJECT

Water scarcity, changing climate patterns and urbanisation have had an enormous toll on the availability of adequate water to support communities. Water and wastewater treatment has become a key response to these challenges, helping to provide the necessary water to sustain communities, business and agriculture.

Waste water is discharged to the sea through marine outfalls, while there is increased pressure placed on potable water sources (boreholes, rivers, etc.) has raised a number of concerns. The business / commercial and industrial sector accounts for the bulk usage and further growth would increase the demand for potable water on the City. Reuse would be regarded as an alternative option to supplement this need and thus “free up” the demand for potable water for business / commercial and industrial sector.

The uMhlathuze Municipality appointed a Transaction Advisor (TA) during December 2016 in terms of the National Treasury PPP Municipal Project Cycle. The transaction advisor is required to produce a comprehensive feasibility study for the Project using a public sector comparator and PPP reference models. The outcomes should provide information in respect of:

- full project cycle costs
- affordability limits
- risks and their costs
- optimal value-for-money methods of delivery

The PPP project cycle will also allow for the following three regulatory tests of affordability, value for money and risk transfer to be applied at every stage of preparing for, procuring and managing a PPP agreement:

- Can the municipality afford the deal?
- Is it a value-for-money solution?
- Is substantial technical, operational and financial risk transferred to the private party?

If, on the basis of the feasibility study, the PPP solution is decided on, the transaction advisor will provide the necessary technical, legal and financial advisory support for the procurement of a private partner. The feasibility study has been completed and consisted of the following 5 main stages:

- Stage 1: Needs Analysis
- Stage 2: Option Analysis
- Stage 3: Service Deliver Options Analysis
- Stage 4: Project Due Diligence
- Stage 5: Value Assessment

### 8.4 ROADS AND PORTS

During 2009, the Municipality reviewed its **Arterial Road Framework Plan** that extends beyond the boundaries of the existing formal urban areas into the proposed expansion areas as provided. The plan proposes additional arterial routes to provide access to the main urban centre and it is now opportune to plan for the roll-out of such arterials. Furthermore, the plan needs to be updated given the new expanded municipal boundaries.

A further study of the **Public Transport Amenities** in the municipal area has also been completed. As part of this study the following was completed:



- Deliver a status quo analysis of public transport facilities in the City of uMhlathuze (bus/taxi stops, routes and ranks)
- Analyze the need for and possible location of a truck stop facility
- Develop concept layouts for all bus/taxi ranks within the City
- Undertake a study to identify a site for a truck stop site

The uMhlathuze Municipality has also initiated the process of preparing a **Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan (CITP)** with the assistance of the Department of Transport. The process has just recently started and, when complete, is envisaged to consist of the following chapters.

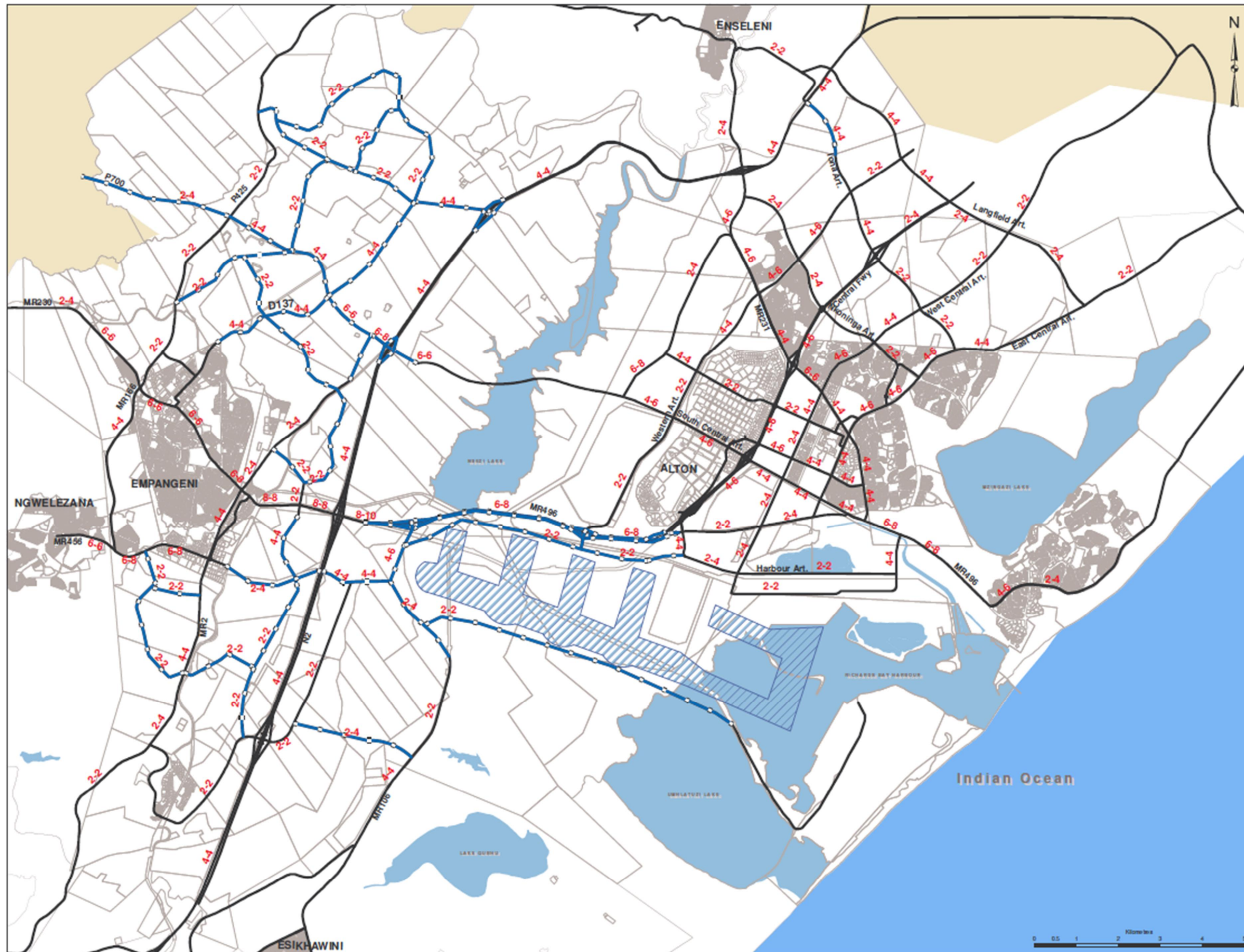
**Table 42: Chapters of the CITP**

<b>Chapter 1:</b> Introduction	Organizational and institutional arrangements as well as coordination measures relating to the plan preparation.
<b>Chapter 2:</b> Transport Vision and Objectives	A concise statement, informed by a consultation process, on how the transport system in the Municipality should be shaped in the long term. Objectives that are related to the articulated as well.
<b>Chapter 3:</b> Transport Register or database	All data collection and information requirements to inform the plan preparation will be undertaken as part of this chapter. Typical types of information will include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Demographic</li> <li>○ Transport supply and demand</li> <li>○ Description of the public transport system</li> <li>○ Description of public transport services including non-motorized transport and learner transport</li> <li>○ Description of the institutional and organizational set-up of the public transport industry</li> <li>○ Traffic demand and road infrastructure</li> <li>○ Freight transport routes and movements</li> <li>○ Financial information, specifically relating to the implementation of the plan</li> </ul>
<b>Chapter 4:</b> Spatial Development Framework	Consideration of nodes and corridors, infill development areas for densification etc.
<b>Chapter 5:</b> Transport Needs Assessment	Determination of the transport needs of the community by way of consultation, analysis, modelling, surveys etc.
<b>Chapter 6:</b> Public Transport Operational Strategy	To integrate public transport networks, services and modes so that passengers can move optimally with least cost and shortest time.
<b>Chapter 7:</b> Transport Infrastructure Strategy	To deal with development and maintenance of all transport infrastructure (road, rail, non-motorized and freight) both for public and private sector. Inputs into this phase from external sources as well as internal processes, such as the Pavement Management System.

<b>Chapter 8:</b> Travel Demand Management	Development of a system of actions aimed to maximize the capacity of the transport system for the movement of people and goods rather than vehicles. Refers to issues such as vehicle occupancy, prioritized public transport etc.
<b>Chapter 9:</b> Freight Logistics Strategy	Dealing with the location of depots/freight centres and consideration of the routes for moving of goods as well as regulatory and financial measures.
<b>Chapter 10:</b> Other Transport-related Strategies	At least a strategy for non-motorized transport as well as a safety and security strategy for public transport is required hereunder.
<b>Chapter 11:</b> Summary of LIPTs	<i>Responsibility for such, i.e. district or local, to be confirmed.</i>
<b>Chapter 12:</b> Funding Strategy	Includes a summary of proposals and programmes and details (1) priorities, (2) funding and (3) implementation programme.
<b>Chapter 13:</b> Stakeholder consultation	<i>Range of stakeholders to be consulted during the process as advised.</i>

Apart from road transport planning outlined above, planning for the future development of the Richards Bay Port has been undertaken by Transnet National Ports Authority. Matters relating to the Richards Bay Port and mooted expansion plans are discussed in another section of this report.

**Map 20: Arterial Road Framework Plan**

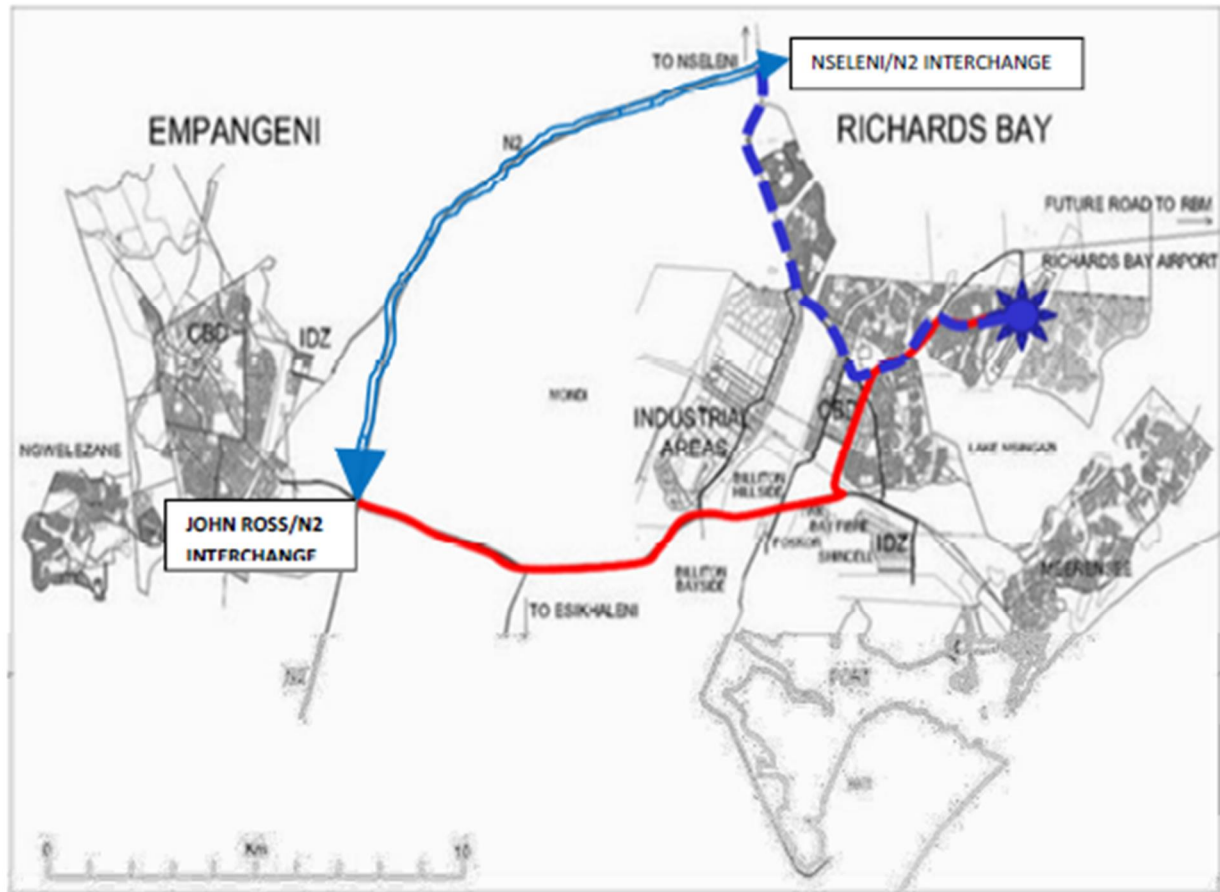




## 8.5 AIRPORT PLANNING

In 2010, an update of the Airport Master Plan was completed and the future footprint of the current Richards Bay Airport. The current Richards Bay Airport is nestled in the middle of residential areas, including Birdwood and Mandlazini Village. The current situation does potentially pose challenges in terms of airport operations.

**Figure 16: The location of the existing Richards Bay Airport**



The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) of the Municipality has identified, at a high level, a favourable corridor for an airport precinct which has been the focus on a study dealing with investigating the proposed site based on aviation criteria, the Aerotropolis concept, transportation planning as well as spatial and land use elements.

The potential airport relocation pre-feasibility study has provided guidance regarding the required statutory procedures and further studies that would need to be attended to in the near future. Noting that failure to attend to these statutory procedures and further studies timeously could create a project risk. Some of the specific statutory procedures relate to the release of land for non-agricultural use in terms of Act 70 of 1970, i.e. the Subdivision of Agricultural Land Act. A myriad of environmental related procedures will also be required.

The outcome of the pre-feasibility study warrants that the project now proceeds into the next stage, i.e. a fully-fledged feasibility investigation.

**Figure 17: Area investigated for Proposed Airport Relocation**



## 8.6 SUMMARY OF INFRASTRUCTURE ISSUES

- Wards 31 and 33 have high percentages of households – more than 61% - that do not have access to piped water.
- Wards 5 and 33 have more than 61% of their households without access to hygienic toilets.
- Bulk Water Master Plan requires to be updated given the extended municipal boundary post the 2016 Local Government Elections.
- The estimated AADD potable water requirements inclusive of the existing planned and approved development as well as the development of Areas A to H is 280 Ml/day. Estimated Daily Peak water requirements inclusive of the existing planned and approved development as well as the development of Areas A to H is 415 Ml/day. At least six additional reservoirs are proposed in this regard.
- The Municipality has five wastewater treatment works (WWTW) and a marine outfall and the option of wastewater re-use is being investigated.
- The City of uMhlathuze is implementing a strategic management plan for water conservation and water demand management.
- An annual maintenance and refurbishment/replacement budget should be provided in addition to the budgets required for capital cost and recurrent expenses. Maintenance is estimated at 4% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure per annum; and refurbishment/replacement at 2% of the estimated capital cost.

- In addition to the existing sewerage sub-systems, the topography upon which the City of uMhlathuze is situated lends itself to the establishment of two further sub-systems and possibly to a third new sub-system within the identified SDF Expansion Areas.
- Currently the flow to the existing macerators and WWTW is some 35 Ml/d. The required capacities for the anticipated flow for the existing, planned and approved developments are expected to be around 75 Ml/d. The required capacities for the anticipated flow for the existing, planned and approved developments together with the remaining potential of expansion areas A to H are expected to be of the order of 185 Ml/d.
- An annual maintenance and refurbishment/replacement budget should be provided in addition to the budget required for recurrent expenses. Maintenance at 4% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure per annum; and Refurbishment/replacement at 2% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure.
- The Municipality reviewed its Arterial Road Framework Plan during 2009. The plan proposes additional arterial routes to provide access to the main urban centre and it is now opportune to plan for the roll-out of such arterials. Furthermore, the plan needs to be updated given the new expanded municipal boundaries.
- The uMhlathuze Municipality has also initiated the process of preparing a Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan (CITP) with the assistance of the Department of Transport.
- The location of the current Richards Bay airport poses challenges in terms of operations and future development. The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) of the Municipality has identified, at a high level, a favourable corridor for an airport precinct and a pre-feasibility study for the proposed relocation of the Richards Bay airport has been completed.

## **9. HUMAN SETTLEMENT OVERVIEW**

### **9.1 INFORMAL SETTLEMENT UPGRADE**

The Municipality will ensure that it fulfils the objectives of Outcome 8. The Municipality will also fulfil the requirements of the National Upgrading of Informal Settlements Programme (UISP) through National Upgrading Support Programme (NUSP). During March 2014 the National Department of Human Settlements appointed a service provider to undertake the preparation of uMhlathuze Municipality Informal Settlements Upgrade and Relocation Plan. The uMhlathuze Municipal Informal Settlement Upgrade and Relocation Plans for seven identified settlements was completed in August 2015.

The following informal settlements/slums clearance priorities are noted:

#### **9.1.1 uMzingwenya Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance**

Mzingwenya settlement situated within a flood risk zone between Mdlebe Ntshona Road and the Mzingwenya River. Attempts to manage or prevent the situation have proven to be rather complex in view of the fact that land ownership vests with two Traditional Authorities.

It is estimated that there are at least 1800 households living in this area within the 1:100 year floodline, therefore the informal settlement may well be regarded as the Municipality's largest disaster area with respect to the flood risks.

The Provincial Department of Human Settlements has given the Municipality approval to commence with the feasibility studies for uMzingwenya River Settlement. The feasibility study has commenced.

#### **9.1.2 Nseleni Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance**

The Nseleni informal settlement is situated on the outskirts of the Nseleni Township and a number of the structures are situated close to a 100 year floodline while others are built on steep areas. The land belongs to Khoza/Bhejane Traditional Authority which makes it challenging to the Municipality to control the allocation of land in unsuitable land.

#### **9.1.3 Mzingazi Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance (Infills)**

The Mzingazi Agri-Village has developed on land that is owned by uMhlathuze Municipality. During the early 1900's, Council initiated a process to formalise the Village and transfer the properties to the identified beneficiaries. At the time, the beneficiary list consisted of 201 families. This grew to 565 in the late 1990's. The Surveyor General diagrams were handed over to the families as an indication of Council's commitment to transfer ownership.

The uMhlathuze Council is currently installing waterborne sewerage system in the area and an EIA (Environmental Impact Assessment) has been approved. Recent indications are that the more than 300 families reside in the infill areas. It is essential that an appropriate sanitation solution is provided for the community of Mzingazi as the Village borders one of the main fresh water sources in the municipal area, Lake Mzingazi.



#### **9.1.4 Mandlazini-Airport Buffer Strip Informal Settlement and Slums Clearance**

The Mandlazini-Airport Buffer Strip measures approximately 65 hectares in extent and according to a November 2011 survey, there are approximately 500 residential structures in the buffer strip. Some of the structures are of an informal/temporary nature while other structures are built from brick and mortar. The land in question is owned by the uMhlathuze Municipality. There are two main concerns relating to the settlement in this buffer strip. In the first instance, some of the structures are believed to be located within a watercourse. In the second instance, this settlement is located within the predicted 55dBA noise contour as determined by the 2010 Update of the Richards Bay Airport Master Plan.

#### **9.1.5 Ngwelezane Informal Settlement**

Erf 1241 settlement is situated within Ngwelezane Hospital consisting of approximately 50 individual free standing structures and train type structures driven by private housing entrepreneurs as rental housing. The land belongs to the Department of Public Works.

#### **9.1.6 Vulindlela/University of Zululand Informal Settlement**

University of Zululand settlement is situated on the outskirt of Vulindlela Township. Some of the structures are built on a slightly steep area. The land belongs to Mkhwanazi Traditional Authority which made it difficult to the Municipality to control the allocation of land in unsuitable land. The settlement consists of train type structures driven by private housing entrepreneurs as rental housing mostly to the University of Zululand students.

#### **9.1.7 Mandlazini Agri-Village Infill Areas**

The provision of government housing subsidies in Mandlazini Village will be twofold as a result that the some 570 beneficiaries from Mandlazini Village benefited from government land reform programme. These beneficiaries are likely to benefit from consolidation subsidies subject to qualifying criteria being met. Some of the residents will be benefit from low income housing program.

The Municipality is currently installing waterborne sewerage system in the area and an EIA (Environmental Impact Assessment) has been approved. Recent indications are that the more than 300 families reside in the infill areas. It is essential that an appropriate sanitation solution is provided for the community of Mandlazini as the Village borders one of the main fresh water sources in the municipal area, Lake Mzingazi.





**Map 22: Nseleni Peri-Urban Settlement**





**Map 23: Mzingazi Informal Settlement**





**Map 24: Mandlazini-Airport Buffer Strip Informal Settlement**



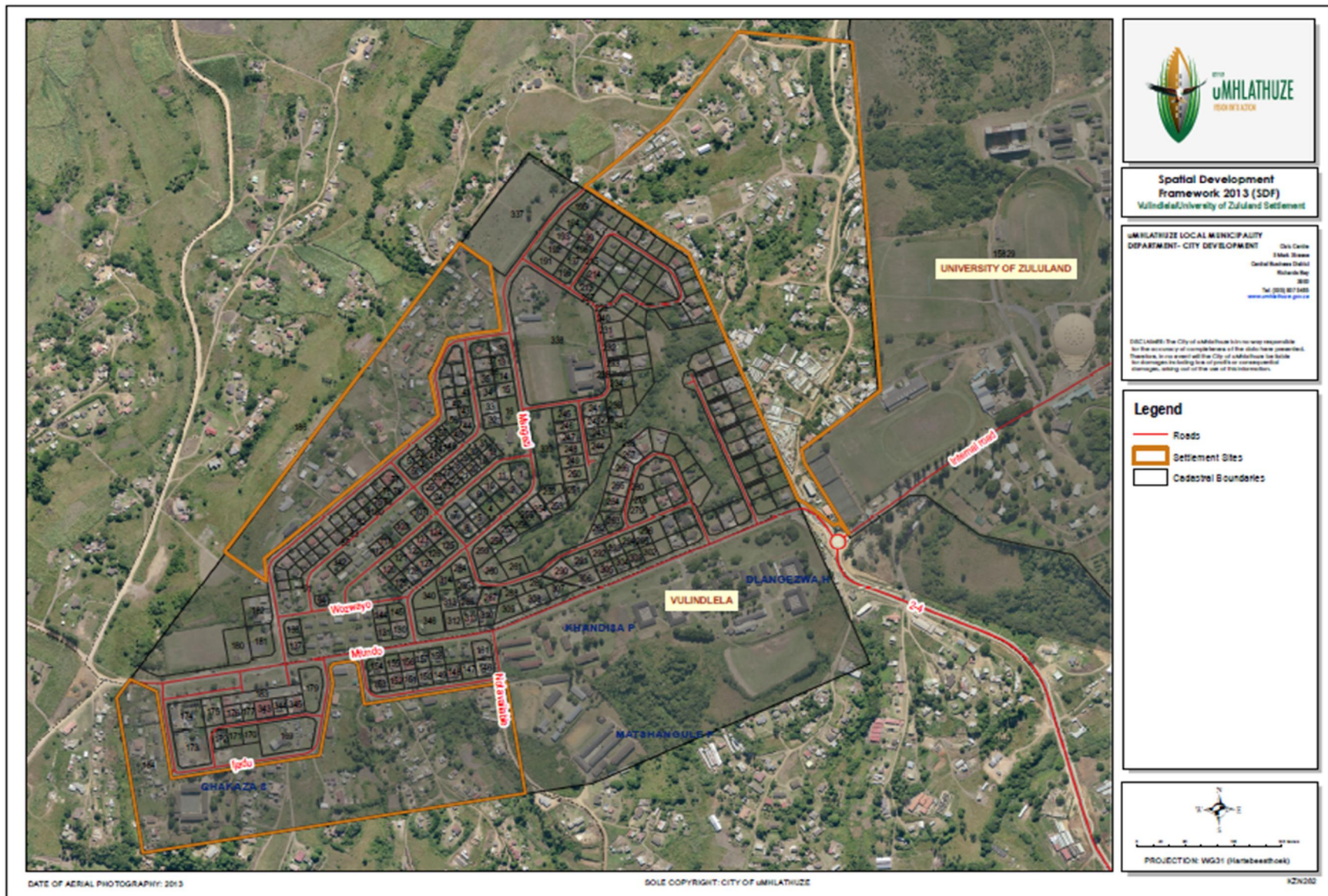


**Map 25: Ngwelezane Hospital Settlement**





**Map 26: Vulindlela/University of Zululand Settlement**





**Map 27: Mandlazini Village Infill Areas**



## 9.2 IDENTIFICATION OF LAND FOR HOUSING

One of the primary challenges facing the uMhlathuze Municipality is the identification of suitably located land for development. The Municipality has recognized this need through focusing much of its capacity to the investigation of land that is suitable for housing development. The identification of land is a priority of the Municipal IDP and SDF.

The following criteria were used in identification of land suitable of Housing Development:

- Location;
- Ownership;
- Availability of bulk and/or connector services;
- Accessibility in terms of transport and economic opportunities; and
- Linkage to Spatial Development Framework.

**Table 43: Land Suitable for Housing Development - SDF Expansion Areas**

AREA	LOCATION	LAND OWNERSHIP	PROJECT TYPE	BULK INFRASTRUCTURE AVAILABILITY
Expansion Area A	ESikhaleni-Vulindlela Corridor	State	Mixed Residential	Yes
Expansion Area B	Felixton	Private	Mixed Residential	No
Expansion Area D	Empangeni	Private	High Residential	No
Expansion Area E	Empangeni	Private	Mixed Residential	No
Expansion Area F	Richards Bay-Birdswood-Mandlazini & Veldenvlei	State	Mixed Residential	No
Expansion Area G	Nseleli Interchange	Private	Mixed Residential and Industrial development	No
Expansion Area H	Empangeni (Empangeni Mega Housing)	Council	IRDP	Yes, surrounding

The table below indicated identified State owned land that is suitable for housing development:

**Table 44: State Owned Land Suitable for Housing Development**

Erf Number	Ownership	Hectares
11488	State	217
16833	State	920 (100 ha required)
Portion 1 of Erf11489	State	368
16715	State	537



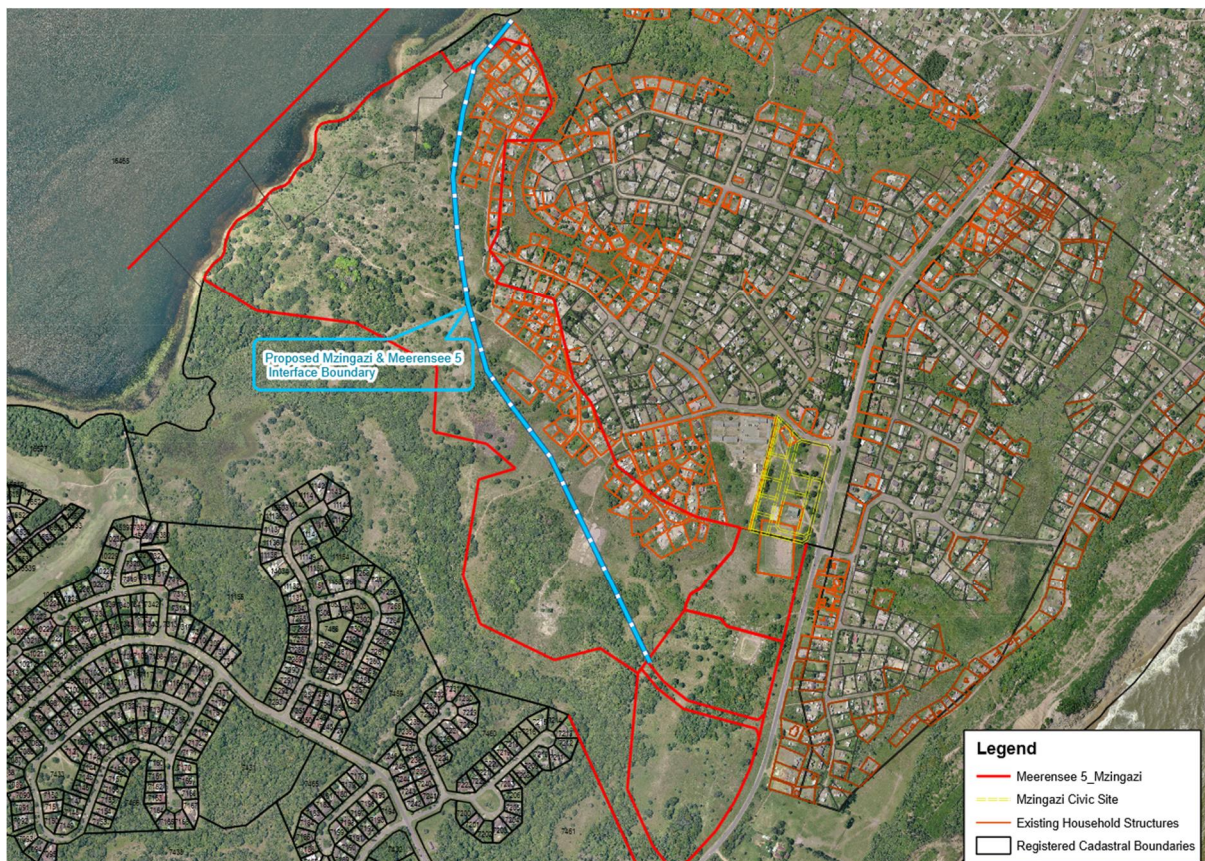
### 9.3 RESTRUCTURING ZONES

Restructuring Zones is a mechanism used to open up areas which have major economic opportunities and for poor people who have been excluded or to protect poor people from being displaced from areas within economic opportunities. The uMhlathuze Municipality has previously identified **Aquadene**, **Empangeni** and **Expansion Area A** as its Restructuring zones.

The advantage of having an area declared as a restructuring zone is that it facilitates access to the restructuring or Institutional grant from the Department of Human Settlements to implement a social/rental housing project.

The Municipality has also resolved to declare the Meerensee-Mzingazi Interface area (also known as Meerensee 5) as a restructuring zone. The locality of this area is as per the map inset hereunder:

**Map 28: Locality of Meerensee Mzingazi Restructuring Zone**



The provision of infrastructure to the **Aquadene Superblock Housing project** is underway. The Municipality has a high demand for government related human settlements assistance. As such, the successful implementation of **uMhlathuze Village Phase 6** as the Community Residential Unit/Social will also reduce the housing demand in the uMhlathuze Municipality.

**Expansion area A** (Esikhaleni-Vulindlela Corridor) has been identified as priority number 1 for possible relocation of uMzingwenya settlement communities who are located in a 1:100 year floodline. The expansion Area A is currently subject to a commercial forestry lease with a small portion of the corridor having been developed as a municipal cemetery. The required 100 ha could alleviate housing development pressures in Esikhaleni (the uMzingwenya

settlement as well as people from Vulindlela and Esikhaleni) and from other critical intervention areas in the municipality.

The **Empangeni Mega Housing Project** is located north of Empangeni and takes the form of a partnership between the Department of Human Settlements, uMhlathuze Council and the appointed IA (Implementing Agent). The project has a planned yield of 10 000 units (coming from the range of subsidy mechanisms) and has been declared as a provincial catalytic project.

Two **rural projects** are located in the municipal area. 1000 units at Luwamba (Obuka Traditional Council) and 1500 units in Buchanana (Obuka Traditional Council).

The location of the municipal approved restructuring zones is provided on the following map.

#### **9.4 SUMMARY OF HUMAN SETTLEMENT ISSUES**

- Informal Settlement Upgrade and Relocation Plans for seven identified informal settlements is in place, i.e. Mzingazi Infills, Mzingazi Informal Settlement, Mandlazini-Airport Buffer Strip, Mandlazini Infills, Umzingwenya, Vulindlela, Nseleni Peri-Urban Settlement and the Ngwelezane Hospital Settlement.
- The uMhlathuze Municipality has three Restructuring zones, i.e. Aquadene, Empangeni and Expansion Area A.
- Planning for Human Settlements requires coordination between various implementing departments and authorities, i.e. DWS, EDTEA, Municipal Infrastructure and Municipal Planning.







## 10. DISASTER MANAGEMENT

The Disaster Management Act (Act 57 of 2002) as well as the National Disaster Management Framework, requires that Municipalities conduct disaster risk assessments for their area of jurisdiction. The main objective of the Disaster Risk Assessment is to provide the City of uMhlathuze with relevant information to enable and support the required disaster risk reduction planning and activities to be undertaken by the Municipality. Given their spatial relevance, the issues of overall vulnerability and resilience are briefly expanded upon:

**Vulnerability** can be described as the degree to which an individual, a household, a community, an area or a development may be adversely affected by the impact of a hazard. Conditions of vulnerability and susceptibility to the impact of hazards are determined by physical, social, economic and environmental factors or processes. It is also important to remember that vulnerability is dynamic, not static, as the vulnerability of communities change due to improvements or degradation of social, environmental and economic conditions, as well as interventions specifically aimed at reducing vulnerability, such as disaster mitigating actions.

**Resilience** characteristics relate to the capacity within the uMhlathuze area to counter the effects of hazards and vulnerabilities. Resilience levels consist of Manageability and Capacity values. Manageability is defined as the combination of all the strengths and resources available within the government departments and line-functions that can reduce the level of risk or the effects of a disaster. This includes the level of staff or human resources, available expertise, suitable experience, available vehicles, equipment, funding or budget allocations, facilities and risk reduction and response plans. Capacity is defined as the combination of all the strengths and resources available within the community or society that can reduce the level of risk or the effects of a disaster.

The **existing uMhlathuze Disaster Management Plan** was prepared for the former area of uMhlathuze that excluded the newly incorporated wards post the 2016 Local Government Elections. The said plan contained the following conclusions and recommendations that have spatial relevance:

- a. **Human Disease and Health hazards** were identified as a very high risk within the City of uMhlathuze. The following recommendations are therefore made in this regard:
  - o An assessment should be conducted to identify specific and urgent needs related to areas where a lack of capacity, infrastructure and service delivery can lead to the outbreak or spread of diseases;
  - o This assessment can include aspects related to sanitation, provision of potable water, waste removal and access to medical facilities and services;
  - o Results of this assessment should be used to identify urgent development needs and prioritize infrastructure development projects;
  - o Such an assessment should not only focus on the development of new infrastructure, but should also identify needs, or challenges associated with the maintenance of existing infrastructure as well as low level of service delivery in already serviced areas;
  - o If not already implemented, a GIS based disease monitoring and surveillance system should be developed to record the occurrence of diseases within the City of uMhlathuze. Such a system should enable health officials to constantly monitor the outbreak and spread of diseases within the City of uMhlathuze;
  - o The required contingency plans with regard to the outbreak of diseases should also be developed. These plans should not only cover the response to known diseases such as cholera, but also allow for the response to diseases such as emergent influenza and pandemic-related diseases.

- Implemented and existing programmes related to the prevention and management of HIV/AIDS should be continued, and the impact of such programmes should be assessed in order to determine effectiveness of current programs.
- b. A detailed investigation of **Industrial Hazards** within the City of uMhlathuze was not included as part of this assessment. It is therefore recommended that a follow-up study be conducted. The aim of such a study would be to:
  - Identify and capture the location of all hazardous material installations, including pipelines, transportation routes, facilities and Major Hazardous Installations in a Geographical Information System;
  - Conduct a detailed investigation with regard to the quantity and type of hazardous material, associated hazards, level of preparedness with regard to emergency response plans, equipment and resources, and contact details of key personnel at each facility;
  - Conduct a detailed hazard and risk assessment associate with industrial hazards within the City of uMhlathuze;
  - Current activities and forums to encourage and facilitate interaction between the Health and Safety departments in the City of uMhlathuze and industries, as well as between industries should be continued and intensified. This should be a shared initiative with responsibilities on both Industries and Government.
- c. **Hydro-meteorological and Climate change related hazards**, such as flooding, storms and storm surges, can pose a risk to the City of uMhlathuze. The impact of flooding can cause severe damage and disruption in highly populated areas and informal settlements. The following recommendations are therefore made:
  - Updated detailed flood lines should be developed for the watercourses throughout the City of uMhlathuze. Where applicable, a detailed flood hazard assessment should be conducted to identify where investment in storm water management infrastructure should be made.
  - It is also recommended that a Flood Hazard Management System be implemented in the City of uMhlathuze, in order to ensure an effective flood risk reduction and response to flooding events by all relevant departments and role-players within the City of uMhlathuze.
  - In addition to the flood-related assessments, it is recommended that a detailed assessment be conducted with regard to the impact of storm or tidal surge as well as sea level rise on the City of uMhlathuze.

The **King Cetshwayo District Disaster Management Plan** notes the following prioritizes risks for the uMhlathuze Municipality:

Red	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Disease/Health: Human (HIV/AIDS &amp; TB)</li> <li>o Disease/Health: Human (Other disease)</li> <li>o Hydro-meteorological hazards: severe storms (wind, hail, snow, lightning, fog)</li> <li>o Civil unrest: Demonstrations/Riots</li> </ul>
Orange	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Hazardous Material-Hazmat: Fire/Explosion (Storage &amp; transportation)</li> <li>o Hazardous Material-Hazmat: Spill/Release (Storage &amp; transportation)</li> <li>o Oceanographic – Storm surge</li> <li>o Hydro-meteorological Hazards – Floods (River, Urban&amp; Dam failure)</li> </ul>
Yellow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Civil Unrest – Xenophobic attacks</li> <li>o Fire hazard – Veld/Forest fires</li> </ul>

The **uMhlathuze Municipality recently has submitted a Framework** for the establishment of an Integrated Disaster Management Service in terms of Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002. The said Framework is inclusive of timelines and activities towards implementation of a fully flagged disaster management centre and well equipped team to implement the full cycle of disaster management.

## 10.1 SUMMARY OF DISASTER MANAGEMENT ISSUES

- o The prioritized risks for uMhlathuze are noted to be human disease/health, hydro-meteorological hazards and civil unrest.
- o The existing uMhlathuze Disaster Management Plan was prepared for the former area of uMhlathuze that excluded the newly incorporated wards post the 2016 Local Government Elections. A framework for the establishment of an Integrated Disaster Management Service in terms of Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 has been developed.

## 11. SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT FRAMEWORK

### 11.1 INFORMANTS OF SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT

The following table is a consolidation of the sectoral key development issues that have been extracted from the various chapters in this report.

**Table 45: Consolidation of Key Issues**

SPATIAL	DEMOGRAPHIC AND SOCIO-ECONOMIC
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Municipality has an area of 123 325Ha</li> <li>○ 51% of the area is under the jurisdiction of Ingonyama Trust Board</li> <li>○ Richards Bay and Empangeni are the most significant economic centres in the Local and District Municipality</li> <li>○ Esikhaleni has the potential to develop into a primary node if the local economy becomes more sustainable, specifically in respect of growth and employment opportunities</li> <li>○ Aquadene, Brackenham, Esikhaleni and Nseleni have the highest residential densities in the municipal area</li> <li>○ Existing bulk infrastructure capacities will have to be increased at all nodes to accommodate increased densities and expansion/development</li> <li>○ Vast peri-urban settlements have challenges and lack proper planning, limited basic services and is located in environmental high risk areas compromising their sustainability.</li> <li>○ The area to the east of the Municipality is inundated with a system of wetlands and natural water features such as Lakes Cubhu, Mzingazi, Nsezi and Nhlabane. Major rivers include the Mhlathuze and Nsezi.</li> <li>○ The main access into the municipal area is via the N2 in a north south direction and in an east west direction the R34. Other significant roads in the area include the MR431 (that provides a northerly entry into Richards Bay from the N2) as well as the Old Main Road that straddles the N2 on its inland.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Highest population densities are found in the in the formal urban and surrounding areas, i.e. peri-urban areas.</li> <li>○ According to the 2016 Community Survey, uMhlathuze had 410 465 people and 103 915 households with an average households size of 3.95.</li> <li>○ At a steady population increase of 1,5% per annum, the municipal population will surpass 500 000 people by 2030.</li> <li>○ The municipality will reach a population of 500 000 before 2021 if a population growth rate of 5% takes place over the next few years. At a 5% per annum population growth rate the number of households in the municipality will double by 2030.</li> <li>○ An estimated additional 1300 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare.</li> <li>○ An estimated additional 600 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 25 units per hectare.</li> <li>○ For the percentage of adults over the age of 20 years that do not have schooling, the incidence of this is highest (more than 61%) in Wards 5, 10, 13, 14, 18, 25, 32 and 33. This are largely coincides with Traditional Authority areas.</li> <li>○ Regarding income levels as a percentage of households that earn less than R1600 per month it is noted that Wards 5, 10 and 29 are the most impoverished in this regard.</li> <li>○ Regarding unemployment levels and the wards with the highest percentage of unemployed individuals are 4, 5, 12, 18, 24 and 28.</li> </ul>



- Railway lines are prevalent in the municipal area but do not provide a passenger service, only a commercial/industrial service is provided.
- The municipality has the benefit of about 45km of coastline.
- Linked to its coastal locality is the Richards Bay deep-water port that has been instrumental in the spatial development of the area.

## **LAND REFORM**

- The opportunity to lodge land claims has been extended to 30 June 2019 and, to a degree, some developers feel uncertain about the prospects of pursuing a development on land that may be subject to claim in future.
- The Regional Land Claims Commission has made it clear that the intention of land claims is not to hinder development.

## **INFRASTRUCTURE**

- Wards 31 and 33 have high percentages of households – more than 61% - that do not have access to piped water.
- Wards 5 and 33 have more than 61% of their households without access to hygienic toilets.
- The estimated AADD potable water requirements inclusive of the existing planned and approved development as well as the development of Areas A to H is 280 Ml/day.
- Estimated Daily Peak water requirements inclusive of the existing planned and approved development as well as the development of Areas A to H is 415 Ml/day. At least six additional

## **HUMAN SETTLEMENTS**

- Informal Settlement Upgrade and Relocation Plans for seven identified information settlements is in place, i.e. Mzingazi Infills, Mzingazi Informal Settlement, Mandlazini-Airport Buffer Strip, Mandlazini Infills, Umzingwenya, Vulindlela, Nseleni Peri-Urban Settlement and the Ngwelezane Hospital Settlement.
- The uMhlathuze Municipality has three Restructuring zones, i.e. Aquadene, Empangeni and Expansion Area A.
- Planning for Human Settlements requires coordination between various implementing departments and authorities, i.e. DWS, EDTEA, Municipal Infrastructure and Municipal Planning.

## **DISASTER MANAGEMENT**

- The prioritized risks for uMhlathuze are noted to be human disease/health, hydro-meteorological hazards and civil unrest.
- The existing uMhlathuze Disaster Management Plan was prepared for the former area of uMhlathuze that excluded the newly incorporated wards post the 2016 Local Government Elections.
- A framework for the establishment of an Integrated Disaster Management Service in terms of Disaster Management Act 57 of 2002 has been developed.

## **ENVIRONMENTAL**

<p>reservoirs are proposed in this regard.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ The Municipality has five wastewater treatment works (WWTW) and a marine outfall and the option of wastewater re-use is being investigated.</li> <li>○ The City of uMhlathuze is implementing a strategic management plan for water conservation and water demand management.</li> <li>○ An annual maintenance and refurbishment/replacement budget should be provided in addition to the budgets required for capital cost and recurrent expenses. Maintenance is estimated at 4% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure per annum; and refurbishment/replacement at 2% of the estimated capital cost.</li> <li>○ In addition to the existing sewerage sub-systems, the topography upon which the City of uMhlathuze is situated lends itself to the establishment of two further sub-systems and possibly to a third new sub-system within the identified SDF Expansion Areas.</li> <li>○ Currently the flow to the existing macerators and WWTW is some 35 Ml/d. The required capacities for the anticipated flow for the existing, planned and approved developments are expected to be around 75 Ml/d. The required capacities for the anticipated flow for the existing, planned and approved developments together with the remaining potential of expansion areas A to H are expected to be of the order of 185 Ml/d.</li> <li>○ An annual maintenance and refurbishment/replacement budget should be provided in addition to the budget required for recurrent expenses. Maintenance at 4% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure per annum; and Refurbishment/replacement at 2% of the estimated capital cost of the infrastructure.</li> <li>○ The Municipality reviewed its Arterial Road Framework Plan during 2009. The plan needs to be updated given</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ The complex hydrology of the area, whilst attributing to unique natural features, poses challenges for development. This is particularly the case where logical spatial expansion need to take place.</li> <li>○ The impacts of Climate Change are being experienced in a local scale in the following respects:</li> <li>○ Abstraction of water from the various Coastal Lakes have reached ecological reserve limits during periods of extended drought. The long term ecological and aquatic impacts are unknown, particularly where these systems feed into estuarine systems</li> <li>○ Severe flood events have yielded disaster implications for unplanned settlements with flood prone/ flood risk areas. Whilst this is the case, these are settlements that impact on environmental services by virtue of wetland degradation.</li> <li>○ The Richards Bay northern beaches in particular have been confronted with severe erosion, with a result that emergency coastal defenses were required. It is also a fact that the Northern beaches are not being adequately replenished at the required rate of sand volumes from the Transnet sand bypassing scheme.</li> <li>○ Environmental Offsets linked to the Port expansion render significant unknowns from an institutional/ governance perspective but equally from the perspective of physically transforming the affected environmental from current land use.</li> <li>○ Further land development is likely to render biodiversity implications</li> </ul>
---	---

the new expanded municipal boundaries.

- o The uMhlathuze Municipality has also initiated the process of preparing a Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan (CITP) with the assistance of the Department of Transport.
- o The location of the current Richards Bay airport poses challenges in terms of operations and future development. The Spatial Development Framework (SDF) of the Municipality has identified, at a high level, a favourable corridor for an airport precinct and a pre-feasibility study for the proposed relocation of the Richards Bay airport has been completed.

The uMhlathuze SDF identifies a series of expansion areas for the municipal area that was informed by planning principles. In recent years, development proposals – particularly from private land owners has aligned to the uMhlathuze SDF. Apart from the spatial development principles that were unpacked at the outset of the report, the following imperatives for the future spatial and economic development of the uMhlathuze Municipality are reiterated:

1. **Job Creation.** Due consideration has to be given to the protection of high potential agricultural land for productive agricultural purposes. However, land and opportunities have to be created to foster industrial development. It is very likely that a conflict will develop between the use of land for productive agriculture versus industrial related/supportive activities. To address this, consideration is given to spatial planning principles as contained in this report.
2. **Investment in human** and community development has to be informed by government principles, as typically contained in the NSDP, i.e. all have to be provided with basic services irrespective of where they live and investment in human capital in areas that offer lesser economic opportunities. Planning for sustainable human settlements is contained in the Municipal Human Settlements Plan.
3. The spatial implication of the proposed Richard Bay **Port Expansion** has been deliberated by the Municipality and its implications are considered critical during all forward planning exercises. As such, the proposed port expansion and associated impacts on infrastructure and the receiving environment is given due consideration in the municipal SDF.
4. Regardless of the attempts to mitigate the impacts of **climate change**, it is widely accepted that many of the anticipated changes are destined to take place. The uMhlathuze climate change strategy was therefore drafted on the basis of two fundamental principles, i.e. **mitigation** and **adaptation** through the implementation of the Climate Change Municipal Action Plan.
5. **Spatial Equity** requires the promotion of spatial concentration as well as integrated land management and spatial planning. The principles upon which the uMhlathuze SDF has been derived are based on principles of integration, densification and efficient land use. To this end, the municipal Land Use System is being reviewed.

## 11.2 SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT VISION AND STRATEGIC APPROACH

*(Wording to be workshop/developed/confirmed during consultation process of SDF)*

The uMhlathuze Municipal Vision is:

***“The Port City of uMhlathuze offering a better quality of life for all its citizens through sustainable development and inclusive economic growth”***

The SDF translates the above municipal vision to have a more spatial focus as follow:

***“Progressive and sustained socio-economic transformation poised for increased equality and the distribution of opportunities to all citizens by 2030.”***

In line with the Basic Service Delivery and Infrastructure Provision, and Local Economic Development and Cross Cutting Key Performance Areas (KPA's), the following goals that have a pertinent spatial implication are noted:

- Integrated infrastructure and efficient services
- Viable economic growth and development
- Integrated urban and rural development

The above spatial vision is expanded upon hereunder. It be noted that it has been informed by policy guidelines provided from, amongst others, the National Development Plan, the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy as well as the SPLUMA (Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act). The said guidelines are the foundation that gives direction to the envisaged future spatial outcomes in the uMhlathuze Municipal area.

The concept of **Transformation** is always associated with social change in South Africa. The National Development Plan 2030 makes a strong statement about the need to “address the challenge of apartheid geography” which is defined in terms of living, working and environmental sustainability. SPLUMA is identified as a tool to give effect to Spatial Transformation.

According to SACN (2013) ... in order to achieve spatial transformation in the cities, government have to rein in the real changes not only in the physical realm but also in the way we approach both the problems and the solutions. The uMhlathuze Municipality, like any other municipality in country is required to undertake processes of spatial transformation in line with the National Development Plan, Provincial Growth and Development Strategy & Plan, Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act and the process is informed by the following five key Pillars:



The main objective of uMhlathuze Municipal Spatial Transformation Concept is to address the integrated development, city compacting, structural elements, equal access to land, create sustainable economic development & opportunities which will contribute to job opportunities. It is also to prioritise development within and along Municipal Nodes and Corridor as well as developing a development partnership with neighbouring Municipalities.

SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION PILLARS	MUNICIPAL SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION GOALS	SPLUMA PRINCIPLES
Land Distribution and Development (Brown and Green fields)	<p>Optimise and maximise land distribution and development through:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Densification</li> <li>- Infill development</li> <li>- Promotion of environmental friendly and sustainable development</li> </ul> <p>Encourage equal access land distribution.</p> <p>The SDF and development plans is used as a catalyst to address sustainable land distribution.</p> <p>A clear urban edge and development guidelines and incremental approach for certain areas. Development of Rural Development Framework Plans.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Spatial Justice</li> <li>- Spatial sustainability</li> <li>- Spatial efficiency</li> <li>- Spatial resilience</li> <li>- Good administration</li> </ul>
Public Transport and Facilities	<p>Further development of Municipal Public Transport that will address the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Intermodal Public Transport System</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Spatial sustainability</li> <li>- Spatial efficiency</li> <li>- Spatial resilience</li> <li>- Good administration</li> </ul>



SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION PILLARS	MUNICIPAL SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION GOALS	SPLUMA PRINCIPLES
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Adequate Public Transport Facilities</li> <li>- Promote a good relationship with public transport stakeholders</li> <li>- Attract Investment</li> </ul>	
Economic Development and Economic Opportunities	<p>Municipal Economic Development Roadmap that will address the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Encourage investment</li> <li>- Discourage new investment that will create exclusive enclaves for the rich</li> <li>- Promote equal access to economic development opportunities</li> <li>- Tourism investment enhancement</li> <li>- Port Development</li> <li>- Industrial Development and Special Economic Zone</li> <li>- Food security</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Spatial Justice</li> <li>- Spatial sustainability</li> <li>- Spatial efficiency</li> <li>- Spatial resilience</li> <li>- Good administration</li> </ul>
Social Development	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Safety and Security</li> <li>- Health</li> <li>- Education</li> <li>- Job creation</li> <li>- Promote gender equity and equality</li> <li>- Food security</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Spatial Justice by addressing past spatial injustice i.e. access to land</li> <li>- Spatial sustainability by promoting land development that is within fiscal and institutional means</li> <li>- Spatial efficiency by optimizing the use of existing resources</li> <li>- Spatial resilience by flexible spatial plans, policies and land use management</li> <li>- Good administration to ensure all spheres of government have an integrated approach to land use and spatial development</li> </ul>

**Table 46: Linking Spatial Transformation Pillars with SDF Vision Elements**

Elements of the SDF Vision	PILLARS OF SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION				
	Land Distribution and Development	Public Transport Planning	Economic Development and Opportunities	Social Development	Integrated Human Settlement
<b>1. Progression</b>	It is critical to first consider people's needs (civil society, businesses and government organs of state) to strategically create a conducive environment to ensure continuous distribution of land for development.	A reliable integrated transportation network system is required for general public, business corporates and industries. Cognise in inter-linking different modes of transportation systems in a process of transporting general public, labour force, goods and services on both rural and urban areas while responding to carbon emission footprint and climatic change challenges.	Continuous promotion and involvement of youth in development actions encouragement of responsible citizenry to the youth.	There should be much more emphasis on the empowerment of general civil society and business corporates to keep up with the ever growing pace of technological progression. Promote provision of connectivity facilities especially on Municipal Buildings i.e. Libraries & Rate Halls, educate adult through technology about current social challenges of climatic change and energy efficiencies.	Continuous promotion of integrated human settlement projects in close proximity to public transportation network systems, employment opportunities, homes, social facilities to stimulate sustainable compactness integrated human settlements.
<b>2. Sustainability</b>	In rural and urban areas land distribution and development should stimulate co-ordination and co-operation between traditional indigenous knowledge and new contemporary urbanism. An inclusive development approach is necessary to achieve holistic, sustainable land distribution and development.	Promote public transportation network that would try to also curb and alleviate the current challenges of carbon emissions. The emphases on improving bulk infrastructure that would accommodate multi-intermodal transport network systems that would simultaneously reduce utilisation of private car while promoting healthy life style. Introduce reliable passenger railway system that would inter-link with mini bus taxi industry.	Emphasize investment in bulk infrastructure improvement and development in both rural and urban areas to create conducive environment to attract investors to establish businesses/industries that would create economic development and opportunities.	Encourage promotion in empowerment and improvement for all through literacy to keep up with technological progression	Promote and encourage mixed uses development in rural & urban areas to stimulate flexibility, densification, intensification and diversification.
<b>3. Rethinking/Re – imagining socio-economic factors</b>	Promote innovative and creative utilization of environmentally sensitive areas for other acceptable socio-cultural eco-friendly activities i.e. recreational, educational & medicinal activities.	Create and locate business opportunities in close proximity to major public transport routes. Recognise street vendors as economic resource along major transport route while promoting safety and hygienic clean awareness.	Involvement of traditional indigenous knowledge on challenges of environmental degradation.	Open up opportunities for unemployed post-graduates to become active citizenry i.e. the role of the Municipality with regard to communities as well as the responsibilities of other spheres of government to communities.	Discourage spatial fragmentation and promote spatial integration (urban/rural/forma R293 townships) to create inclusive, safety, resilient and sustainable human settlement.
<b>4. Optimum equality and maximum equity</b>	Promote, encourage and emphasise equitable land distribution in both rural and urban areas for societies and businesses especially woman and those living with disabilities. Also setting aside land for acceptable social activities (i.e. cemetery and land for grazing etc.)	Introduce Multi-modal transportation network systems.	Initiate incentives for small and big businesses to be much easier to conduct a business in both rural and urban areas.	Include the elderly and those with disabilities to be skilled.	Retirement village centres to be considered within Integrated Human Settlements.

<b>5. Distribution of opportunities</b>			Restructure and build institutions to cope with changing world (globalising and urbanising world) and uncertain global economic trends. Practice sound and reasonable financial management that would put people interest first.		Provision and delivery of basic services while promoting more compact, socially inclusive and better integrated rural-urban areas that are resilient to climate change.
<b>6. Inclusionary of all citizens</b>	Connecting the existing urban and rural fabrics entrenches spatial and social inclusion, resulting in reduction of discrepancies between urban, rural, class and income levels.	Understanding the needs for all affected (civil society, businesses & etc.) what types of transportation system best suits the respective needs. Reduce travelling cost and time for both civil society and businesses. Upgrade infrastructure to cope with multi-modal and inter-modal types of transportation system.	It is critical to respond to locally desired needs in the short – term, while aligning with medium-long term vision i.e. looking at agrarian-subsistence farming as a socio-economic source for most of rural unemployed population.	Invest in capacity building and skills development for those who are operating mostly on an informal sector of economy. Collaboration of public-private sectors in improving, transferring and skills development is critical.	Considering those who live with disabilities and poor to be placed in close proximity to social and community facilities.

### 11.2.1 Municipal Spatial Transformation Strategy Nodal Focus Areas

NODAL FOCUS AREA	CLASSIFICATION	INTERVENTION
Richards Bay and Empangeni	Primary urban centre, with servicing capacity and opportunity for densification and can support thresholds for a range of services, industry and public transport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Development of Densification Guideline/Policy</li> <li>- Review of 2006 CBD Framework Plan for Richards Bay</li> <li>- Implementation of the CBD Revitalization Plan</li> <li>- Adopting of a safety non-motorized movement system</li> </ul>
Ngwelezane, Esikhaleni, Vulindlela Township	Secondary urban centre with limited servicing capacity and opportunities for economic development, employment, land use and densification enforcement	Development of Precinct Plan to provide development vision for the area and provide possible solutions to the development, densification, land use management and economic challenges. Interventions aimed at fostering the Township Economy and supporting the second economy.
Nseleni, Buchanana Township	Tertiary urban centre with limited servicing capacity and opportunities for economic development, employment, land use and densification enforcement	Development of Precinct Plan to provide development vision for the area and provide possible solutions to the development, densification, land use management and economic challenges. Interventions aimed at fostering the Township Economy and supporting the second economy.
Opportunity Node (Empangeni Milling and Heatonville)	Node with untapped potential to provide services and economic opportunities to the surrounding hinterland, mainly by virtue of its accessibility.	Development of Precinct Plan to provide development vision for the area and provide guidance for the development, land use management and economic growth.
Rural Nodes (Potential Investment Areas)	Rural Centres with limited servicing capacity and socio-economic opportunities.	Development of Development Framework Plan which will provide guidelines for translation of Spatial Development Intentions into Land Use, Transport, Environmental, Infrastructure developments

The Municipality has recently reviewed its Land Alienation Policy which aims at addressing the Municipal Spatial Transformation Interventions. Historic imbalances have propagated in the spatial form and functions of towns and suburbs. It is now imperative that local government takes decisive action to intervene and change the landscape that has evolved as a result of these imbalances.

1. A number of **push factors** out of the former R293 towns exist as well as pull factors toward the well-established and serviced urban areas. The combination of these push and pull factors have an undesirable effect on settlement pattern and distribution. Interestingly, the R293 towns also have a pull effect on rural communities by virtue of the facilities/services available that exceed those available in rural areas.
2. **Transport** related imbalances need to be addressed, including the economic cost of travelling long distances between place of employment and place of employment. The historic lack of economic activity in R293 towns and rural areas have created dormitory suburbs that provide only in residential and basic ancillary needs such as schools, parks etc. A structured economy is lacking.
3. **R293 towns and remote suburbs** need to become sustainable, integrated communities that offer residents a suite of choices and opportunities. It should be the choice of a resident to obtain goods and services of a satisfactory quality locally or travel to a more established, higher order town, to obtain higher order goods and services from. More specifically, the Township Economy needs to be supported.
4. Land that is well located and suitable for economic activity needs to be accessible to **historically disenfranchised**.
5. Government funded interventions have to contribute to the **integration of communities** and not the further segregation of communities. To this end, the notion of **restructuring zones** is supported by the local municipality.
6. **Sense of place** and belonging to be created. Various urban design type interventions such as urban greening, waste management etc. have to be implemented to create such a sense of place and redress the feeling of remoteness.
7. Improved **access to social services** from all spheres of government. Interim arrangements of mobile services delivery points to be replaced with more permanent solutions.

Council is in the process of preparing a suite of plans to link the strategic SDF/IDP to the local implementation level of the Land Use Scheme. In order to redress spatial inequality, the following list of factors have been identified that will reduce the level of spatial inequality that exists in an area. Please note that the list is not exhaustive:

- Improved access to facilities and services
- Improve variety of facilities available
- Improve access to economic opportunities/access to land
- Overall improvement of the Township Economy
- Lessen transport cost/effort to reliable social and economic opportunities and places where goods/services are procured/received
- Spatial integration of developable areas
- Integrated human settlement
- Improved and appropriate management/development control of previously segregated areas
- Greening of suburbs and towns



### 11.3 PLANNING FOR FUTURE SPATIAL DEVELOPMENT

The Spatial Development Framework of uMhlathuze guides future development and the following components are expanded upon herewith:

- Settlement and Corridor Hierarchy
- Natural Features
- Expansion areas
- Infill and densification
- Urban Development Boundary

#### 11.3.1 UMWHLATHUZE SETTLEMENT HIERARCHY

It is important to provide some description of what is considered “urban” as opposed to “rural” in this section. Essentially urban and rural areas differ with regard to population densities, land use types and levels of services.

According to Wikipedia ([www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org)) it is important to note that definitions for urban (and rural) vary somewhat between nations.

- In Europe, countries define urbanized areas on the basis of urban-type land use
- In less developed countries, in addition to land use and density requirements, a requirement for urbanized is that a large majority of the population, typically 75%, is not engaged in agriculture and/or fishing.
- In Australia, urban areas are referred to as “urban centres” and are defined as population clusters of 1000 or more people, with a density of at least 200/km<sup>2</sup>.

The following descriptions are proposed by the uMhlathuze Municipality in respect of urban, peri-urban, rural and traditional communities.

**Urban:** Townships that have been formalized in terms of relevant development planning legislation and where private individuals can obtain land. In urban areas a higher than basic level of services is generally provided and maintained.

**Peri-Urban:** Peri-urban areas often form as result of settlement on the boundary of formal urban areas but not necessarily enjoying the benefits/levels of services that are available in the adjoining urban areas. A further consideration would be that such areas have a higher population/household density than rural areas.

**Rural:** An area outside of an urban/an or peri-urban area that has a lower population/household density as well as a more basic level of services.

**Traditional Communities:** As recognized in terms of Section 2 of the KwaZulu-Natal Traditional Leadership and Governance Act, 2005 (No. 5 of 2005), and are found in both peri-urban and rural areas.

It has to be noted that a settlement hierarchy directs specific resource based responses in respect of spatial development and investment. The detailed Settlement Hierarchy proposed for the municipal area is shown herewith:

**Table 47: Summary of uMhlathuze Settlement Hierarchy**

<b>PRIMARY SETTLEMENTS</b>	<b>RICHARDS BAY AND EMPANGENI</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Centres of employment, industrial and commercial activity.</li> <li>Continue to serve as main municipal administrative centres.</li> <li>Main public transportation nodes (Richards Bay Taxi City and Empangeni A and B-Ranks).</li> <li>A range of specialized services and facilities are available to a larger hinterland.</li> </ul>	
<b>SECONDARY AND TERTIARY SETTLEMENTS</b>	<b>ESIKHALENI, NSELENI, VULINDLELA, NGWELEZANE AND FELIXTON</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Formalized towns, mainly residential in nature.</li> <li>Most community facilities are available at these locations, and therefore provide their resident communities with basic commercial and recreational facilities. More specialized services and facilities are obtained from the primary settlements.</li> <li>Opportunity to formalize better employment opportunities at all secondary settlements.</li> </ul>	
<b>PERI-URBAN AREAS</b>	<b>UNFORMALIZED AREAS MAINLY ADJACENT TO THE FORMALIZED SECONDARY NODES OF ESIKHALENI, VULINDLELA, NSELENI AND INCLUDES MZINGAZI AND PORTIONS OF MANDLAZINI</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characterized by dense population; small stands not necessarily able to support agricultural activities; Continuous infill-development takes place; pressure for connections to municipal infrastructure (individual connections) and possible health impacts as a result of over-crowding and lack of community services.</li> <li>In-situ rural housing projects not necessarily viable as a result of high densities.</li> <li>Opportunities for formalization for some of these areas.</li> <li>Township establishment possible on municipal land but limitations exist on Ingonyama Trust Board (ITB) land.</li> </ul> <p>(Note: The Mandlazini and Mzingazi area, albeit considered part of the Richards Bay formal area, are in the process of formalization)</p>	
<b>OPPORTUNITY NODES</b>	<b>HIGHLY ACCESSIBLE AREAS WITH UNTAPPED POTENTIAL</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characterized by good accessibility but very limited development economic opportunities.</li> <li>Potential to provide services and economic opportunities to surrounding hinterland</li> </ul>	
<b>RURAL SETTLEMENTS</b>	<b>DENSER SETTLEMENTS WITHIN THE TRADITIONAL COUNCIL AREAS</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identified in line with the uMhlathuze Rural Housing Projects.</li> <li>Accessible locations for community services and infrastructure.</li> <li>Specific planning and development interventions are required to identify community services that are to be encouraged at these nodes.</li> </ul>	
<b>SCATTERED SETTLEMENT</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remainder of the Municipal Area.</li> <li>Potentially viable for in-situ rural housing projects if not too far removed from Secondary or Rural Settlements.</li> </ul>	

The following vision is envisaged for the listed nodal areas:

**Empangeni Node:** an urban centre poised for economic transformation and development initiatives that are innovative based on a new ethos which aims at creating a unique high performance unique sense of place and belonging live-i.e. work-play-trade environment.

**Richards Bay:** an urban centre poised for economic transformation and development opportunities based on a new ethos which aims at creating a unique high performance unique sense of place and belonging live-i.e. work-play-trade environment.

**Esikhaleni Node:** a socio-economic node that offers a range of sustainable mixed use development opportunities. Further economic/employment opportunities to be pursued.

**Felixton Node:** a socio-economic node that offers sustainable economic and social opportunities to its inhabitants and the larger surrounding area.

**Vulindlela/KwaDlangezwa Node:** an institutional node that offers a sustainable mixed use development to the benefit of its inhabitants, visitors and the larger surrounding area.

**Ngwelezane Node:** a socio-economic node that offers sustainable mixed use development opportunities to its inhabitants and the larger surrounding area.

**Nseleni Node:** a socio-economic node that offers sustainable mixed use development opportunities based on a human scale principle to its inhabitants and the larger surrounding area.

**Bucanana Node:** a socio-economic node that offers sustainable mixed use development opportunities based on a human scale principle to its inhabitants and the larger surrounding area.

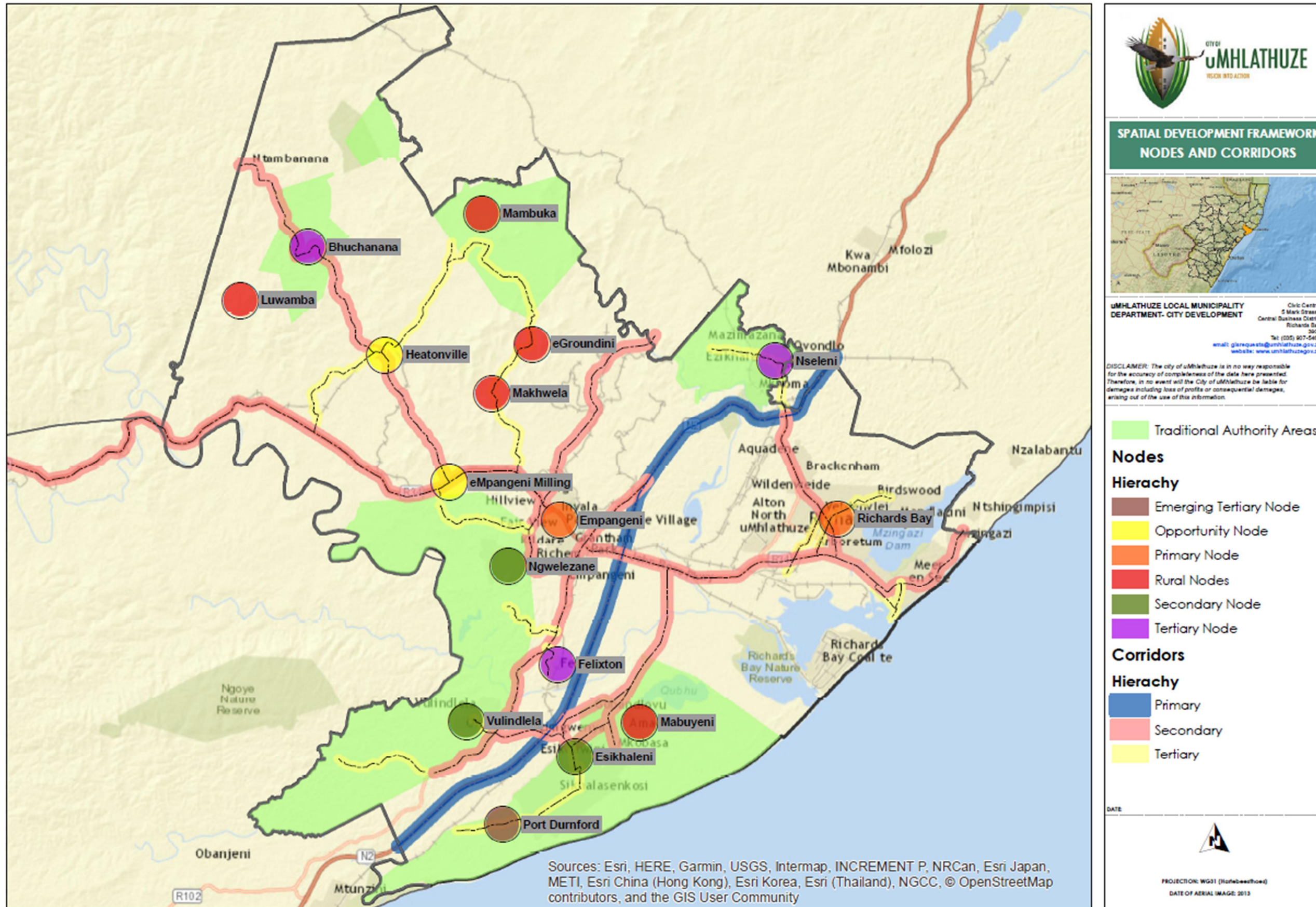
**Opportunity Node (Empangeni Milling Node and Heatonville):** socio-economic nodes that provides services and economic opportunities to the surrounding hinterland, mainly by virtue of its accessibility.

**Rural Nodes:** socio-economic nodes that offer tailor made mixed use development opportunities closer to the people.

Apart from the above nodal areas that define the settlements, the linkages between settlements are further defined in terms of a corridor hierarchy. Volumes, speed and type of traffic as well as the reason for travel define corridors or transport routes as primary, secondary or tertiary.

The following map indicates the relation between the nodes in the uMhlathuze Municipality and the respective corridors that connect them.

Map 30: Nodes and Corridors in uMhlathuze





### 11.3.2 NATURAL FEATURES

In order to understand the extent of natural features in the municipal area, a series of factors have been investigated and subsequently considered in the future spatial development planning for the municipal area. These include:

- Past **Geomorphologic** processes have resulted in a unique landscape that supports complex hydrological systems, which in turn have resulted in high level of species diversity
- The municipal area falls within the Maputaland-Pondoland-Albany **Biodiversity** hotspot which is recognized as the second richest floristic region in Africa: containing approximately 80 % of the of South Africa's remaining forests, rich birdlife and many other significant flora and fauna species.
- The geology and geomorphology of the area controls the transport and storage of water and influences the hydraulic functions of the **ground water** system. Streams are generally perennial and seldom stop flowing even in drought conditions that also creates a large underground storage reservoir that consistently sustains the coastal lakes which form the main water supply resources for the municipality.
- The uMhlathuze area is characterized by hydrological and **geotechnical** constraints.

Apart from the above, environmental assets in the municipal area contribute to the functioning of the area in the following manner:

**Economic Development:** Coastal Dunes contain heavy minerals that are sought after for mining, which is a key sector in the context of regional economic development and national plans.

**Tourism:** The beaches are significant tourism assets for the municipality, attracting an Annual Beach Festival a hosting beach events at Alkanstrand, and providing seasonal holiday destination and on-going recreational amenity. Other tourism assets worthy of preservation are the area's lakes and forests, heritage sites, conservation areas around Mzingazi River, and the estuary found south of the Port. The proposed developments of the waterfront, has a strong tourism focus. Environmental assets and socio-economic indicators have therefore been considered in the conceptual plans for the Waterfront.

**Water Resources:** The coastal Lakes (Lake Mzingazi, Lake Cubhu and Lake Nseze) are important water resources for the municipality. The development of Richards Bay in particular, with its industrial development, has seen a significant increase in the abstraction rates of these lakes over the past 20 years.

**Ecological Features:** Water logged areas have been drained to accommodate development but has in the process, created important hydrological and ecological linkages. In certain instances, these artificial regimes, have resulted in the formation of valuable natural assets that support high levels of biodiversity and species endemism. An example of such is the Thulazihleka Pan system in Richards Bay.

On the or-active planning side, an **Environmental Management Framework (EMF)** for the Richards Bay Port expansion area and IDZ area has been prepared. Key findings of the EMF were:

- The port and harbour area falls within environmental management zones of the EMF which both yield high levels of sensitivity in terms of biodiversity and geotechnical constraints.



- The Transnet Due Diligence Investigation for the acquisition of land for the proposed port development framework has however identified areas that are potentially suitable for offsetting the above environmental risks.
- The EMF identified a number of existing activities that render further constraints to the proposed expansion of the port, i.e. the slimes dam and the Foskor gypsum stack.
- The EMF sensitivity analysis points to areas that are of great concern for the IDZ.
- There are also a number of significant environmental management issues that would require management measures in terms of air quality.

Whilst the EMF is relatively limited in terms of scope of area, the Municipality adopted an **Environmental Services Management Plan (ESMP)** as broader planning tool to guide spatial development.

The areas that provide environmental services to the City are spatially defined, and the following “Levels” of protection were determined:

**Nature Reserves (Level 1): Included in the nature reserve zone are areas of high biodiversity and environmental significance that require a high level of legal protection.**

- **Conservation Zone (Level 2):** Included in the conservation zone are areas of biodiversity / environmental significance, which are not viable for proclamation as nature reserves, but that require some form of legal protection. Included are unique or regionally important natural habitats; wetland and forest areas that are protected in terms of national legislation; and all areas that fall within the 1:100 year flood line. No transformation of the natural assets or the development of land for purposes other than conservation should be permitted in this zone. Sustainable use of renewable resources is permitted.
- **Open Space Linkage Zone (Level 3):** Included in the open space linkage zone are areas that provide a natural buffer for Level 1 and 2 Zones, areas that provide a natural link between Level 1 and 2 Zones and areas that supply, or ensure the supply of, significant environmental services. Transformation of natural assets and the development of land in these zones should only be permitted under controlled conditions.
- **Development Zone (Level 4):** Includes all areas that are not included in Level 1, 2 and 3 zones. Areas in this zone are either already developed or transformed and contain land and natural assets that are not critical for environmental service supply.

### 11.3.3 EXPANSION AREAS

A future development scenario has been quantified for the Municipality based on the following practical and realistic assumptions:

1. There will be an increase in economic activity
2. There will be population increase

To accommodate the anticipated growth, the following forms an integral part of the SDF:

1. The identification of land for expansion purposes
2. The identification of areas for densification

Based on the various technical analysis and principles reported upon in this report, a number of expansion areas have been identified for the municipal area with the following size and developable characteristics as detailed herewith.

**Table 48: Extent of SDF Expansion Areas**

Expansion Area	Size (Ha)	Land Developable (Ha)
A	593	363
B	2 982	2 214
C	512	437
D	1 756	356
E	2 306	1 958
F	2 344	1 699
G	971	407
H	1 163	780
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>12 629</b>	<b>8 214</b>

Scenarios for population increase in the uMhlathuze Municipal area are based on the 2016 Community Survey baseline figure of 410 465 extracted from the following table.

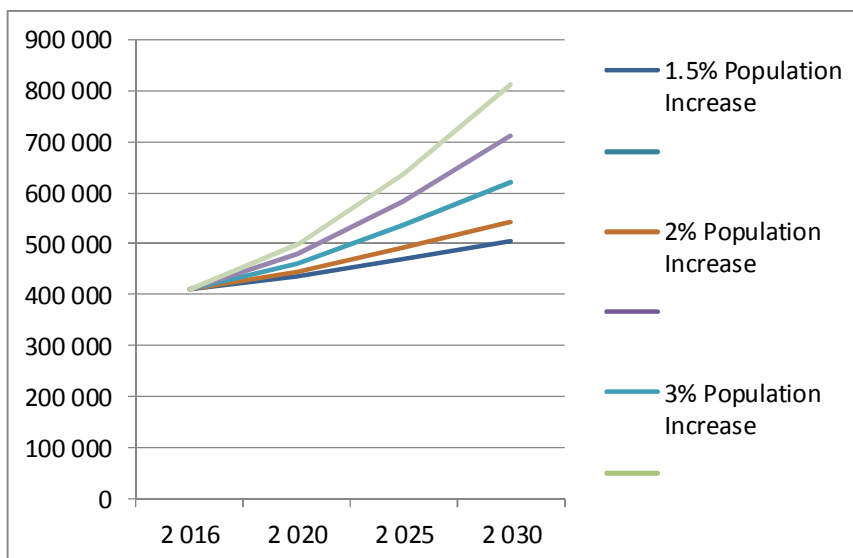
**Table 49: Population Numbers in KCDM**

	KCDM	IMFOLOZI	UMHLATHUZE	UMLALAZI	MTHONJANENI	NKANDLA
<b>2011</b>	907519	122889	334459	213601	47818	114416
<b>2016</b>	971135	144363	410465	233140	78883	114284
<b>% Growth</b>	7,01%	17,47%	22,73%	9,15%	64,97%	-0,12%

Source: Community Survey 2016

The following graph is a graphical illustration of the above tables indicating a 1.45%, 2%, 3%, and 5% annual population growth rate for uMhlathuze.

**Figure 18: Population Growth Projections to 2030**



In context of the above, the following scenarios have been derived:

#### Population increase of 1,5% per annum

- At a steady population increase of 1,5% per annum, the municipal population will surpass 500 000 people by 2030.
- An estimated additional 1300 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare.
- An estimated additional 600 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 1,5% population increase at a development density of 25 units per hectare.

#### Population increase of 5% per annum

- The municipality will reach a population of 500 000 before 2021 if a population growth rate of 5% takes place over the next few years.
- At such a 5% per annum population growth rate the number of households in the municipality will double by 2030.
- An estimated 9700 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare.
- An estimated 5800 ha of land may be needed from 2016 to 2023 to accommodate a 5% population increase at a development density of 15 units per hectare.

The above clearly indicates the importance of **densification** to maximise the use of land for various purposes.

An urban land use analysis has been undertaken for the municipal area indicating the current **proportionate** land use zonings in the municipal area. The results of this analysis are indicated in the following table.

**Table 50: Current land use trend of zoned urban land**

Zoning	Ha	% Against Total
Commercial	114.02	1.46%
Industrial	1695	21.70%
General Residential	115.752	1.48
Special Residential	1496.475	19.16
Intermediate Residential	15.87	0.2
Public/Private Open Spaces	540	6.92
Transportation Infrastructure	28.4	0.4
Undetermined	16.686	0.21
Social	535.8	6.86
Other Zonings	3248.997	41.616
<b>Total</b>	<b>7807</b>	<b>100</b>

The application of the above proportionate percentages to the estimated area of 8214Ha for future development of the Expansion Areas results in the following.

**Table 51: Anticipated land usages in Expansion Areas**

Zoning	Ha
Commercial	120
Industrial	1783
General Residential	122
Special Residential	1574
Intermediate Residential	16
Public/Private Open Spaces	568
Transportation Infrastructure	33
Undetermined	17
Social	564
Other Zonings	3418
<b>Total</b>	<b>8214</b>

- The findings in this table have informed the current WSDP/Water Master Plan preparation process for the former wards 1 – 30 of the Municipality.
- An estimated 1 600 Ha of residential land in the proposed expansion areas could accommodate significant population growth beyond 2023 and 2030 depending on the growth rate and the development density.

More conceptual mapping of the proposed expansion areas is provided at overleaf. It is important to reiterate that the expansion areas were identified by applying spatial planning principles, i.e. integration and concentration together with a technical analysis of air quality, founding conditions, the environmental etc. The location of a possible development application in the expansion area does not provide adequate information for Council to support the proposed development in principle. Site specific specialist studies and development approvals that address environmental issues, land ownership and use issues etc. are still required. Council can only make an informed decision upon consideration of the specialist studies as part of the development application processes. In addition, environmental compliance/approval is also required.



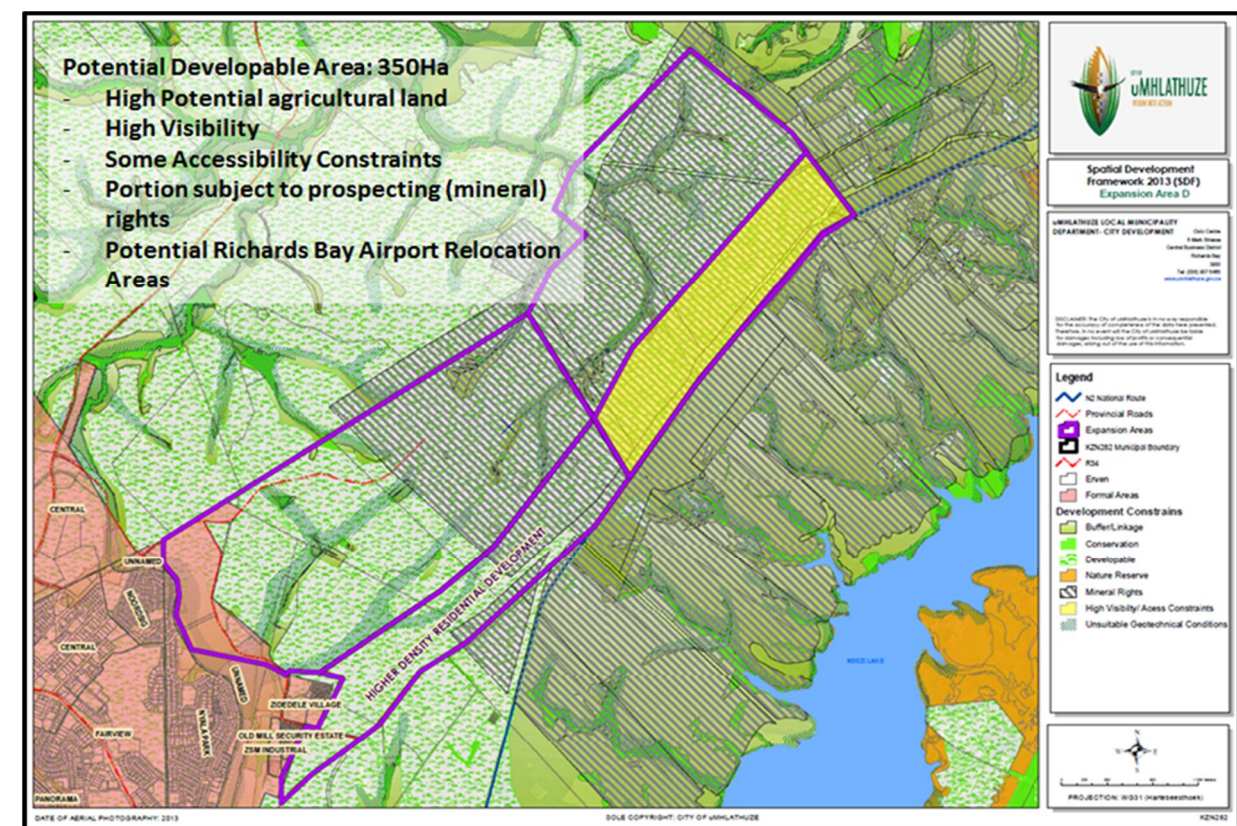
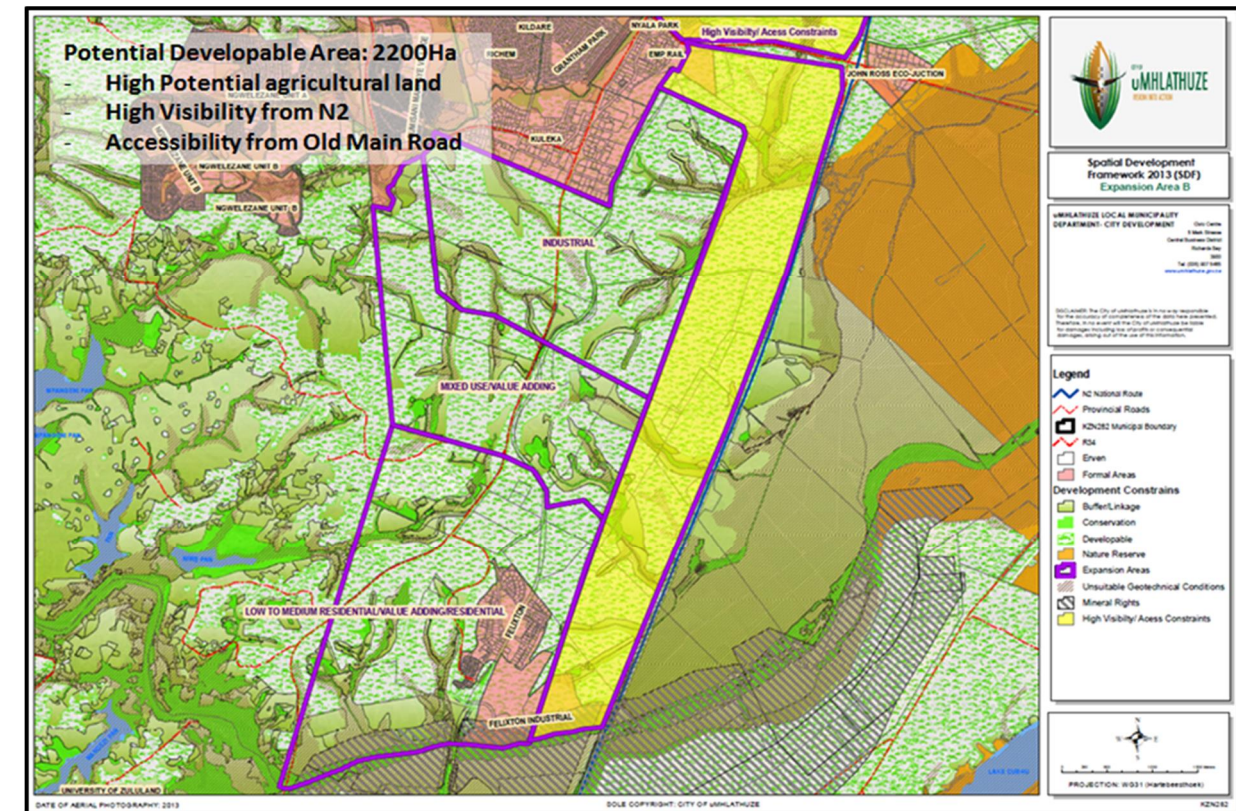
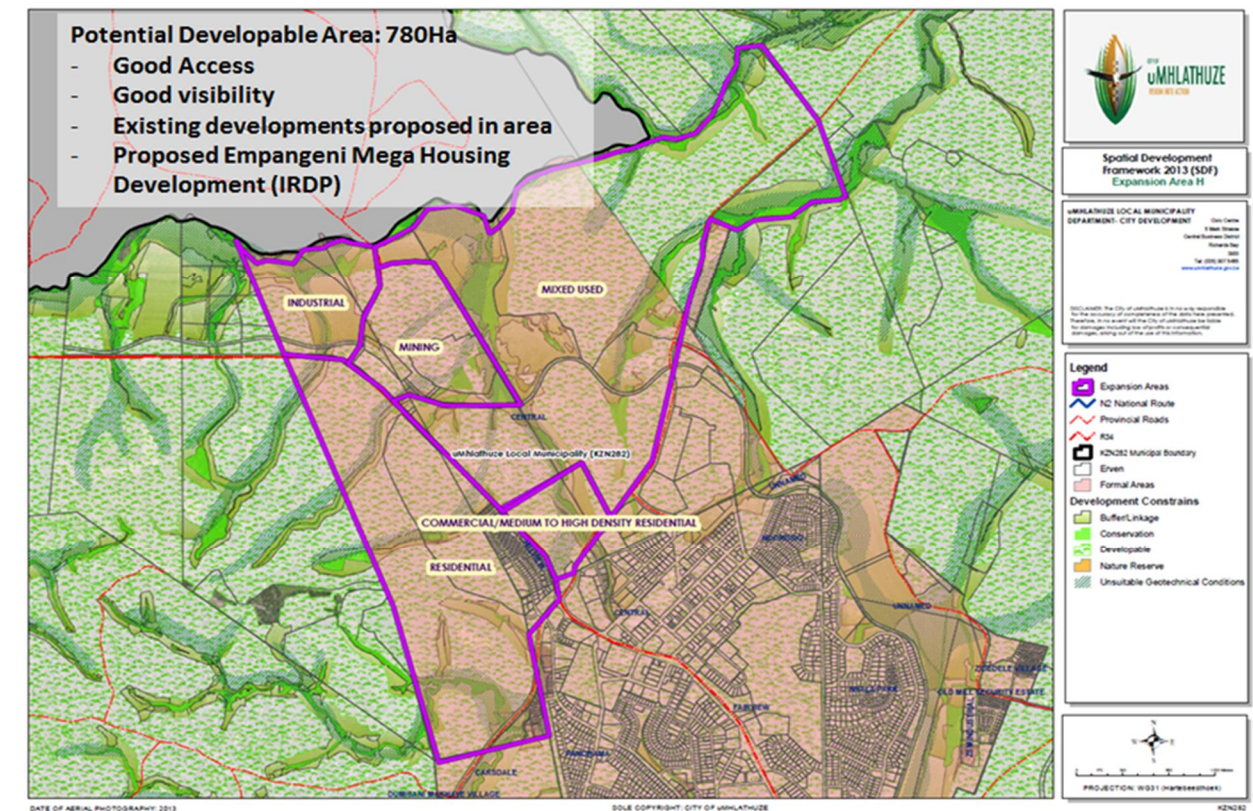
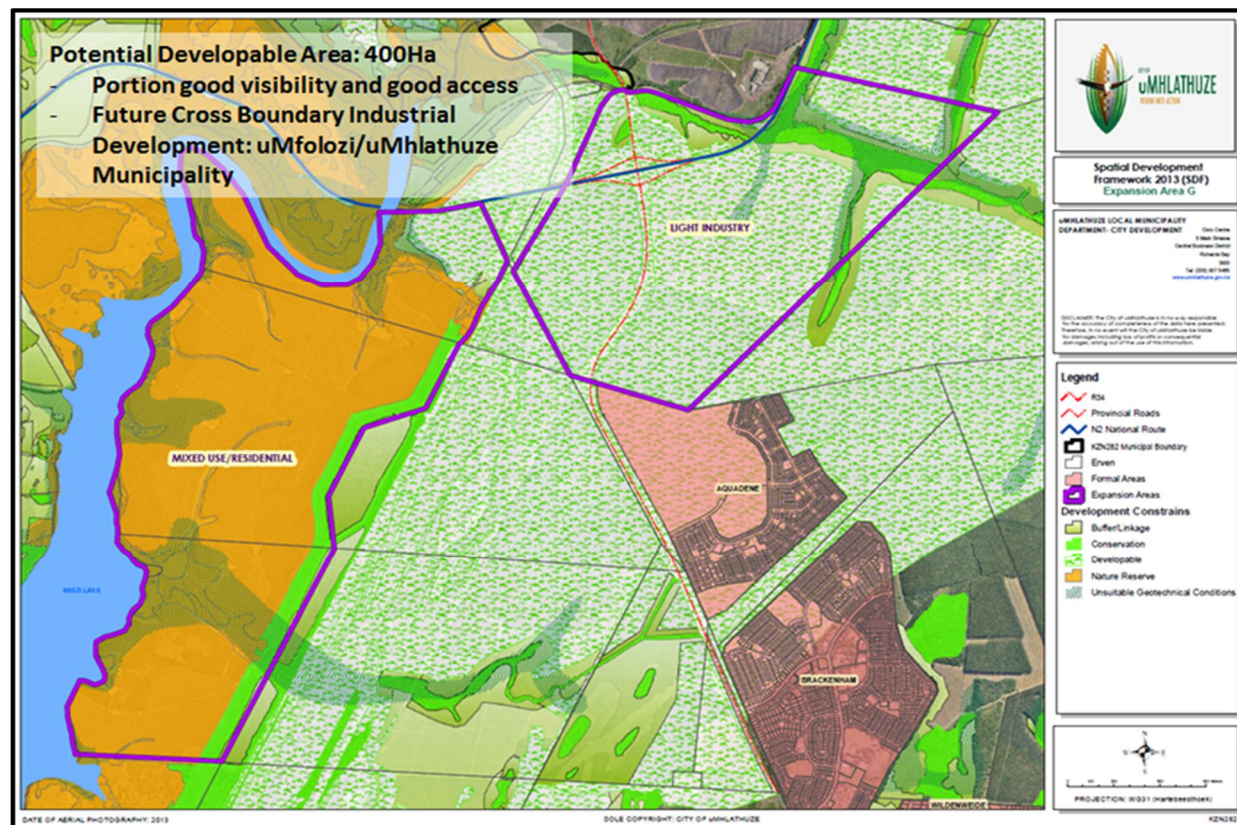
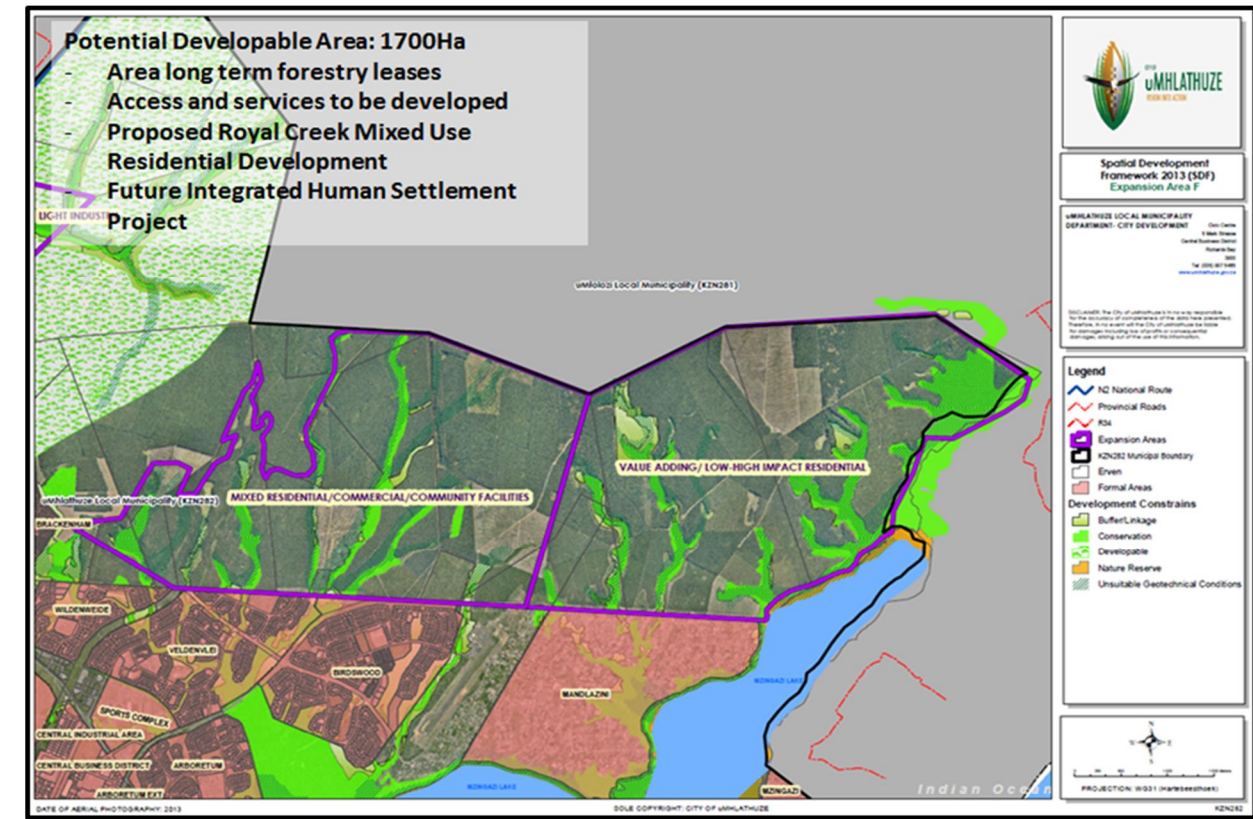
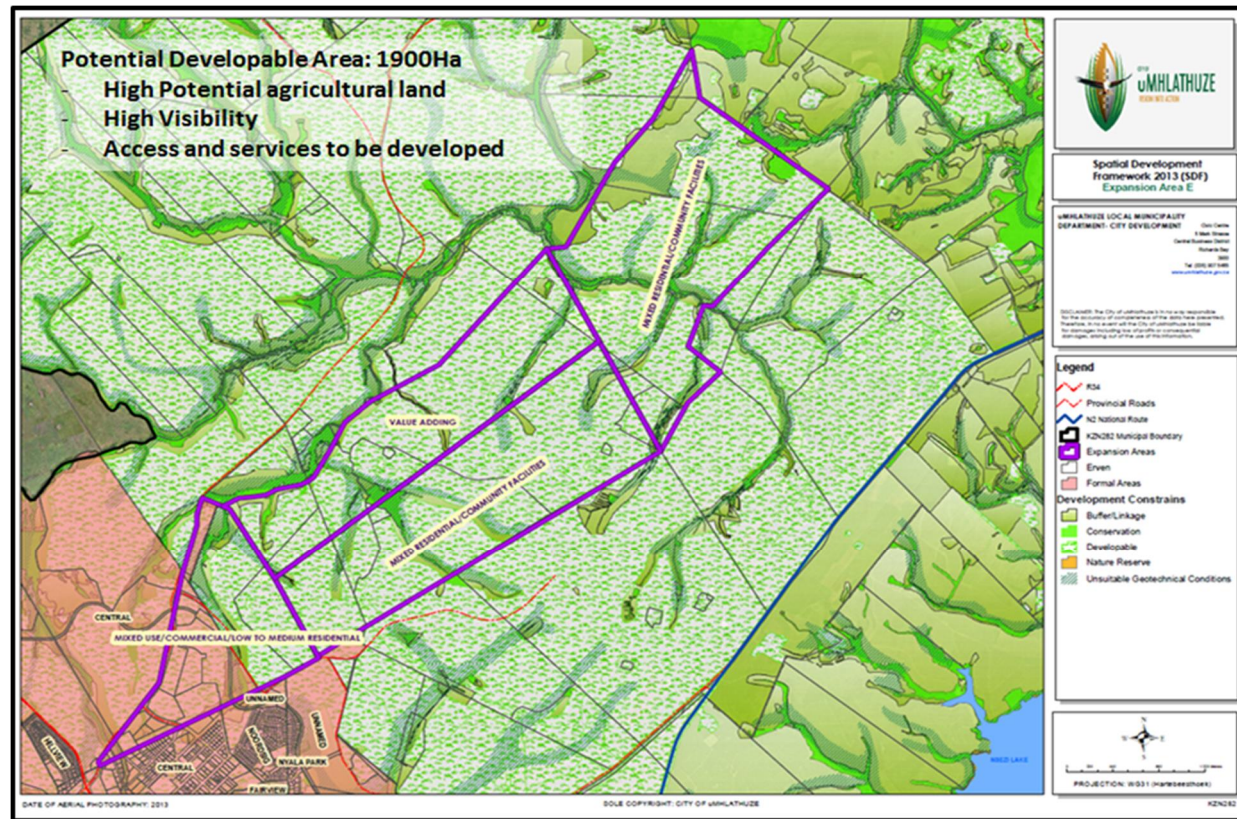




Figure 20: Expansion Areas E, F, G and H





### 11.3.4 INFILL AND DENSIFICATION

During 2007, the City of uMhlathuze identified opportunities for residential infill development in Richards Bay and Empangeni. Consideration was given to public open spaces and large undeveloped portions of land, mostly unconstrained by environmental factors. This Study needs to be updated and expanded to include the areas of Esikhaleni, Vulindlela, Nseleni and Ngwelezane.

The above investigation found that, at a development density of 20 units per hectare, more than 5000 units could be developed on all the pieces of land identified. It was noted that the above was based on the assumption that all the sites could be developed. Given certain limitations identified, the following more conservative estimate was provided for the residentially zoned (special and general) pieces of land:

**Table 52: Results from Infill Investigation in Empangeni and Richards Bay**

	<b>Yield at 20 units/ha</b>	<b>Yield at 30 units/ha</b>
<b>Birdswood</b>	614	921
<b>Arboretum</b>	1000	1500
<b>Wildenweide/Veldenvlei</b>	18	27
(SR 2)	190	285
(GR 2)	58	87
<b>Brackenham</b>	28	42
(GR 1)	26	39
<b>Meerensee</b>	392	588
(SR 2)	16	24
(GR 1)	28	42
<b>Empangeni</b>	276	414
(SR 1)	30	45
(SR 2)	20	30
(GR 2)	172	258
<b>Total</b>	<b>2868</b>	<b>4302</b>

In addition, the following densification options were also explored in the study:

1. Increases in F.A.R for selected land uses
2. Greater Flexibility in Subdivisions
3. Creation of a Panhandle between adjoining properties
4. Densification/Infill of Public Open Spaces
5. Assess Required Parking Ratios

### 11.3.5 URBAN DEVELOPMENT BOUNDARY

Essentially the formal settlements, notably the former TLC and R293 town areas, are regarded as the urban areas. The remaining areas, i.e. peri-urban, rural settlements and scattered settlements are the municipal rural areas. Both the urban and the rural components of the settlement hierarchy have specific actions or interventions required.

The **urban areas** can be considered to delineate the current “urban edge” as it is known in popular literature. However, the City of Umhlathuze has not opted for the use of the term

“urban edge” and is rather guided by the concept of an urban development boundary (UDB).

An Urban Development Boundary (UDB) is one of the tools available to curb costly urban sprawl and to direct growth towards the presently serviced and future priority service areas of the City (both in terms of engineering and social services).

In essence, the urban development boundary for the uMhlathuze Municipality encompasses those areas where an urban service standard is to be applied or maintained. More specifically, the former TLC areas as well as the proposed expansion areas.

The implication of the above is as following:

- In the existing urban areas being the primary and secondary settlements, densification should be promoted as well as infill development.
- More detailed planning for areas A-H should be undertaken and investigations should focus on the availability of commercial, industrial, residential and other supporting uses, the timeframe in which the available land uses are to be developed (i.e. phasing) as well as an appropriate land release strategy.
- The above phasing of areas A-H has to further inform the provision and roll-out of infrastructure to these areas.
- In line with national and provincial policy, at least a basic (RDP) level of service delivery has to be attained in the rural areas of the municipality.
- Following the formalization of peri-urban areas, and finding that the subsequent provision of an urban standard of services to such areas is both practical and sustainable, peri-urban areas can be included in the Urban Development Boundary (UDB) in future.

Land located beyond the City's UDB is predominantly rural and agricultural in nature and, as such, the land uses tend to be of a lower-intensity and density.

In some instances, development beyond the UDB has to be considered, i.e.:

1. Land uses normally associated or reasonably necessary in connection with agricultural purposes.
2. Areas designated for nature conservation, which may include tourism facilities (accommodation/restaurant) and recreational facilities directly related to the main use.
3. Tourism and recreational related facilities such as outdoor and tourism related activities including hiking trails, hotels, 4x4 trails, restaurants, curio markets, conference facilities, wedding venues, game lodges and other similar uses with a rural character not causing a nuisance or having a detrimental effect on the environment.
4. Social amenities that cannot be accommodated within the Urban Development, notably schools, clinics, cemeteries and other religious facilities.
5. Farm stalls.
6. Rural residential uses and agricultural holdings.
7. Any other related development or service, provided that the proposed development (1) serves primarily a local market and (2) is located at a service delivery centre or central place to the community.

Apart from the list of potential instances referred to above where development beyond the UDB can be considered, any proposed activity will also be evaluated in terms of the following:

1. Environmental listing notices in terms of the relevant NEMA Regulations at the time.
2. Bulk infrastructure capacity.
3. The development has to be in keeping with the character/ambience of the surrounds.

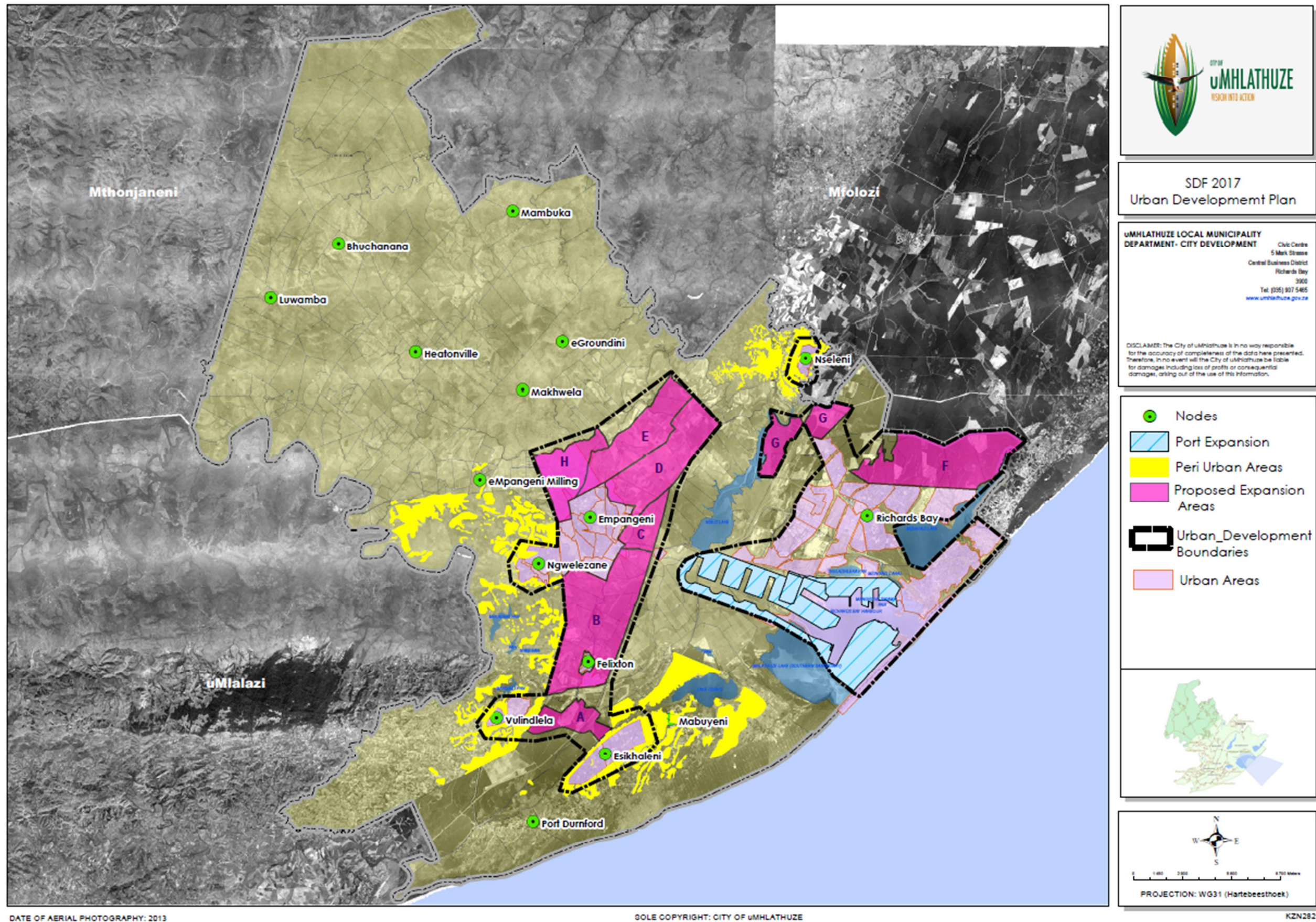
The UDB is not cast in stone and should be reviewed when the need arises or during the annual IDP/SDF Review. Proposals or motivations to amend the UDB should include:

1. The need for the specific location of the proposed development outside the UDB as well as proof that a suitable property is not available within the UDB for the proposed activity or land use.
2. A comprehensive evaluation of alternative sites or uses for the subject property, i.e. the property outside the UDB that is being mooted for a proposed development.
3. Details on the provision of bulk services as well as the responsibility, and maintenance, of such.
4. The impact (capital and operations) of the proposed development on existing infrastructure including water, sewer, roads and public transport.
5. A preliminary indication of the impact of the development on the existing environment (in the absence of a formal Environmental Impact Assessment or scoping report).

The SDF expansion areas are located within the UDB of the uMhlathuze Municipality. Essentially, these expansion areas are the defined priority areas for development and capital investment in the City that require management to ensure controlled growth. To this end, an implementation strategy has to be derived for the future development of the SDF expansion areas.



**Map 31: Urban Development Boundary**





## **11.4 DEVELOPMENT OPPORTUNITIES**

This section of the report considers a number development opportunities and due consideration has been given to the spatial development strategic framework, conceptual framework as well as the analysis undertaken.

### **11.4.1 Opportunity for Residential Infill**

Research was undertaken aimed to identify opportunities for residential infill development in Richards Bay and Empangeni. The document identified various public open spaces and large undeveloped portions of land, which were mostly unconstrained by environmental factors (using the uMhlathuze Environmental Services Management Plan as guideline).

At present, the study does have two shortcomings:

1. Outdated information should be updated prior to implementation
2. The study did not include the areas of Esikhaleni, Vulindlela, Nseleni and Ngwelezane.

In context of the above, it is recommended that the properties identified for infill development be re-investigated and the information be updated to determine:

- o Current ownership
- o The need for community services in the area (additional schools, public transport amenities, etc.) that could be serviced by an open space listed
- o The role of the portion of land in terms of the wider area, i.e. does it form a core component of the Municipal Open Space System
- o Cost/benefit analysis – often infill development is very costly, and may therefore not be financially viable in the short term
- o The areas of Esikhaleni, Vulindlela, Nseleni, Ngwelezane and Felixton be included in the above study

### **11.4.2 Opportunity for Agricultural Investment**

Very little of uMhlathuze's area would be available for future development if the National Department of Agriculture's land capability mapping classes 1, 2 and 3 were used as a deciding factor for determining future development areas. To this end, the Municipality has to engage with the National Department of Agriculture to ascertain a way forward in determining land for agricultural protection as well as land available for future development.

Given the above, it is imperative that:

- o Conflict between the Municipality's proposed Expansion Areas and the Department of Agriculture's Land Capability mapping must be workshopped and a compromise reached in terms of land reserved for agricultural protection as well as land that would be made available for future development.

Areas and projects that pose significant agricultural potential should be registered with the KZN RASET programme ((RASET – Radical Agrarian Socio-Economic Transformation).

### 11.4.3 Opportunity for Mining Investment

The City of uMhlathuze is rich in mineral resources, including ilmenite, rutile, zircon and pig iron. The mining of these minerals meets all of South Africa's demand for titanium dioxide and zircon and almost all of the country's pig iron requirements.

Large areas have been reserved as having mineral rights portions of these areas are in direct conflict with the Municipality's proposed Expansion Areas.

Provision is made in terms of Section 53 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRD), Act No. 28 of 2002 in respect of the use of land surface rights that are contrary to the objects of the Act that an application to the Minister can be made.

### 11.4.4 Nodes and Corridors

A number of factors that must be taken into consideration in terms of nodal and corridor planning and development, the most important being:

- Future urban settlement should be located predominantly within the agreed growth areas and as far as possible, comply with planned phasing of the growth areas and be serviced by existing infrastructure networks.
- Future development should not contribute to ribbon/strip development or impact on the safety and efficiency of the road system.
- Commercial land (including office space) should be located in accordance with recognized guidelines so that it can be conveniently serviced, is accessible to, and is consistent in scale with the settlement it serves or is planned to serve. If commercial land expansion is not adjacent to, or adjoining, an existing centre then any new development should not undermine the existing centre(s) and should be at a scale and location only to serve the target neighbourhood/area.

A number of potential intersection nodes along the N2 have previously already been identified:

- N2 and off-ramp to Esikhaleni/Vulindlela as this intersection forms an important gateway to Potential Expansion Area A.
- N2 and R34 John Ross Highway where the John Ross Interchange Park (John Ross Eco Junction) development has already commenced.
- N2 and the proposed future South Central Arterial (which would link up with P700). The construction of this intersection would unlock opportunities in terms of Potential Expansion Areas C and D, and would also present opportunity for development of the area west of Lake Nsese. Such development in the vicinity of the Lake would have to be carefully planned and executed, since Lake Nsese is an important source of fresh water for the area.
- N2 and the MR231 intersection at Nseleni. The Council has previously considered a draft development proposal in this vicinity, which is subject to further refinement and consideration at an appropriate time.

In context of the above, the following is noted:

- Further detailed planning of intersection nodes as defined above in terms of phasing and development guidelines.

### 11.4.5 Tourism and Areas of Natural Beauty

The following development principles would guide development applications in these areas. The most important development principles that should be noted include:

- Future development should avoid, as far as possible, areas of environmental significance (Environmental Services Management Plan Level 1 and 2 areas), significant economic resources (such as agriculture or mining), potential environmental or community hazard/risk, high landscape or cultural heritage value, or potential increased risk associated with impacts of climate change. Should development be proposed within these areas, clear mitigation or offset measures should be applied.
- Future development adjoining land with the above values should incorporate buffers as necessary to help protect those values and to avoid future land use conflict. In terms of environmental significance, these buffers have been identified in Council's Environmental Services Management Plan Level 3 areas.
- Future development outside agreed growth areas, but which aims to provide opportunities to enjoy and enhance areas of natural beauty, must be supported by a detailed need and desirability investigation, be located outside the Environmental Services Management Plan Level 1 and 2 areas, prove infrastructure efficiency and address any other requirements that Council may have.
- Future development and planning should boost those economic sectors/activities that have the potential to grow and create employment and income. In this regard future tourism development and growth in tourism should not occur at the expense of local environmental, economic and social values and efficient provision of engineering infrastructure. It should also provide for a wide range of experience opportunities from the low cost family type tourism developments, such as in caravan parks and camping grounds, to large single destination development. It should aim to maintain public access.

## 11.5 INTERVENTION AREAS

### 11.5.1 INFORMALLY SETTLED AREAS

Spatial intervention areas refer to specific areas where deliberate actions from either the district/local municipality or any other tier of government can improve on a situation that prevails in the said area. Importantly, spatial intervention areas are identified and have to be benchmarked against an acceptable standard.

Also, a number of open spaces in the municipal area have been settled in an informal manner, i.e. without formal approval of building plans and appropriate zoning with the result that service provision to such areas has not been planned and a reactive response instead of a proactive planning approach is followed. Typical open spaces are school sites, sites for infrastructure such as sub-stations as well as public open spaces.

The identification of spatial intervention areas can be considered as a step towards achieving a desired spatial pattern.

The following intervention areas are proposed in the uMhlathuze Municipality:

- a) As identified as part of the Nodal Hierarchy of the City of uMhlathuze, **peri-urban** areas are characterized by dense population, small stands not necessarily able to support agricultural activities, continuous infill-development, pressure for

connection to municipal infrastructure (individual connections) and possible health impacts as a result of over-crowding. An opportunity therefore exists to improve the living conditions of these residents by formalizing, in some way, these densely populated areas. Such opportunity, however, needs to be carefully planned and workshopped with the landowner (Ingonyama Trust) and affected residents.

- b) In terms of planning for peri-urban nodes, the principle of “work where you live” should be promoted.
- c) Typical examples of such densely populated peri-urban areas are areas surround Esikhaleni, specifically the uMzingwenya area as well as peri-urban areas around the former R293 towns
- d) In view of the applicable environmental issues such as the high water table and potential pollution of the nearby Mzingazi Lake, special consideration has to be given to areas of **Mzingazi and Mandlazini** in respect of water borne sewer installation and discouraging communities from practicing yard burials.

To respond to the situation outlined, specialist studies to confirm environmental sensitivities, wetlands, floodlines etc. have to be initiated to inform future decisions about the formalization of such areas.

Seven informal settlements in the municipality have been investigated and planned for through the NUSP (National Upgrading and Support Programme). The phased implementation of the recommendations is now to commence and the uMzingwenya settlement has been initiated.

## 11.5.2 RURAL DEVELOPMENTFRAMEWORK PLANS

In order to facilitate feasible service provision, Rural Development Framework Plans for all rural areas have to be developed and adopted, and thus used as a guiding tool when land allocations are effected.

The municipality has five year plan for the preparation of Rural Development Framework Plans. Phase 2 of the project is underway. The following table illustrates the complete phasing approach for the preparation of the proposed Rural Development Framework Plans.

No.	Project Name	Phase	Financial Year
1	Port Dunford Rural Development Framework Plan-Mkhwanazi Traditional Authority - completed	1	2017/2018
2	Buchanana Rural Development Framework Plan-Obuka Traditional Authority	2	2018/2019
3	Hluma Rural Development Framework Plan-KwaBhejane Traditional Authority	3	2019/2020
4	Matshana Rural Development Framework Plan-Madlebe Traditional Authority	4	2020/2021
5	Mabuyeni Rural Development Framework Plan-Dube Traditional Authority	5	2021/2022

Mapping of some interventions areas is provided as per the detailed hereunder:

Map 32: Basic Services Intervention Areas

The portions of the municipality that have been identified as priority areas represent those wards in the municipality that have the highest need in terms of access to basic water and hygienic toilet facilities. The specific wards are 5, 6, 31 and 33

Map 33: Areas of Economic Growth and Development

The mapping provided illustrates areas where interventions in aid of economic growth and development should be focused. To this end the following is noted:

- Interventions at the identified nodal areas
- The need to consolidate all environmental studies undertaken independently for the respective former municipal areas that now have been consolidated into an enlarged municipal area.
- The protection of strategic agricultural resources but also the initiation of interventions aimed at achieving maximum poverty alleviation and economic growth at areas that pose untapped agricultural resources.
- Rural Framework Plans are being rolled out in the rural areas to guide land and decision making and thereby providing guidance and confidence to investors and residents.
- Conservation/Tourism Assets are prevalent in the whole municipal area. There are formalized public nature reserves as well as a number of private game reserves notably, Mfuli, Nyala, Fundimvelo, Thula-Thula and Intabayengwe.
- Interventions around densely settled peri-urban areas is of an incremental nature. As such, land use management responses in terms of guidelines are required. In addition, the implementation of the NUSP (National Upgrading and Support Programme) plans have to be undertaken.
- A total of eight expansion areas have been identified to absorb growth and development in the municipality. Planning and budgeting for the provision of bulk infrastructure (roads, electricity, water and sewer) to these areas are required to that the development of these areas can be enabled.

Map 34: Settlement Intervention Areas

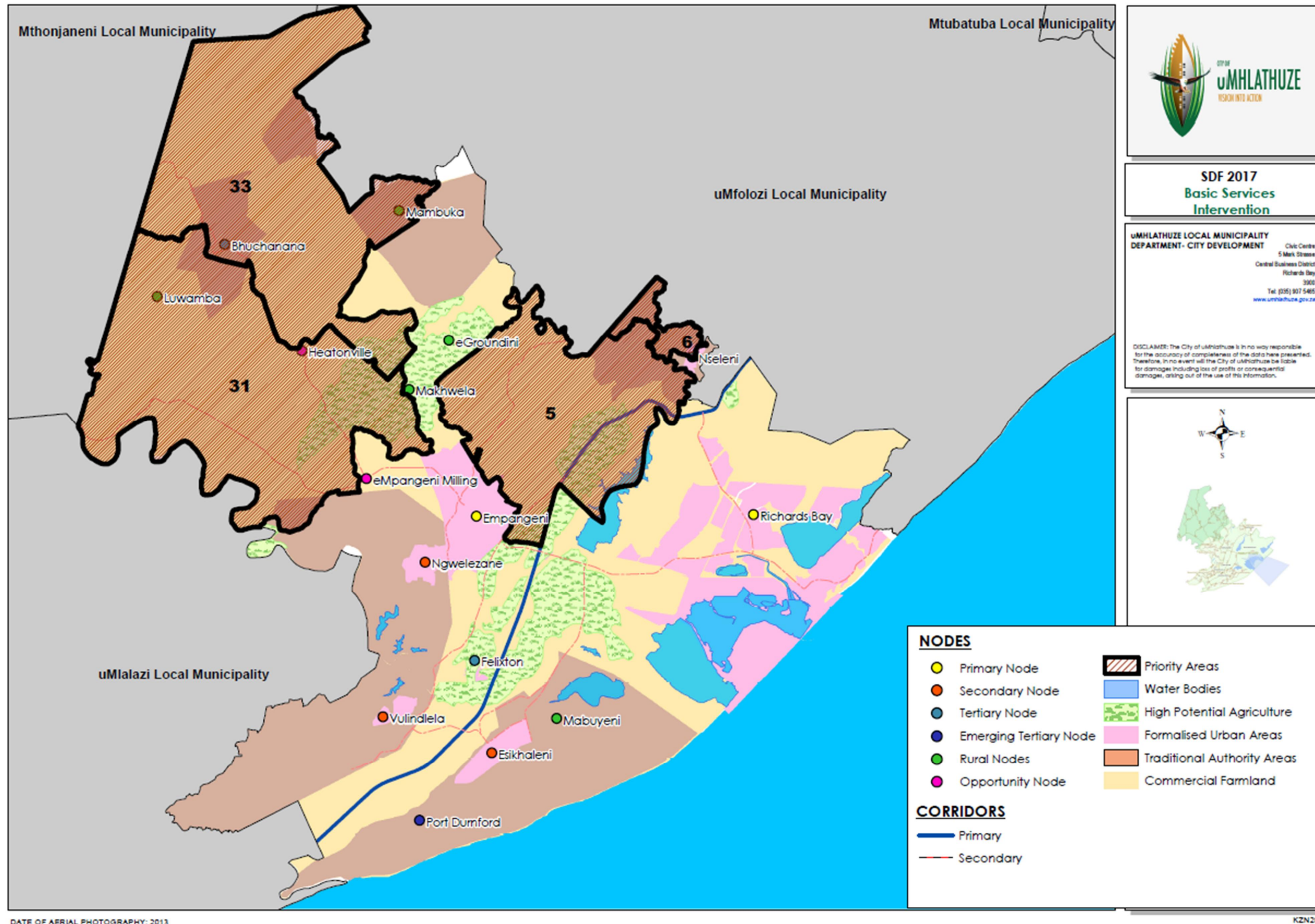
Reference to be made to the nodal intervention proposals

Map 35: Social Infrastructure Intervention

The portions of the municipality that have been identified as priority areas represent those wards in the municipality that have the highest need in terms of low education levels, high unemployment and low income levels. The specific wards are 5, 10, 13, 14, 18, 25, 32 and 33. Specific interventions in these areas will require a coordinated effort to address adult literacy, accessibility to social services such as pension and the overall investment in human capital.

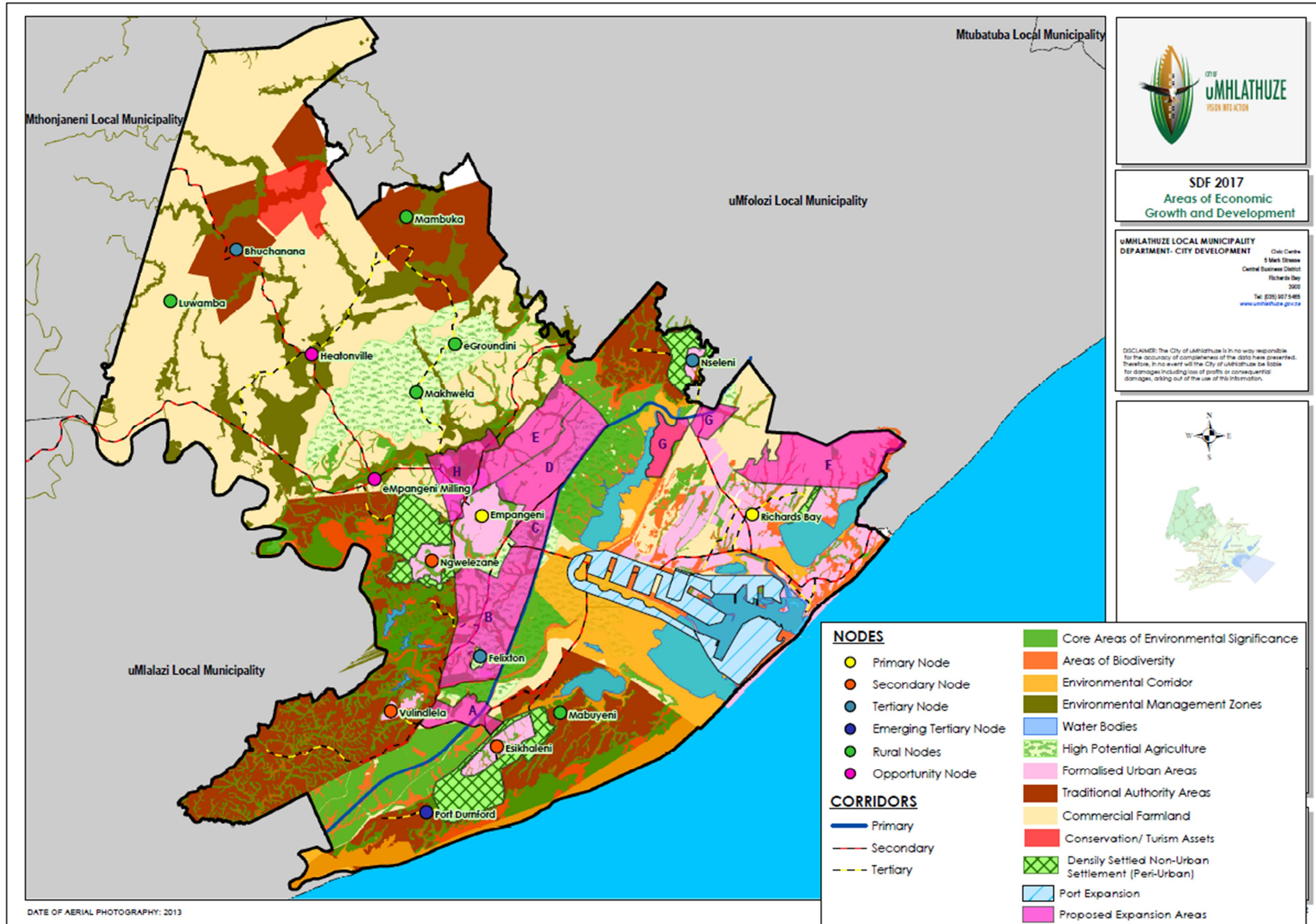


Map 32: Basic Services Intervention Areas



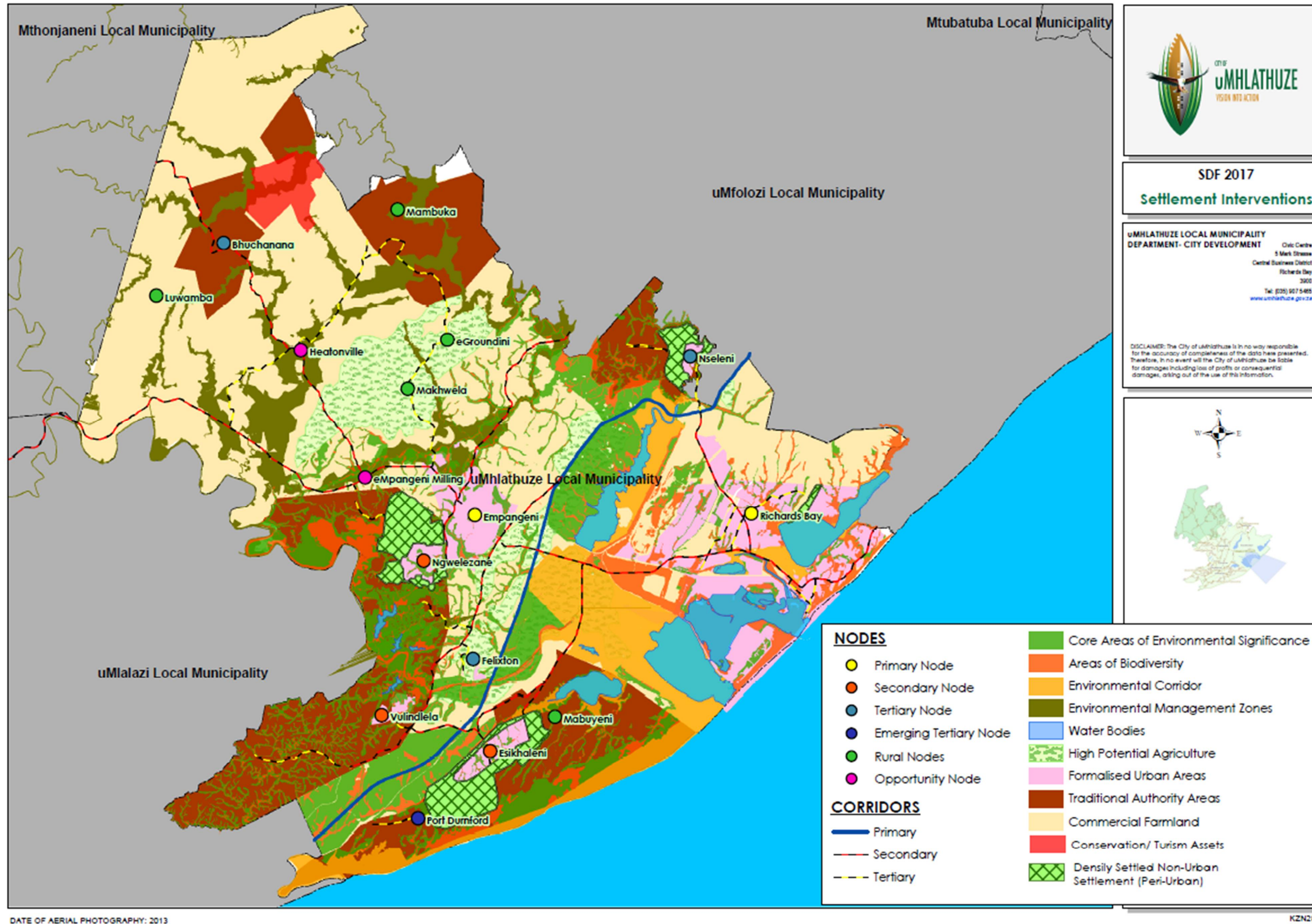


Map 33: Areas of Economic Growth and Development



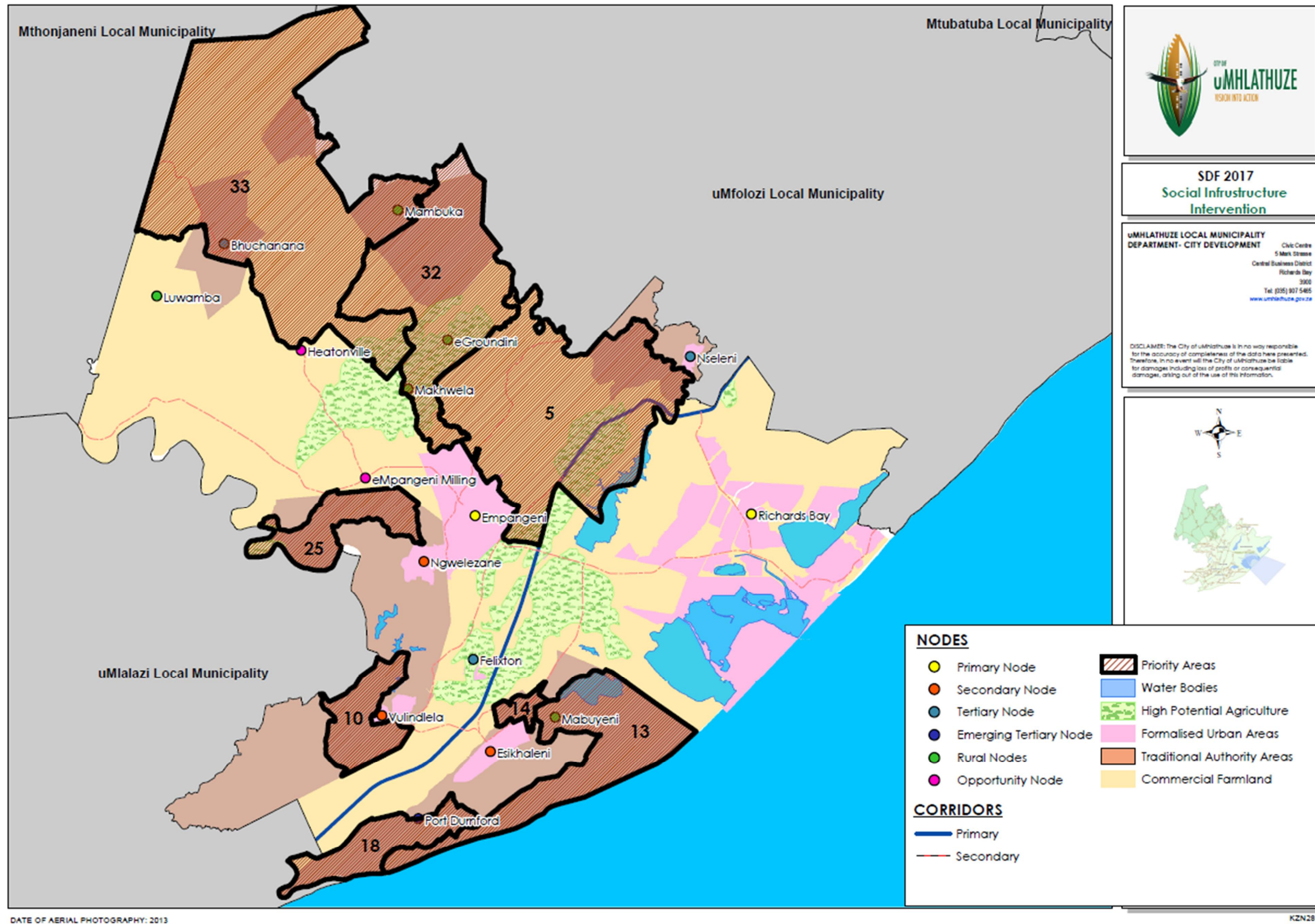


Map 34: Settlement Intervention Areas





Map 35: Social Infrastructure Intervention



## 11.6 DEVELOPMENT OF INGONYAMA TRUST BOARD LAND

It is a legislative requirement for all municipalities to prepare and enforce a wall-to-wall scheme within their area of jurisdiction. This means that every big development will have to be compliant and approved by the local authority.

However, the process in terms of development in Ingonyama Trust Board (ITB) land remains challenging. In most cases the ITB does not approve land sales in their areas but they offer a long term lease, which sometimes is not supported by developers, as they believe in the outright purchase of land.

Both the affected Traditional Authority and the ITB have to agree on the proposed development prior and sign certain documents related to land release and availability prior to submission to the municipality.

The ITB land release issues not only affect business developers but also general public as sometimes the development cannot be implemented or fast tracked to due land availability. The provision of bulk infrastructure is sometimes also delayed or challenging.

The municipality has a licence to supply electricity to formalised areas and not Ingonyama Trust Land areas. Hesitance to approve the formalisation of certain developments in ITB land areas sometimes causes delays in the service delivery and confusion to the community at large.

From the community's perspective, there is also a fear that once their area is formalised, those residing within that proclaimed boundary would have to pay rates, and is something that they are not used to.

The Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (CoGTA) have prepared guidelines, which will assist in terms of land allocation in Ingonyama Trust Land. These guidelines have not yet been workshopped with Amakhosi and therefore they cannot be implemented or used at this stage.

The uMhlathuze Council has considered the implications of the above situation and the following requirements have been noted:

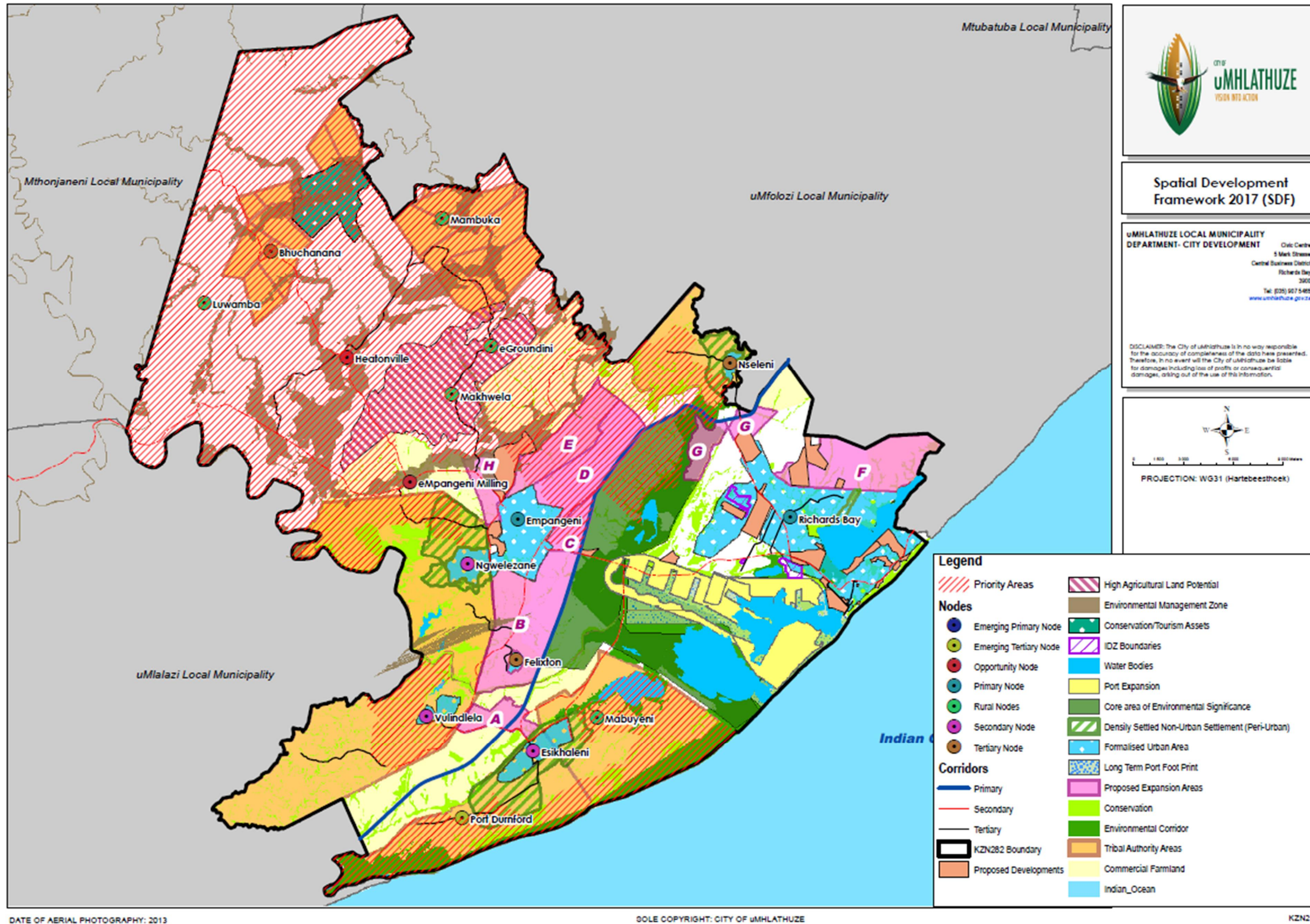
1. Council has to budget for and obtain aerial photographs and contour mapping similar to what the Municipality has already.
2. Obtain cadastral information of the affected area, suburb information, street names and street numbers, suburb information, servitudes, etc.
3. Create affected properties in GIS in order to start preparations for populating databases.
4. Obtain ownership information and add to GIS and Council financial system.
5. Prepare for the inclusion of these properties in the Municipal area in terms of property valuations and rates.
6. Determine the level and state of services in the affected area in order to eventually add these assets to Council's asset register, to determine areas that would require basic services, etc.
7. Assess what impact the change in municipal boundary would have on human and capital resources, i.e. does the Municipality require additional staff, equipment, vehicles, office space, satellite offices closer to the Ntambanana area, etc.
8. Assess legal aspects relating to the affected area, i.e. which legal agreements are in place with services providers in the Ntambanana area, term of contracts, etc.
9. Assess budget implications relating to the inclusion of the Ntambanana area.
10. Current and planned Human Settlements projects



In addition, the following high-level documents require updating:

- i. Amend the Integrated Development Plan and Spatial Development Framework to also refer to the new areas which are to be included in the uMhlathuze Municipal Area (the affected area);
- ii. Extend the uMhlathuze Road Framework Plan;
- iii. Extend the uMhlathuze Rail Framework Plan (if relevant);
- iv. Create land use mapping for the affected area in order to prepare for the extension of the uMhlathuze Land Use Scheme, which shall be submitted to Council for adoption after the inclusion of the affected area in 2016; and
- v. Update relevant IDP Sector Plans to include the affected area (Human Settlements Plan, Waste Management Plan, Water Services Plan, etc.).

Map 36: Consolidated SDF



## 12. IMPLEMENTATION OF THE SDF

The implementation of the uMhlathuze SDF, i.e. translating of the SDF vision into tangible initiatives and priorities is presented under the following headings in this chapter:

- A. The Land Use Framework that includes details of the municipal suite of plans and specific (incremental) land use scheme proposals. Extracts from some plans within the municipal suite of plans is also provided.
- B. The implementation of strategic and catalytic projects.
- C. Details of required interventions in investment, inclusive of the capital investment framework.
- D. An Implementation Plan

### 12.1 THE LAND USE FRAMEWORK

In terms of Section 24 (1) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act it is required that:

*“A municipality must, after public consultation, adopt and approve a single land use scheme for its entire area within five years from the commencement of the Act”.*

*Legislation further requires, in terms of Section (24) (2) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act requires that:*

*“A land use scheme adopted in terms of Section 24 (1) must:*

*“(a) include appropriate categories of land use zoning and regulations for the entire municipal area, including areas not previously subjected to a land use scheme”*

*“(c) include provisions that permits the incremental introduction of land use management and regulations in the areas under traditional leadership, rural areas, informal settlements, slums and areas not previously subjected to a land use scheme”*

Section 32 (1) of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act states that:

*“a municipality may pass bylaws aimed at enforcing its land use scheme”*

**In context of the above, the uMhlathuze Municipality has prepared, adopted and gazetted a consolidated single land use scheme for the new municipal area.**

#### 12.1.1 UMLATHUZE SUITE OF PLANS

In certain areas of the Municipality, land usage is more complex than in other area. As such, it is necessary to prepare a Land Use Framework (LUF) as a linkage “step to translate the SDF into more detailed broad land use areas”, to inform the detailed formulation of zones. The LUF identifies appropriate Zones and Statements of Intent that are established for specific areas. The LUF therefore translates the SDF into a more detailed set of broad land use areas that directs the future development of areas and provides the basis for the formulation of detailed zones for the scheme.

The SDF provides the spatial translation of the municipal vision and goals. The Municipality is in the process of preparing a “suite of plans” to bridge the gap between the SDF and the detailed land use scheme. The municipal suite of plans is indicated in the following diagram:

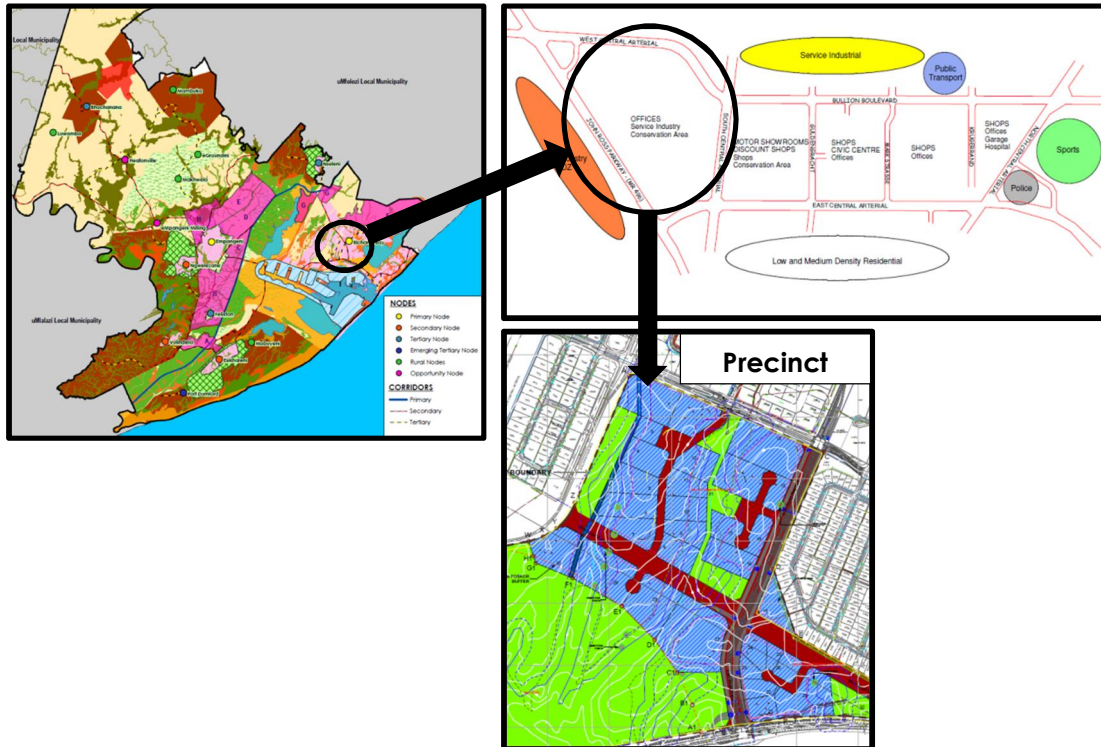
**Figure 21: uMhlathuze Suite of Plans**

UMHLATHUZE DEVELOPMENT BLUEPRINT					
RURAL PLANNING	1. Economic Transformation Roadmap 2. Integrated Development Plan 3. Spatial Development Framework				URBAN PLANNING
	LOCAL AREA PLANS				
	<u>Existing</u> 1. NUSP Plans completed (Mzingazi, Mandlazini, Ngwelezane, uMzingwenya, Nseleni) 2. Rural Planning Initiative	<u>Proposed</u> 1. uMzingwenya Slums Clearance 2. Traditional Council Plan	<u>Existing</u> 1. Empangeni CBD Revitalization Plan 2. Richards Bay CBD Framework Plan 3. Alkantstrand Urban Design	<u>Proposed</u> 1. Review of Richards Bay CBD Framework Plan Review (underway) 2. Esikhaleni Local Area Plan 3. Intermodal Transport Plans 4. Waterfront Master Plan (underway)	
	PRECINCT PLANS				
	<u>Existing</u> 1. Port Dunford Rural Development Framework Plan	<u>Proposed</u> 1. Isigodi Plans 2. Buchanana Rural Development Plan (underway) 3. Hluma Rural Development Framework Plan 4. Matshana Rural Development Framework Plan 5. Mabuyeni Rural Development Framework Plan	<u>Existing</u> 1. Kwadlangezwa Plan 2. Richards Bay CBD South Extension	<u>Proposed</u> 1. Ngwelezane CBD 2. Nseleni CBD 3. Esikhaleni Intersection and Corridor 4. Nseleni Interchange Precinct 5. Empangeni Milling Opportunity Node 6. Heatonville Opportunity Node 7. Anglers Rod Precinct Plan 8. Airport Relocation study (underway) 9. Alkantstrand Detailed Planning and Preliminary Engineering Designs 10. Richards Bay Civic Centre (underway) 11. Port Dunford Beach Precinct (underway) 12. John Ross Precinct Planning and Urban Design Concept (underway)	
	CONCEPT PLANS				
	<u>Existing</u> 1. Mzingazi Commercial Nodes 2. Mandlazini Commercial Node	<u>Proposed</u> 1. Port Dunford Beach Precinct Plan (underway)	<u>Existing</u> 1. The Ridge Urban Design 2. Steel Bridge Urban Design and Feasibility Study 3. Luwamba 4. Richards Bay SMME Park 5. Esikhaleni Business Support Centre	<u>Proposed</u> 1. Richards Bay ICC Urban Design 2. Empangeni Civic Centre 3. Richards Bay Civic Centre Precinct Plan (underway)	

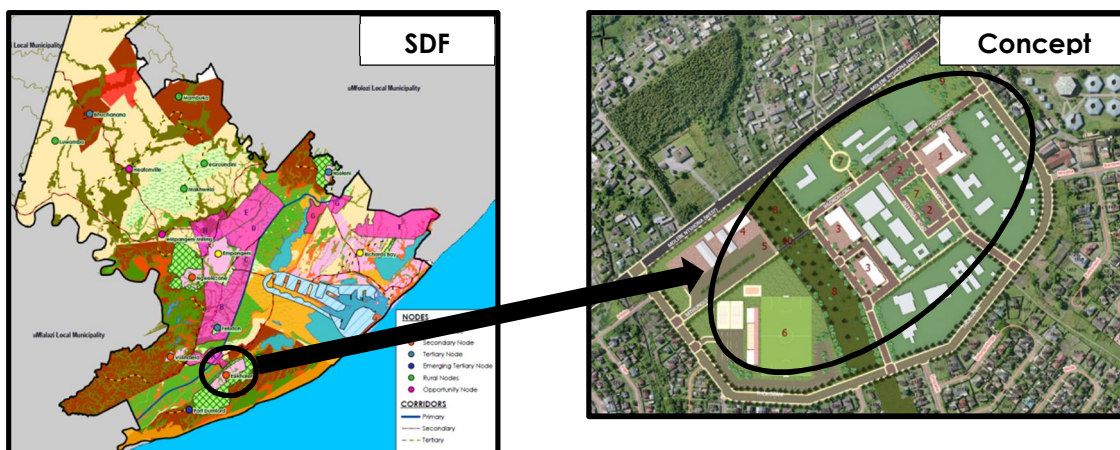


The following figures indicate the relationship between the SDF, LUF (linking elements) and the LUS (Land Use Scheme) in the case of the Precinct Planning that has been undertaken for the Richards Bay CBD South Extension.

**Figure 22: Linkage between SDF and LUF for Richards Bay CBD South Extension**



**Figure 23: Linkage between SDF and LUF for Esikhaleni Business Support Centre**



Concept and Precinct Plans are implementation tools that provide more detailed planning and land development guidelines that underpin spatial development principles but also guide the preparation of the Land Use Scheme.



## 12.1.2 INCREMENTAL APPROACH: DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR TOWNSHIPS

The uMhlathuze Municipality has four former R293 townships: Esikhaleni, Nseleni, Ngwelezane and Vulindlela, which house approximately a very large portion of the municipality's population, of which the majority is reside in and around Esikhaleni.

The following are trends discovered in the KZN Urban Development Framework applicable to township areas in uMhlathuze specifically:

- There are oscillating patterns of migration to and from rural areas, resulting in families being split.
- The townships are densifying due to the relatively better accessibility to services (compared to the rural and peri-urban areas).
- Densification occurs by means of illegal additional residences on formal residential properties.
- Densification, often as a result of illegal settlement within servitudes, puts pressure on basic infrastructure.

Typical, and necessary municipal interventions required to such township areas include the following:

- Activating the local economy i.e. Township economy.
- A wider variety of services and facilities in acceptable places (e.g. recreation) in line with Municipal LUS.
- Better integration of townships with primary nodes (Empangeni and Richards Bay).
- Identification of areas where other land uses such as offices, commerce, service industries should be allowed.
- Appropriate land use regulation i.e. development guidelines.
- Development of service centres in townships where there are none.

It is proposed that a form of incremental land use management is provided in the following land use zones to former township areas in the context of the above. Examples of how this incremental approach can be achieved are indicated in the attached tables. These will be expanded upon during the imminent review of the uMhlathuze Land Use Scheme.

**Medium Density Residential 1:** This zone is intended to promote the development of attached and detached dwelling units as part of a larger planned residential development. It creates opportunity for medium density residential development around central urban areas, along development corridors and to achieve densification of urban land.

INTENSITY – ERF SIZE		MINIMUM STREET FRONTAGE (M)	BUILDING LINES, SIDE AND REAR SPACES			ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS / COMMENTS
Min	Max		BUILDING LINES	SIDE SPACES	REAR SPACES	
3000m <sup>2</sup>	N/A	21m	7,5m along the external street frontage	Side and rear space requirements do not apply to dwelling unit curtilages, except along the side and rear boundaries of the Medium Density Housing site, where the minimum side and rear space shall be 4,5.		Development management guidelines to be incorporated into Municipal LUS

**Medium Density Residential 2:** This zone is intended to promote the development of attached and detached dwelling units as part of a larger planned residential development. It creates opportunity for medium density residential development around urban areas, along development corridors and to achieve densification of urban land.

INTENSITY – ERF SIZE		MINIMUM STREET FRONTAGE (M)	BUILDING LINES, SIDE AND REAR SPACES			ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS / COMMENTS
Min	Max		BUILDING LINES	SIDE SPACES	REAR SPACES	
1600m <sup>2</sup>	N/A	21m	7,5m along the external street frontage	Side and rear space requirements do not apply to dwelling unit curtilages, except along the side and rear boundaries of the Medium Density Housing site, where the minimum side and rear space shall be 4,5.		Development management guidelines to be incorporated into Municipal LUS

### 12.1.3 DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR RAPID URBANISATION MANAGEMENT ZONES

**Rapid Urbanisation Management Zone:** Is a zone in the Traditional Authority Area that demarcates areas that have been informally settled adjacent to or near to formal urban areas (Peri-Urban Areas), and require interventions to address environmental impacts, upgrade of services and provide formal housing.

INTENSITY: ERF SIZE		MINIMUM STREET FRONTAGE (M)	BUILDING LINES, SIDE AND REAR SPACES			ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS & PROHIBITIONS
Min	Max		BUILDING LINES	SIDE SPACES	REAR SPACES	
150 m <sup>2</sup>	N/A	N/A	3m	2m	2m	Preparation and incremental implementation of settlements frameworks i.e. NUSP  Development management guidelines to be incorporated into Municipal LUS.  Development in the open spaces and areas not suitable for/or not earmarked for residential development

**Special Residential:** This zone promotes the development of primarily detached dwelling units, but does permit multi-family dwellings; and where a limited number of compatible ancillary uses, which have a non-disruptive impact on a neighbourhood amenity, may be allowed.

INTENSITY – ERF SIZE		MINIMUM STREET FRONTAGE (M)	BUILDING LINES, SIDE AND REAR SPACES			ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	PROHIBITIONS
Min	Max		BUILDING LINES	SIDE SPACES	REAR SPACES		
200m <sup>2</sup>	400m <sup>2</sup>	N/A	3m	2m	2m	Preparation and incremental implementation of settlements frameworks i.e. NUSP  Development management guidelines to be incorporated into Municipal LUS	Development in the open spaces and areas not suitable for/or not earmarked for residential development

#### 12.1.4 DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR AGRI-VILLAGES

The term agri-village was first introduced to farmers in Natal in 1992, where the Natal Agricultural Union defined it as a “plot of land laid out in the form of a rural village on a separate sub-division of land”. In 2006, Del Grande was able to provide some further clarification when she stated that agri-villages are to be “established and managed as legal entities. The following land use zone has been identified to have relevance in agri-villages.

**Special Residential:** This zone promotes the development of primarily detached dwelling units, but does permit multi-family dwellings; and where a limited number of compatible ancillary uses, which have a non-disruptive impact on a neighbourhood amenity, may be allowed.

INTENSITY: ERF SIZE		MINIMUM STREET FRONTAGE (M)	BUILDING LINES, SIDE AND REAR SPACES			ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	PROHIBITIONS
Min	Max		BUILDING LINES	SIDE SPACES	REAR SPACES		
1000m <sup>2</sup>	4000m <sup>2</sup>	15m	3m	2m	2m	Preparation and incremental implementation of settlements frameworks i.e. NUSP  Development management guidelines to be incorporated into Municipal LUS	Development in the open spaces and areas not suitable for/or not earmarked for residential development

## 12.1.5 DEVELOPMENT GUIDELINES FOR RURAL AREAS

**Rural Node:** A node within a rural area identified in the Municipal Spatial Development Framework as a node that may include land uses which would support the community in their day-to-day needs such as commercial, educational, health facilities, petrol filling station, etc.

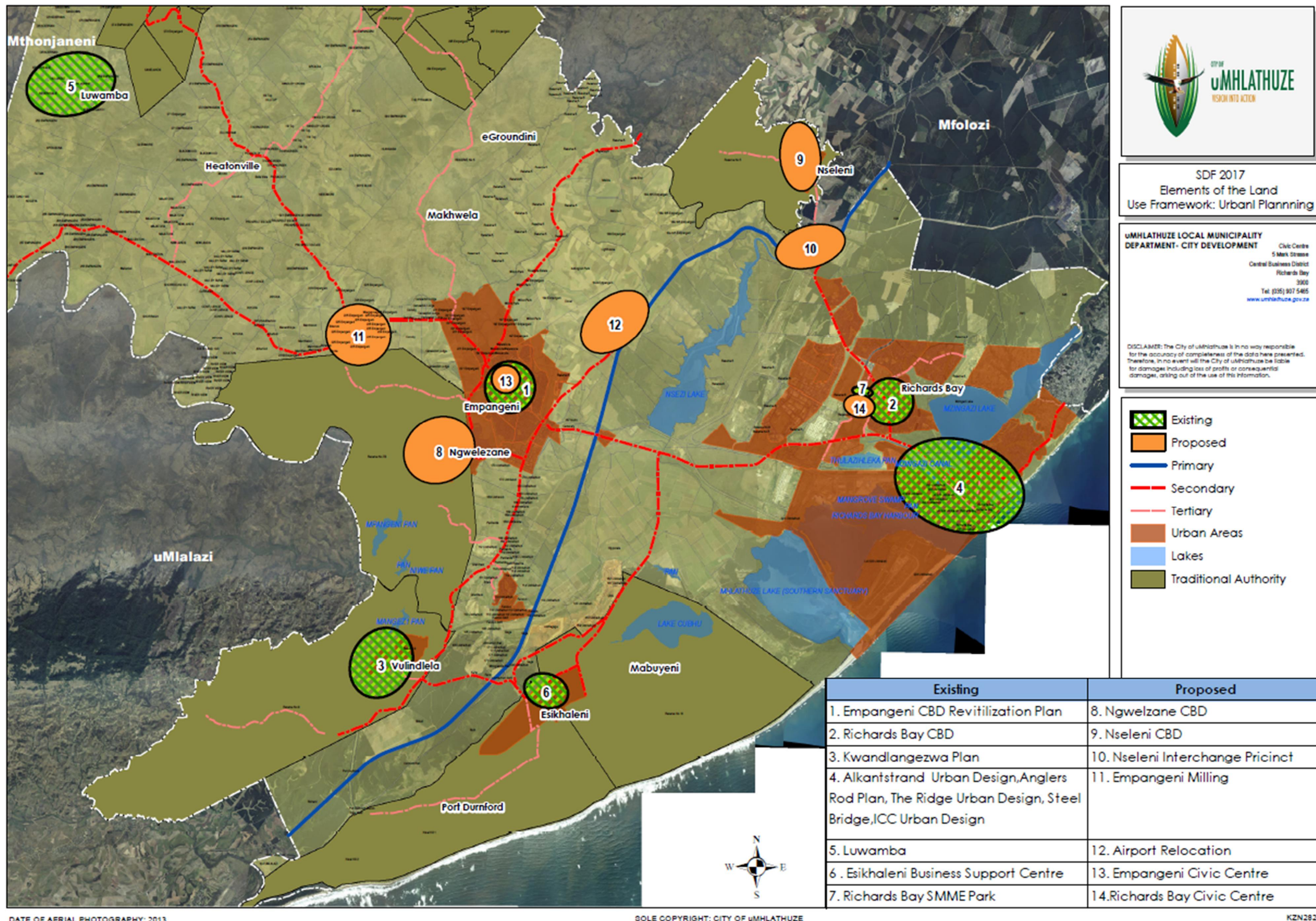
More specifically, free entry uses in this zone includes:

- Agricultural Building
- Agricultural Land
- Arts and Crafts Workshop
- Commercial Workshop
- Community Garden
- Educational Building
- Heritage Purposes
- Home Activity
- Homestead
- Industry – Service
- Informal Trade Area
- Institution
- Municipal Purposes
- Place of Worship
- Public Office
- Public Recreational Use
- Public Street
- Office – General
- Recreational Building
- Shop – General

INTENSITY: ERF SIZE		MINIMUM STREET FRONTAGE (M)	BUILDING LINES, SIDE AND REAR SPACES			ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS	PROHIBITIONS
Min	Max		BUILDING LINES	SIDE SPACES	REAR SPACES		
150m <sup>2</sup>	N/A	N/A	3m	2m	2m	Preparation and incremental implementation of settlements frameworks i.e. NUSP  Preparation of Rural Framework Plans  Development management guidelines to be incorporated into Municipal LUS	Development in the open spaces and areas not suitable for/or not earmarked for residential development

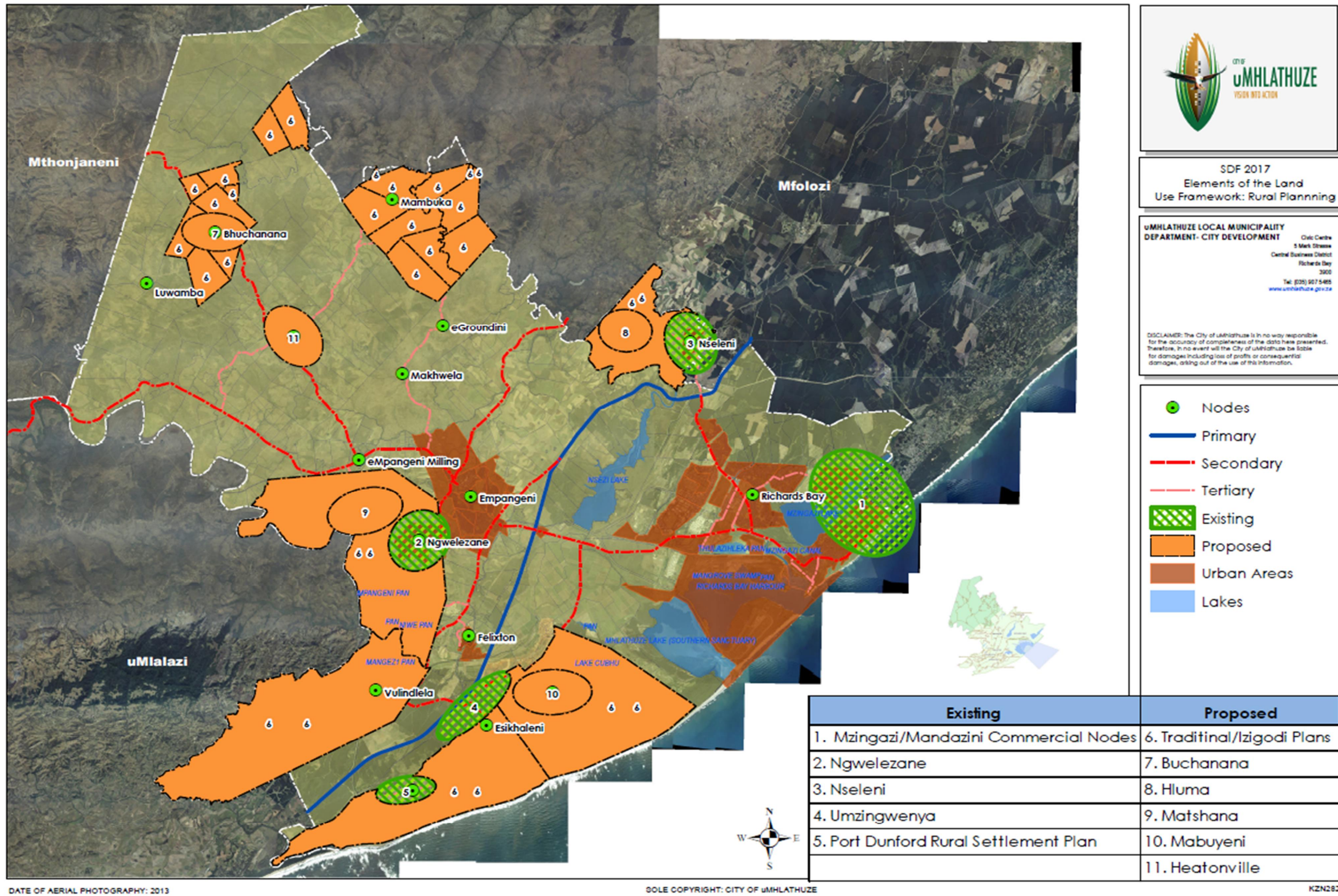


Map 37: Element of the Land Use Framework - Urban





Map 38: Elements of the Land Use Framework – Rural





## 12.2 STRATEGIC AND CATALYTIC PROJECTS

A catalytic/strategic project promotes cross-cutting sustainability outcomes that mirror goals and targets to promote the overall sustainability of an area. The uMhlathuze Municipality is pursuing a number of catalytic projects/interventions are present as summarized hereunder.

**Table 53 : Strategic and Catalytic Projects**

PROJECT NAME	STATUS
1. Airport Relocation	The strategic positioning of uMhlathuze has necessitated long term plans to relocate/ upgrade the current airport. A pre-feasibility study for the relocation of the Richards Bay Airport has been finalised. The study investigated the various criteria for relocation including tenure, economic imperatives, spatial and land use considerations, environmental risks etc. Next phase in the process is full scale feasibility. PPP model being investigated.
2. Richards Bay ICC	<p>Council's vision is to prepare urban design concept with development guidelines for the proposed Richards Bay International Convention Centre with ancillary land uses such as Hotel, residential, professional offices, retail and that will complement the envisaged development of waterfront development.</p> <p>City is not looking for a traditional International Convention Centre, but mixed use centre with conference facilities, retail, leisure and business offices etc. as mentioned above.</p>
3. Steel Bridge	<p>The concept design phase for the Richards Bay Waterfront Steel bridge recommended future phases for implementation. The feasibility study has been finalised and essentially included:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Determine required statutory approvals (if any), including environmental and water use related and identify long lead items.</li> <li>○ Undertaking a topographical survey and other specialist studies required to inform the processes identified.</li> <li>○ Preparing preliminary designs to initiated the next phase of detail designs, execution, procurement and construction</li> </ul>
4. The Ridge	The proposed Ridge development is to accommodate a Hotel, High Density Residential units and ancillary land uses. The design reflects a "sense of place", "human scale" and possesses a distinct theme that will take cognisance of the location of the area. Tender for the Ridge development has been awarded.

5. Waterfront Development	<p>The Municipality intends to develop the Waterfront Area that will deliver the following: A place for maritime industries, education and businesses, local and international port activities;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o A Public Waterfront: A place for local people and visitors;</li> <li>o A connected Waterfront: A place where people are highly connected locally and within the region, a place that is highly accessible and safe for pedestrians, cyclists, and passengers.</li> </ul> <p>Alkantstrand: Detail designs tender process nearing completion. Central Waterfront and other Precincts: Master Plan tender process has been finalised. TVET have presented conceptual designs for Maritime Academy and are in the process of undertaking environmental approvals.</p>
6. Richards Bay SMME Park	SMME Park will cater for hairdressers, mechanics; car wash and SMME offices and has been constructed.
7. Nseleni Neighbourhood Shopping Centre	Bulk Contributions paid. Transfer Completed. CLO appointed. Fencing completed. Demolition finalized end Nov 2017. Construction has commenced and stormwater approvals attended to.
8. Empangeni CBD Revitalisation Plan	The Empangeni CBD Revitalisation Plan outlines the current status of the town. The project phases was finalised in July 2013. The plan outlined 25 key projects/interventions to be implemented by the municipality and external stakeholders. The Empangeni revitalisation plan is to be implemented in a quadrant approach and the Lot 63 refurbishment was considered a catalyst for the implementation of the plan and has been completed. The upgrading of Empangeni A Rank is the next stage.
9. Desalination Plant	Plant completed. Operational capacity of 10MI/day.
10. Feasibility Study into wastewater and associated by-products re-use	Appointed a Transaction Advisor, to conduct a Feasibility Study for wastewater and associated by-products re-use for the City of uMhlathuze.
11. Green Hill	Greenhill is situated on a Portion of the Remainder of Erf 5333, Greenhill, and is 22 758 m <sup>2</sup> in extent. An EOI for the development of a mixed use development with a health care centre as an anchor awarded.
12. 132 kV	Replacement of two oil filled cables between CAPELLA and HYDRA substations feeding RBCT in progress.
13. CITP	Service Provider appointed to prepare Comprehensive Integrated Transport Plan (CITP) for whole municipal area.
14. Empangeni Mega Housing	Housing project of 10 000 units of an IRDP (Integrated Residential Development Programme) type. Installation of services has commenced.

The following tables relate the above listed strategic and catalytic projects to the following spatial transformation elements as alluded to throughout this report:

- Employment
- Sustainability
- Township Economy
- Promotion of Economy (Tourism, LED and Agriculture)
- Social Investment
- Mobility
- Significant Capital Infrastructure Investment

**Table 54: Relevance of Spatial Transformation Elements to Catalytic Projects**

PROJECT NAME	Employment	Sustainability	Township Economy	Promotion of Economy (Tourism, LED, Agriculture)	Social Investment	Mobility	Significant Capital Infrastructure investment
1. Airport Relocation							
2. Richards Bay ICC							
3. Steel Bridge							
4. The Ridge							
5. Waterfront Development							
6. Richards Bay SMME Park (also Esikhaleni Business Park)							
7. Nseleni Neighbourhood Shopping Centre							
8. Empangeni CBD Revitalisation Plan							



PROJECT NAME	Employment	Sustainability	Township Economy	Promotion of Economy (Tourism, LED, Agriculture)	Social Investment	Mobility	Significant Capital Infrastructure investment
9.Desalination Plant							
10. Feasibility Study into wastewater re-use							
11. Green Hill							
12. 132 kV							
13. CIP							
14. Empangeni Mega Housing							



Map 39: Location of Catalytic and Strategic Projects

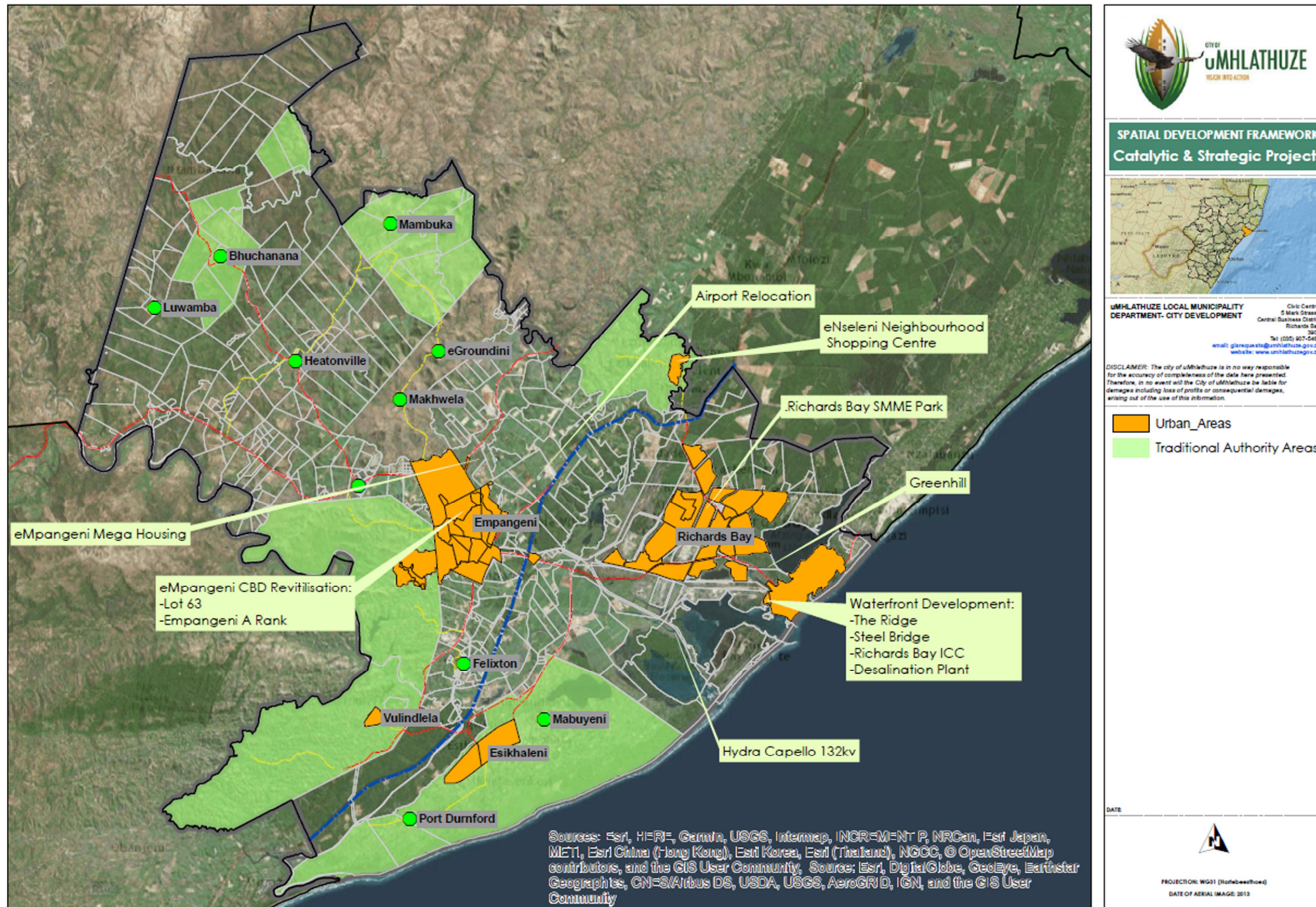
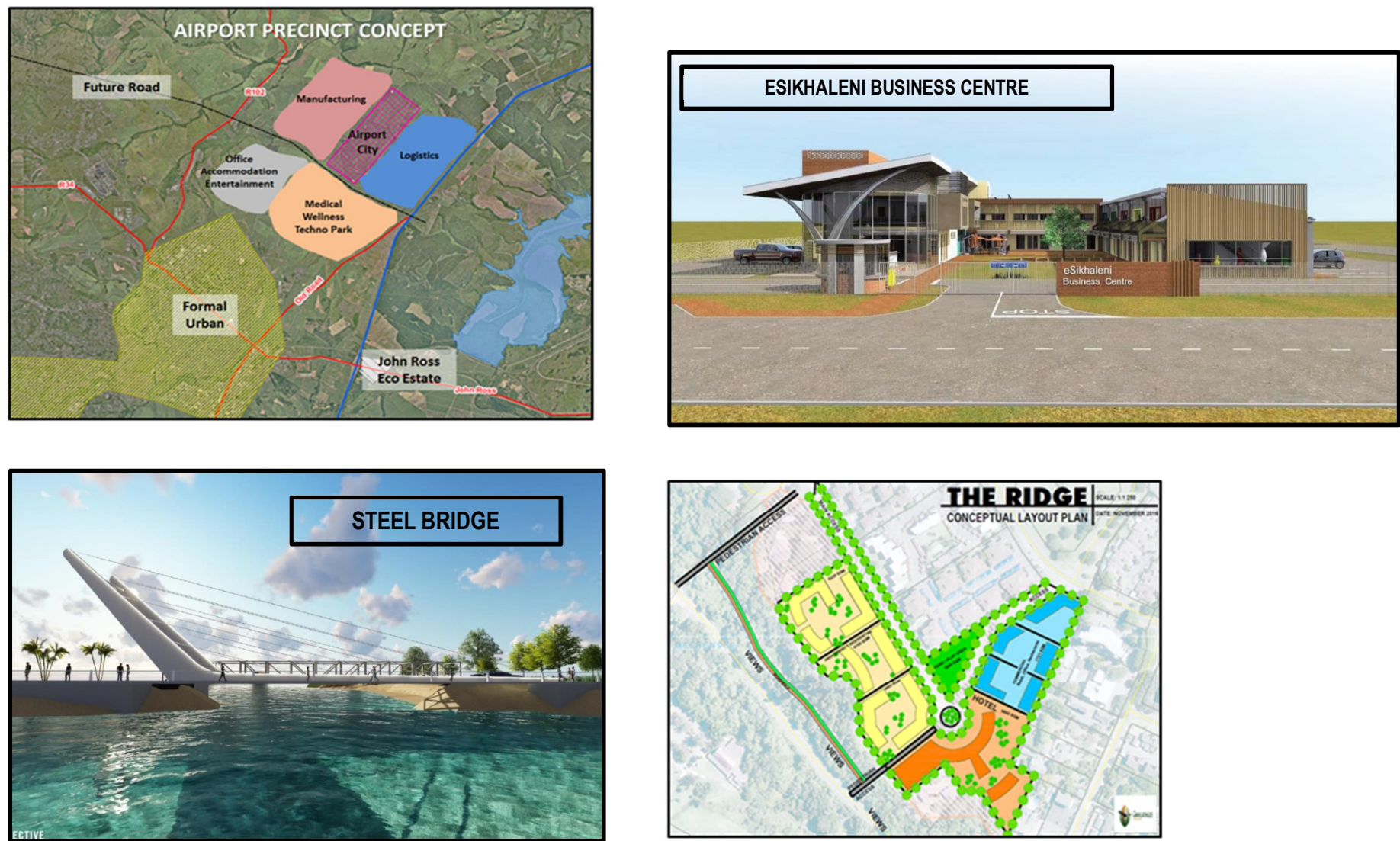


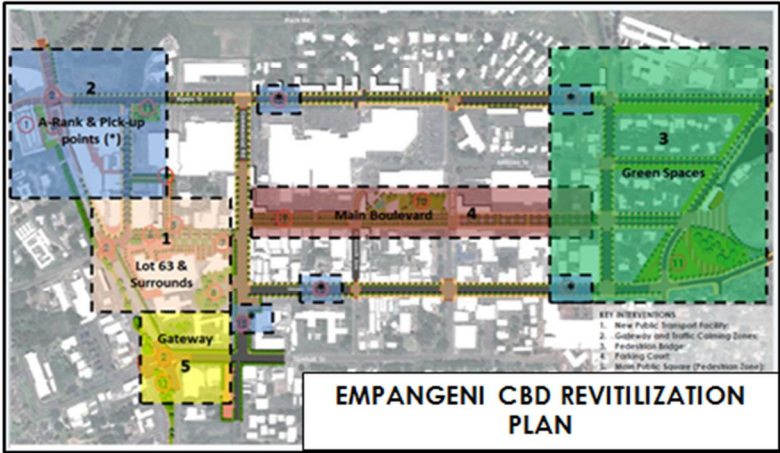


Figure 24: Selected Catalytic and Strategic Projects





Selected Catalytic and Strategic Projects (cont.)



### 12.3 CAPITAL EXPENDITURE

As part of the review of the Municipal SDF and the compilation of the Capital Expenditure Framework (and three year Capital Programme), Strategic Focus Areas have been identified. These Strategic Focus Areas have been derived considering, amongst others, the expansion areas, rural areas, the nodal/settlement hierarchy as discussed etc. As such, the Strategic Focus Areas for capital investment are:

- Expansion Areas/Greenfield Areas
- Former TLCs (include Agri-Villages)
- Former R293 Towns
- Traditional Authority Areas (Rural Areas)
- (City Wide)

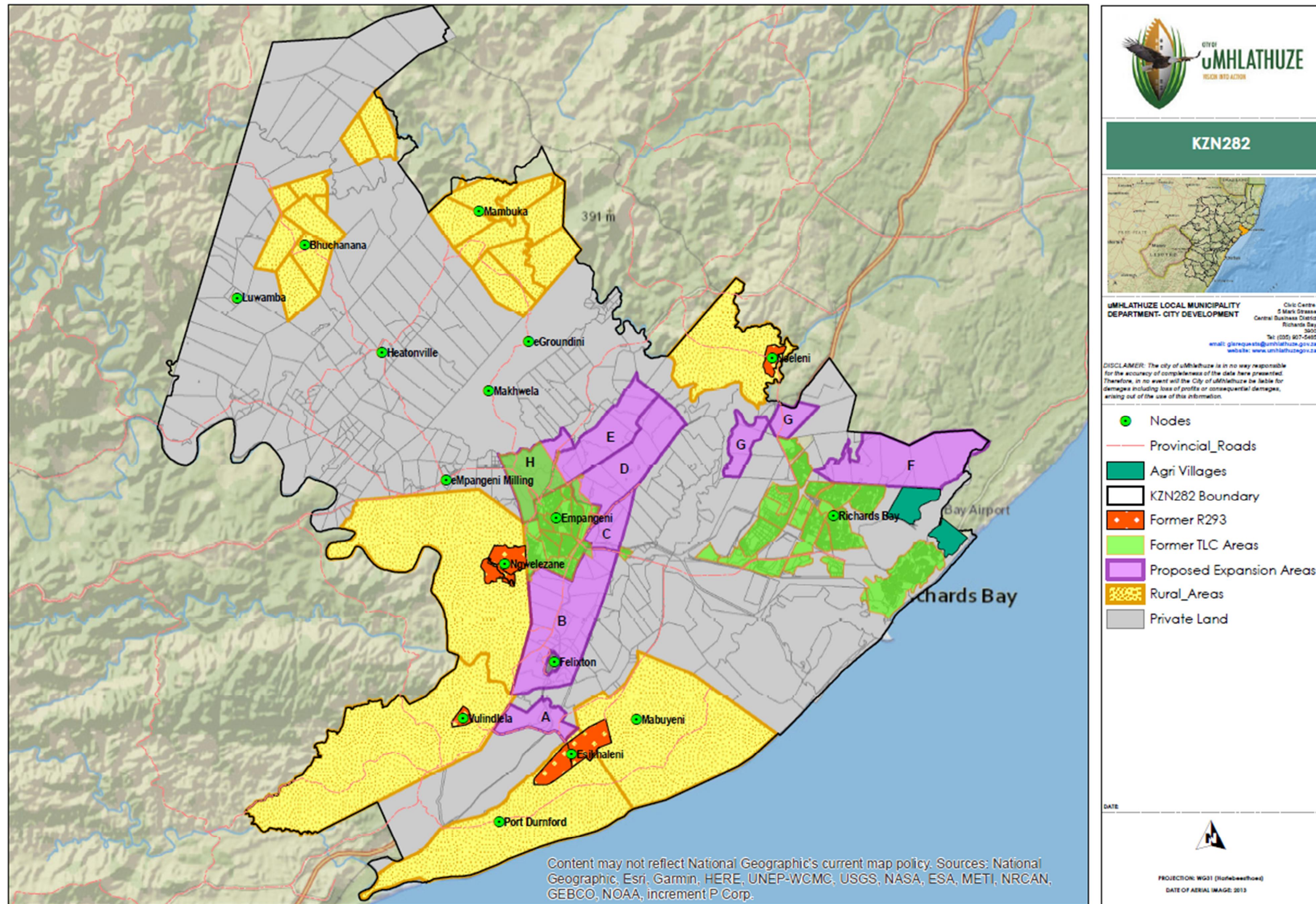
Note: For the purpose of reporting certain capital expenditure cannot be pinned down to a single focus area but is considered City Wide. Examples include arterial road upgrades, beachfront upgrades, beautification of the town, fleet etc.

The above identified Strategic Focus Areas have been analyzed and a summary table of the respective inherent characteristics provided. It is also important to consider that the listed strategic focus areas display different characteristics and therefore the extent and type of investment required in the areas is also different.

The map at overleaf illustrates the spatial distribution of the Strategic Focus Areas.



Map 40: Strategic Focus Areas





Herewith summary tables of the inherent characteristics of the Strategic Focus Areas are provided:

**Table 55: Strategic Focus Area: Expansion Areas**

<b>Strategic Focus Area</b>	<b>Expansion Areas</b> (essentially Greenfields Areas and includes two Human Settlement Restructuring Zones, i.e. Aquadene IRDP and Empangeni IRDPs – Integrated Residential Development Projects).
<b>Total Area</b>	11 347 Ha
<b>Ward Affected (Totally/Partially)</b>	26,19,34,5,24,23
<b>Population of Affected Wards</b>	68 143
<b>Development Approach/Outline Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Human Settlements Restructuring zones have been established as an instrument to pursue the restructuring of South African cities, economically, racially and socially. Three restructuring zones are being developed within SDF Expansion Areas.</li> <li>ii. Need to expand infrastructure in order to improve access to basic service and promote future local economic development in these areas.</li> <li>iii. Protect and enhance environmental assets and natural resources to ensure environmental sustainability. As such, green economy and green building initiatives are being pursued.</li> <li>iv. Optimize and maximize land distribution and development through the promotion of environmental friendly and sustainable development and encourage equal access land distribution.</li> <li>v. Define a clear urban edge and development guidelines for an incremental approach for certain areas.</li> <li>vi. Investment in bulk infrastructure improvement and development in both rural and urban areas to create conducive environment to attract investors to establish businesses/industries that would create economic development and opportunities.</li> </ul>

**Table 56: Strategic Focus Areas: Former TLC Areas**

<b>Strategic Focus Area</b>	<b>Former TLC areas</b> , i.e. Empangeni and Richards Bay.
<b>Total Area</b>	6 846 Ha
<b>Ward Affected (Totally/Partially)</b>	1,2,34,26,12,24,23,9
<b>Population of Affected Wards</b>	99 566
<b>Development Approach/Outline Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Viable economic growth and development by stimulating key sectors that promote economic growth and create jobs</li> <li>ii. Maintain infrastructure in order to improve access to basic service and promote local economic development</li> <li>iii. Green economy and green building initiatives</li> <li>iv. Encourage equal access land distribution</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>v. Development of Municipal public transport facilities and operations.</li> <li>vi. In line with the Municipal Economic Development Roadmap discourage new investment that will create exclusive enclaves for the rich. Work to promote equal access to economic development opportunities, port development etc.</li> <li>vii. Emphasize investment in bulk infrastructure improvement and development to create a conducive environment to attract investors to establish businesses/industries that would create economic development and opportunities.</li> <li>viii. Create and locate business opportunities in close proximity to major public transport routes.</li> <li>ix. Recognize street vendors as economic resource along major transport route while, importantly, promoting safety.</li> <li>x. Discourage spatial fragmentation and promote spatial integration (urban/rural/former R293 townships) to create inclusive, safety, resilient and integrated human settlement.</li> <li>xi. Development of Densification Guideline/Policy</li> </ul>
--	--

**Table 57: Strategic Focus Area: Former R293 Towns**

<b>Strategic Focus Area</b>	<b>Former R293 Towns, i.e. Esikhaleni, Vulindlela, Nseleni and Ngwelezane.</b>
<b>Total Area</b>	1 457 Ha
<b>Ward Affected (Totally/Partially)</b>	6,7,8,27,28,24,34,20,19,16,17,21
<b>Population of Affected Wards</b>	104 005
<b>Development Approach/ Outline Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. To expand and maintain infrastructure in order to improve access to basic service and promote local economic development</li> <li>ii. Green economy and green building initiatives</li> <li>iii. Development of Municipal public transport strategy and associated interventions</li> <li>iv. Investment in bulk infrastructure improvement and development create conducive environment to attract investors to establish businesses/industries that would create economic development and opportunities.</li> <li>v. Create and locate business opportunities in close proximity to major public transport routes.</li> <li>vi. Recognise street vendors as economic resource along major transport route while promoting safety.</li> <li>vii. Discourage spatial fragmentation and promote spatial integration (urban/rural/former R293 Towns) to create inclusive, safety, resilient and sustainable human settlement.</li> <li>viii. Development of Precinct Plans to provide development vision for the areas and provide possible solutions to the development, densification, land use management and economic challenges.</li> <li>ix. Interventions aimed at fostering the Township Economy and supporting the second economy.</li> </ul>

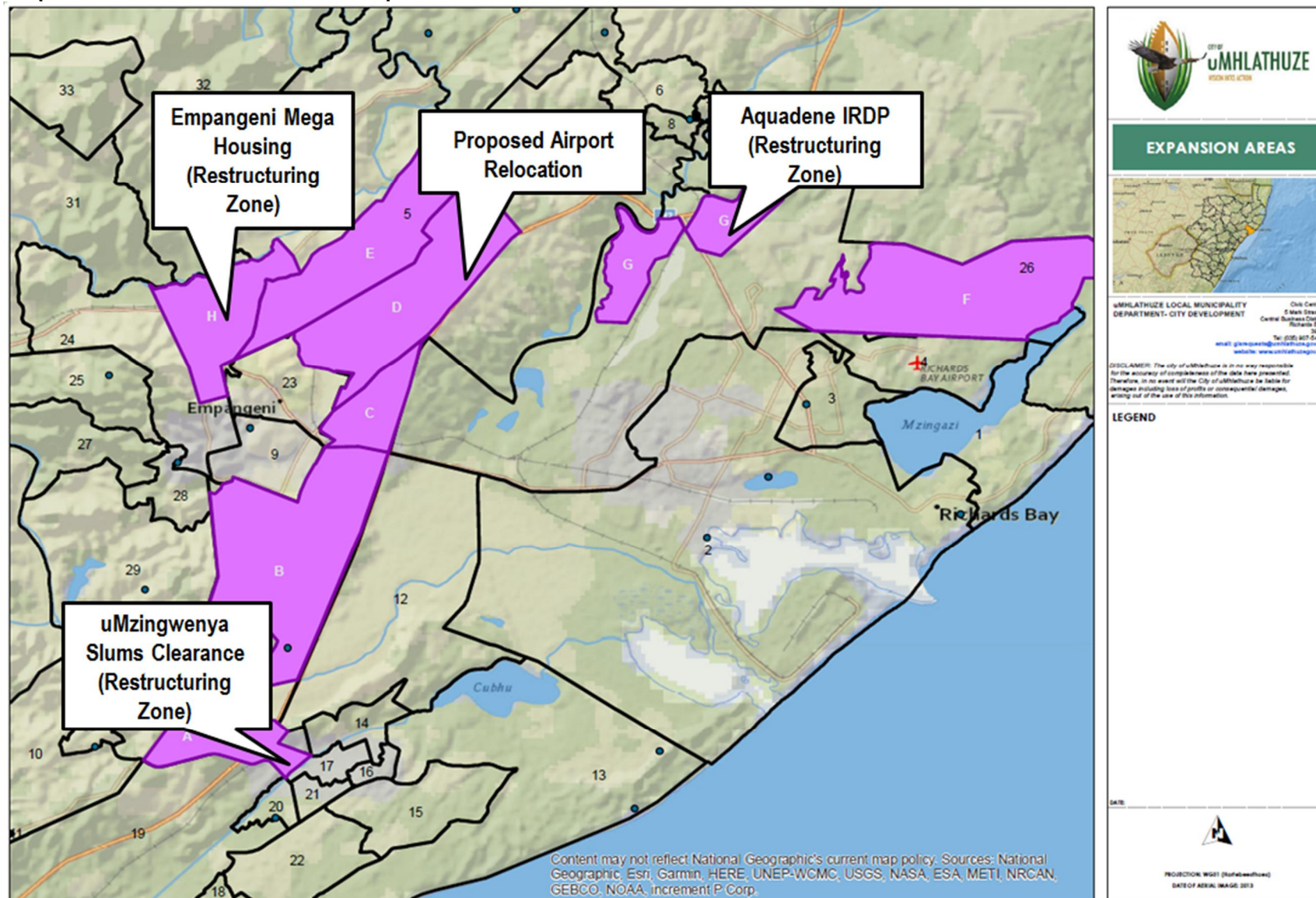
**Table 58: Strategic Focus Area: Rural Areas**

<b>Strategic Focus Area</b>	<b>Rural Areas</b> , mainly the Traditional Authority Areas of the Municipality
<b>Total Area</b>	35 842 Ha
<b>Ward Affected (Totally/Partially)</b>	7,8,10,11,12,14,15,18,19,22,24,25,27,28,29,30,31,32,33, 34
<b>Population of Affected Wards</b>	167 240
<b>Development Approach/ Outline Strategy</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i. Development of Rural Development Framework Plans which will provide guidelines for translation of Spatial Development Intentions into Land Use, Transport, Environmental, Infrastructure developments</li> <li>ii. Tourism investment enhancement</li> <li>iii. Promotion of agriculture and food security</li> <li>iv. An opportunity exists to improve the living conditions of these residents by formalizing, in some appropriate way, densely populated areas and improving the standard of service provision.</li> </ul>

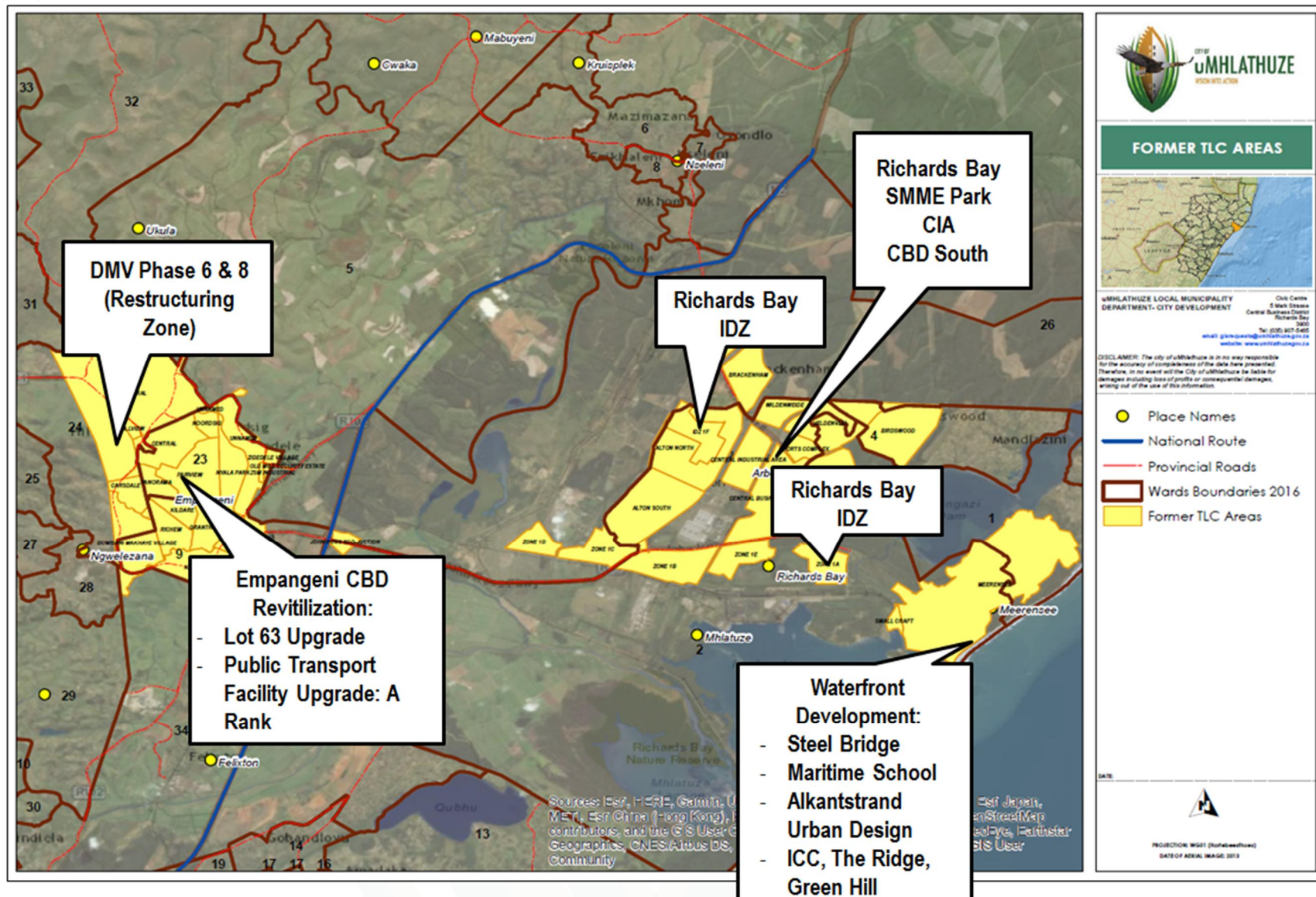
Mapping of the respective Strategic Focus Areas indicating selected projects/initiatives that give effect to Spatial Transformation is provided at overleaf:



**Map 41: Selected Interventions at Expansion Areas**

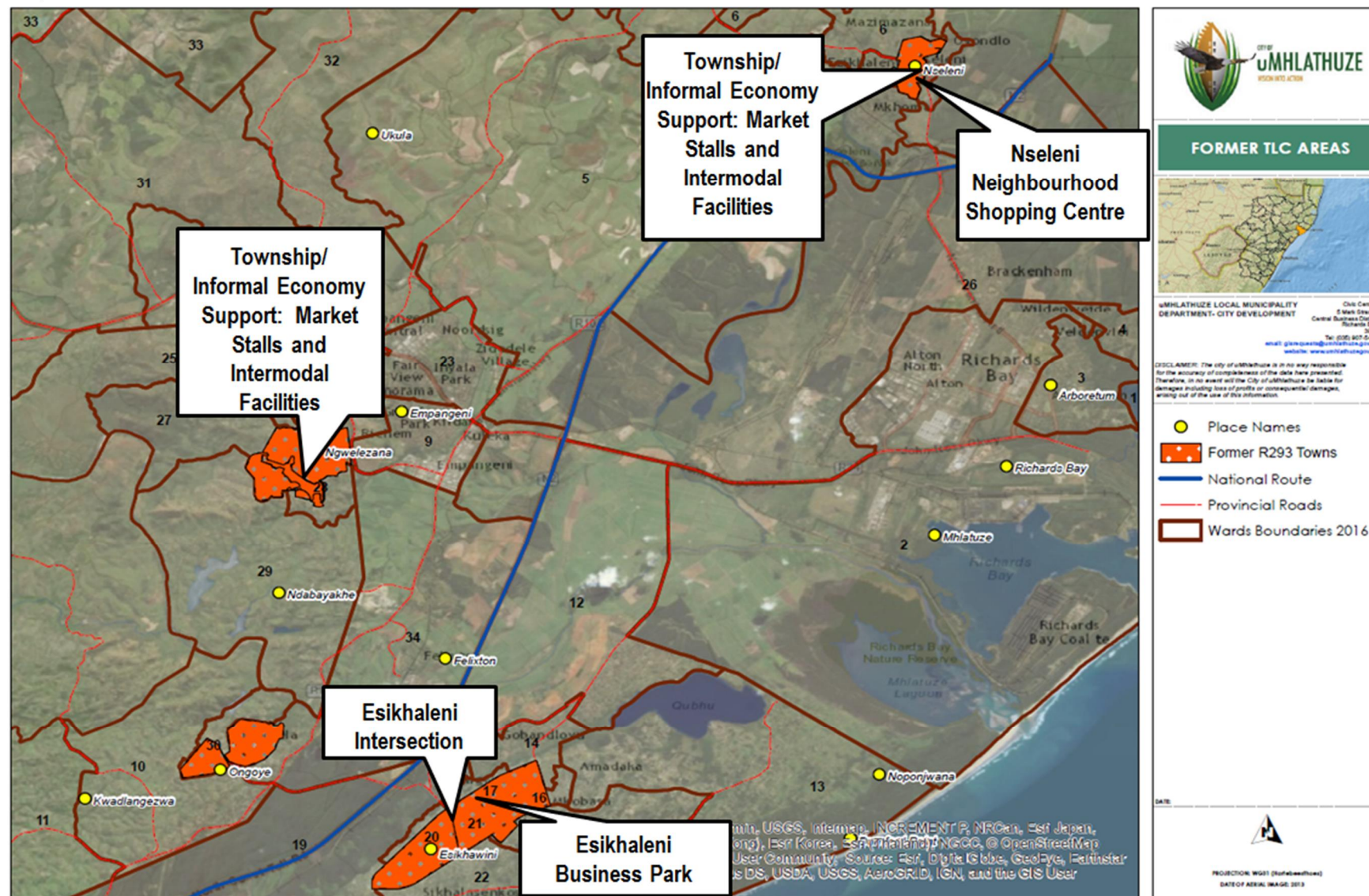


Map 42: Selected Interventions at Former TLC Areas



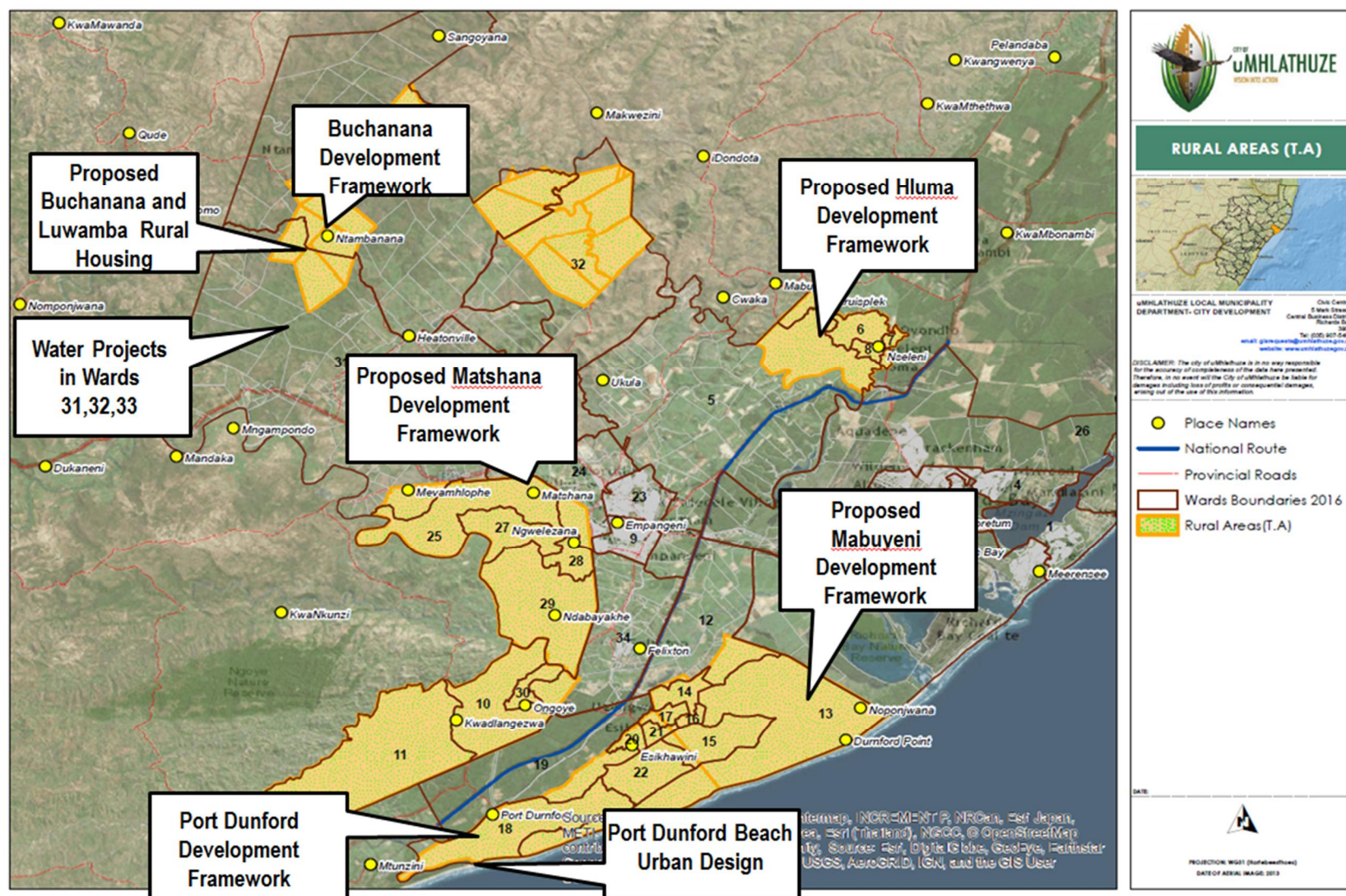


**Map 43: Selected Interventions at Former R293 Towns**





**Map 44: Selected Interventions at Rural Areas**





The following table provides a summarised breakdown of the capital investment proposed over the MTREF per sector per strategic focus area and in relation to expenditure on the poor.

**Table 59: Summary of Expenditure on the Poor**

		2018/2019	2019/202	2020/2021		Expenditure on the Poor		
					% Poor	2018/2019	2019/202	2020/2021
Water/Sanitation	Approved CAPEX	525 160 800	531 998 700	550 711 500				
	Expansion Areas	0	0	0	61	0	0	0
	Former TLC	13 100 000	44 790 100	56 190 100	51	6 681 000	22 842 951	28 656 951
	Former R293	9 800 000	10 000 000	11 000 000	53	5 194 000	5 100 000	5 610 000
	Rural Areas	80 346 400	80 878 900	104 102 200	76	61 063 264	41 248 239	53 092 122
	City Wide	12 650 000	29 560 600	26 260 600	68	8 602 000	15 075 906	13 392 906
	Other	1 000 000	0	0				
	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>116 896 400</b>	<b>165 229 600</b>	<b>197 552 900</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>81 540 264</b>	<b>84 267 096</b>	<b>100 751 979</b>
Electricity	Expansion Areas	0	6 000 000	7 000 000	61	0	3 060 000	3 570 000
	Former TLC	53 389 000	21 323 300	14 549 800	51	27 228 390	10 874 883	7 420 398
	Former R293	1 500 000	0	0	53	795 000	0	0
	Rural Areas	12 000 000	15 000 000	15 000 000	76	9 120 000	7 650 000	7 650 000
	City Wide	17 900 000	49 400 000	55 414 000	68	12 172 000	25 194 000	28 261 140
	Other							
	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>84 789 000</b>	<b>91 723 300</b>	<b>91 963 800</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>49 315 390</b>	<b>46 778 883</b>	<b>46 901 538</b>
Roads	Expansion Areas	0	0	0	61	0	0	0
	Former TLC	47 214 200	18 160 500	19 205 300	51	24 079 242	9 261 855	9 794 703
	Former R293	9 240 000	0	26 000 000	53	4 897 200	0	13 260 000
	Rural Areas	12 000 000	9 700 000	12 200 000	76	9 120 000	4 947 000	6 222 000
	City Wide	62 800 000	78 300 000	68 800 000	68	42 704 000	39 933 000	35 088 000
	Other	1 800 000	1 000 000	0				
	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>133 054 200</b>	<b>107 160 500</b>	<b>126 205 300</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>80 800 442</b>	<b>54 141 855</b>	<b>64 364 703</b>
Social Infr.	Expansion Areas	0	0	0	61	0	0	0
	Former TLC	850 000	802 000	0	51	433 500	409 020	0
	Former R293	2 400 000	2 000 000	0	53	1 272 000	1 020 000	0
	Rural Areas	2 600 000	2 500 000	2 507 000	76	1 976 000	1 275 000	1 278 570
	City Wide	27 500 400	40 563 700	46 407 100	68	18 700 272	20 687 487	23 667 621
	Other	1 000 000	0	0				
	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>34 350 400</b>	<b>45 865 700</b>	<b>48 914 100</b>	<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>22 381 772</b>	<b>23 391 507</b>	<b>24 946 191</b>
<b>Sub-Total</b>								
<b>Balance to Other</b>		<b>156 070 800</b>	<b>122 019 600</b>	<b>86 075 400</b>				

The following comments have to be considered:

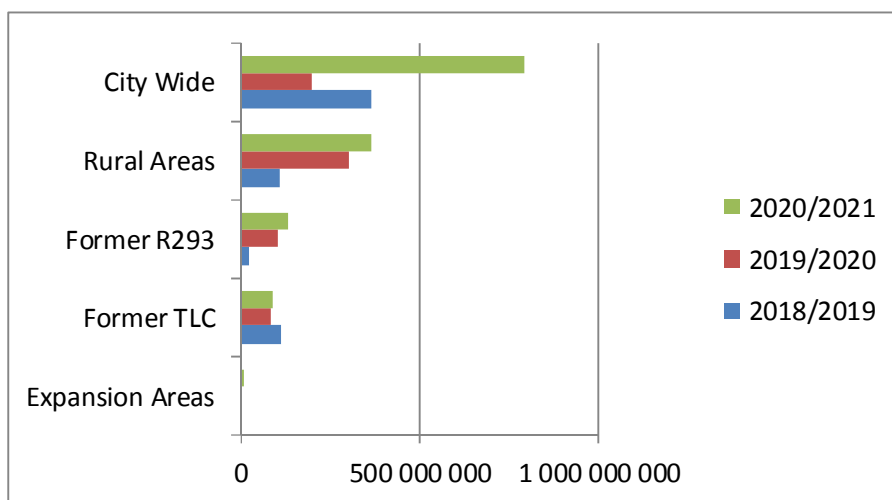
1. In the above table, total expenditure is provided per Spatial Focus Area per the four capital budget categories analyzed, i.e. Water/Sanitation, Electricity, Roads and Social Infrastructure.
2. Base data limitations have resulted in poor households being classified as households earning below R1500/month. The norm to be classified as poor is R3500/month per households but there are data limitations.
3. The percentage of households under the Category City Wide that earn below R1500/month is 68%. The respective percentage poor for the Spatial Focus Areas are:
  - o Expansion Areas/Greenfield Areas 61%
  - o Former TLCs (include Agri-Villages) 51%
  - o Former R293 Towns 53%

- Traditional Authority Areas (Rural Areas) 76%
- City Wide 68%

4. At the bottom of the table, reference is made to **"Balance to Other"**. This refers to the following capital expenditure items that have not been grouped into the four capital budget categories analysed:

- a. Municipal Buildings
- b. Economic Development
- c. Taxi Ranks
- d. Fleet
- e. Fleet Management
- f. Infrastructure Technology
- g. Revenue and Expenditure
- h. Marketing and Customer Relations
- i. Administration
- j. Process Control
- k. Project Management Unit
- l. Planning and Development (Billboards)

**Figure 25: Capital Budget per Strategic Focus Area over MTREF**

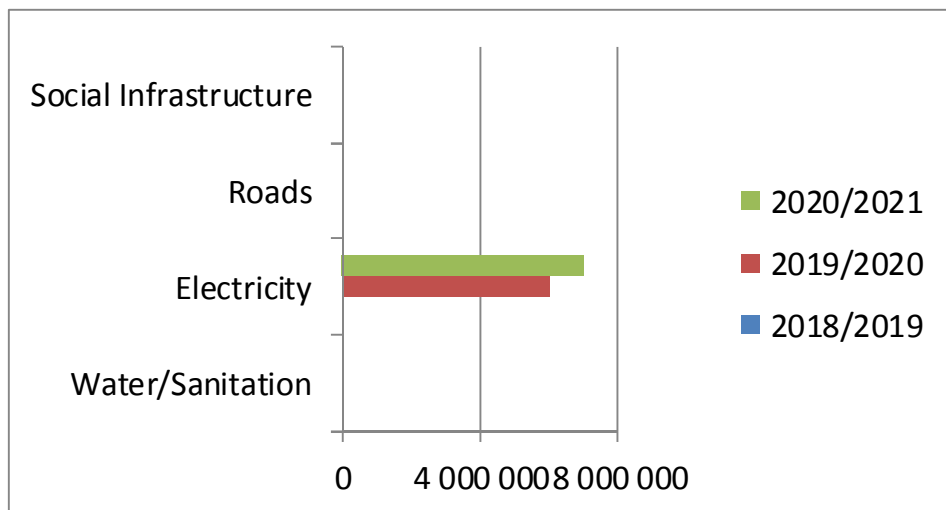


Note:

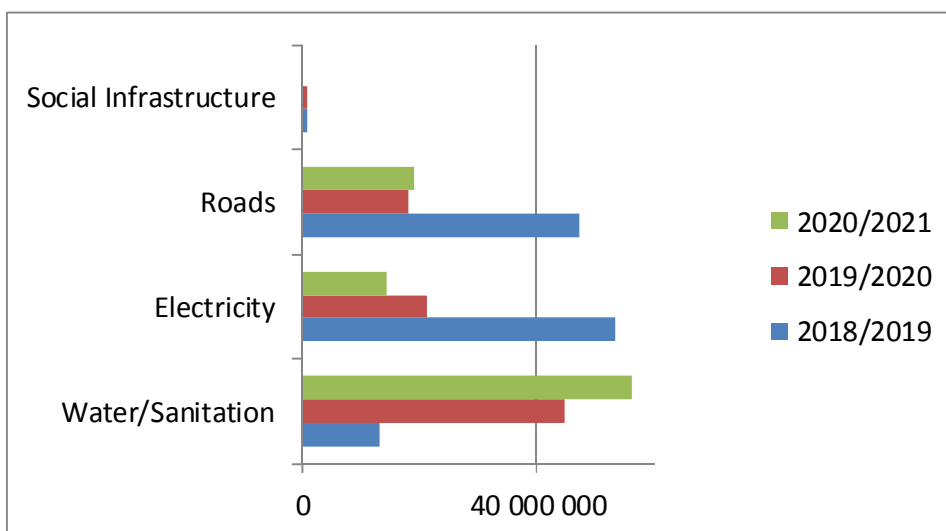
1. Over the last few years, investment in bulk infrastructure has been made to augment supply to the greenfield areas, i.e. specifically the human settlements projects.
2. A significant portion of budget for internal services and reticulation will be made available from Department of Human Settlements sources for the human settlement projects in the greenfield areas/expansion areas.
3. City-wide investment represents projects that are for the benefit of the whole municipality, i.e. Steel Bridge, certain fleet, buildings etc.

Herewith a graphic breakdown of the budget over the MTREF per Strategic Focus Area is provided.

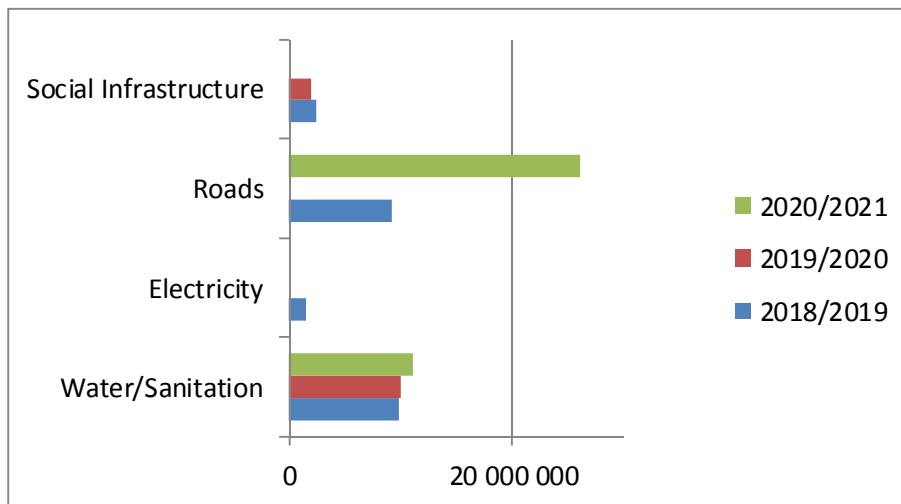
**Figure 26: MTREF Capital Budget in Greenfield/Expansion Areas**



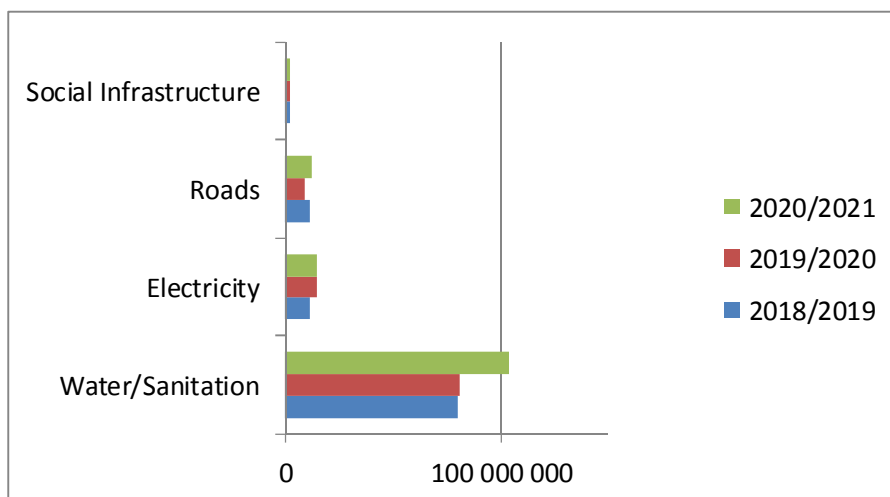
**Figure 27: MTREF Capital Budget in Former TLC Areas**



**Figure 28: MTREF Capital Budget in Former R293 Towns**

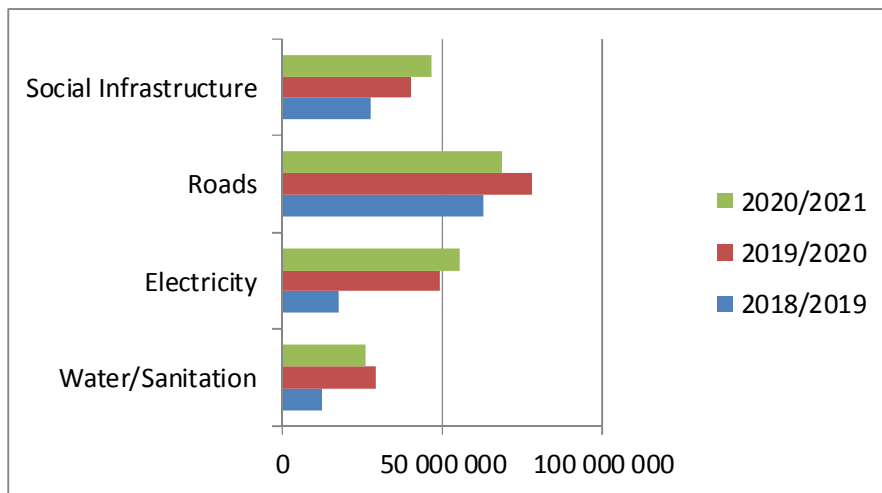


**Figure 29: MTREF Capital Budget in Rural Areas**





**Figure 30: City Wide MTREF**



## 12.4 CONSOLIDATED IMPLEMENTATION PLAN

Although the uMhlathuze SDF has a longer term vision, the following short to medium term actions are required based on information contained in the previous sections.

NO.	DESCRIPTION	YEAR 0	YEAR 1	YEAR 2	YEAR 4+	BUDGET REQUIRED	FUNDING SOURCE
<b>A. STRATEGIC PLANS/INITIATIVES</b>							
1	Extension of uMhlathuze Land Use Scheme to incorporate wards inherited from Ntambanana.	2017/2018	2018/2019	-	-	CoGTA support	CoGTA CoU
2	Identification of opportunities pertaining to areas of natural beauty and tourism to be investigated in more detail in order to provide more detailed planning guidelines.	-	-	2019/2020	-	R400 000	CoGTA CoU
3	Investigate future land requirements for provision of suite of municipal services (including recreational, municipal purposes, infrastructure etc.) to reserve land for such purposes.	-	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R200 000	CoU
4	Agreement with National Department of Agriculture in respect of SDF Review proposed Expansion Areas development roll-out.	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	Operational	N/A
5	Agreement with Department of Minerals in respect of SDF Review proposed Expansion Areas development roll-out.	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	Operational	N/A
6	Integrated ground, surface and stormwater (catchment) management plan.	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	R10 500 000	CoU (MoU with external)
7	Biodiversity Plan for whole municipal area	-	-	2019/2020	2020/2021	R1 000 000	CoU (external)
8	Update/Review ESMP for whole municipal area	-	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	R500 000	CoU (external)
9	Update/Review climate change strategy	-	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	R500 000	CoU (external)
10	Review densification and residential infill study and expand current project scope of work to include all urban areas of the Municipality.		-	-	2020/2021	Operational	N/A
11	Prepare/Update community facilities plan	-	-	2019/2020	2020/2021	R500 000 (Operational)	CoU
12	Update/Review Bulk Water Master Plan to incorporate all wards		2018/2019	-	-	To be determined	CoU
13	Update/Review Bulk Sewer Master Plan to incorporate all wards		2018/2019	-	-	To be determined	CoU
14	Update/Review Bulk Energy Master Plan to incorporate all wards		2018/2019	-	-	To be determined	CoU
15	Update/Review Arterial Framework Plan to also incorporate all wards	-	2018/2019	-	-	To be determined	CoU

16	Update of Rail Framework to also incorporate all wards	-	-	-	2020/2021	To be determined	CoU
17	Alternative and Renewable Energy Network Strategy/Plan		-	2019/2020	-	To be determined	CoU DoE
18	Investigate site options for long term Cemetery development in uMhlathuze		2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R500 000	CoU
19	Intermodal Transportation Plan	-	-	-	2020/2021	R800 000	CoU DoT
20	Update/Review Disaster Management Plan for whole municipal area		2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R1000 000	CoU
NO.	DESCRIPTION	YEAR 0	YEAR 1	YEAR 2	YEAR 3+	BUDGET REQUIRED	FUNDING SOURCE
B. CATALYTIC PROJECTS							
1	Detailed pre-feasibility / feasibility of relocating Richards Bay Airport and evaluation of site alternatives.	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R3 500 000	EDTEA CoU
2	Steel Bridge Pre-feasibility/feasibility and implementation	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R26 000 000	CoU
3	Implementation of Empangeni Mega Housing Project	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	To be determined	DHS CoU
4	Richards Bay Convention Centre Development (Tender in progress)	-	-	-	2020/2021	N/A	N/A
5	The Ridge Development (Tender in progress)	-	-	2019/2020	2020/2021	N/A	N/A
6	Green Hill Development (Tender in progress)	-	-	2019/2020	2020/2021	N/A	N/A
7	Richards Bay Waterfront Detailed Development Concept		2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R600 000	CoU CoGTA
8	Alkantstrand Detailed Precinct Plan		2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R2 000 000	CoU CoGTA
9	Nseleni Mall development and Precinct Plan	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	R300 000	CoU CoGTA
10	Richards Bay SMME Park Development	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R3 000 000	CoU
11	Esikhaleni Business Support Centre	-	2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R21 000 000	CoU
12	Implementation of Empangeni CBD Revitalization Plan	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	To be determined	CoU CoGTA
13	Feasibility Study into wastewater and associated by-products re-use	Project underway				To be determined	CoU DoT
14	CITP	Project underway				To be determined	CoU DoT

NO.	DESCRIPTION	YEAR 0	YEAR 1	YEAR 2	YEAR 3+	BUDGET REQUIRED	FUNDING SOURCE
<b>C. SPATIAL TRANSFORMATION PROJECTS</b>							
1	Richards Bay CBD Framework Plan Review		2018/2019	2019/2020	-	R500 000	CoGTA
2	Further detailed planning of intersection/opportunity nodes in terms of phasing and development guidelines. Includes: - Heatonville - Empangeni Milling	-	-	2019/2020	2020/2021	R300 000	CoU External
3	Preparation of Rural Settlement/Framework Plans for: - Port Durnford (complete) - Buchanana (underway) - Hluma - Matshana - Mabuyeni	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	R2 000 000	CoU DRDLR External
4	Traditional Council/Isigodi Plans		-	2019/2020	2020/2021	R2 000 000	CoU DRDLR External
5	Urban Regeneration projects for the commercial precincts: - Esikhaleni - Nseleni - Ngwelezane - Empangeni Rail	2017/2018	-	2018/2019	2020/2021	R1 200 000	CoU External
6	Implementation of NUSP project	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	Ongoing	DHS CoU
7	Implementation of Aquadene Housing Project	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	Ongoing	DHS CoU
8	Implementation of DMV (Phase 6 & 8) Housing Project	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	Ongoing	DHS CoU
9	Public Transport Planning and Implementation	2017/2018	2018/2019	2019/2020	2020/2021	Ongoing	CoU DoT



## 13. SERVICE PROVIDER PROJECTS

The following information has been obtained from service providers at the time of finalising the document:

### 13.1 DEPARTMENT OF WORKS

PROJECT DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION
Offices Erf 139 Transport	Empangeni
Offices Erf 37 Kuleka Mechanical	Empangeni
Ngwelezane Hospital maintenance and new infrastructure	Ngwelezane

### 13.2 SANRAL

PROJECT DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION	PROJECT BUDGET 2018/2019	PROJECT BUDGET 2019/2020	PROJECT BUDGET 2020/2021
Nseleni Service Road: New single carriageway	Nseleni	6 131 000	17 919 000	700 000
N2 Mtunzini Pedestrian Road Safety Improvements	N2 Mtunzini	9 000 000	4 000 000	
N2 Mtunzini Plaza to Empangeni T Junction	Upgrading from single to dual carriageway	379 800 000	89 054 395	

### 13.3 ESKOM

PROJECT DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION	YEAR
Port Durnford 20 MVA 88/11 kV Transformer	Port Durnford	2024

### 13.4 DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT

PROJECT DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION	PROJECT BUDGET 2018/2019
Ibhubesi: Between Iqhina & Inxala	Nseleni	596 200
Umkhumbe: Between Ingwenya & Inyaya	Nseleni	192 396
Inyala: Between Ingwenya & Ingwenya	Nseleni	145 780
Indlonzi: Between Inyala & Ingwenya	Nseleni	264 275
Umsenge2: Entire Road	Nseleni	1 326 313
Umviyo1: Entire Road	Nseleni	2 863 436
Uqhume: Entire Road	Nseleni	258 429

PROJECT DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION	PROJECT BUDGET 2018/2019
Brons: BETWEEN STEELWAY & COPPER	Empangeni	593 523
Ngwelezane: BETWEEN GRANTHAM & COPPER	Empangeni	4 143 937
Copper: BETWEEN DURNFORD & LOOD LAAN	Empangeni	936 434
Loodlaan: BETWEEN COPPER & STEELWAY	Empangeni	377 642
Steelway: BETWEEN NGWELEZANE & BRONZE	Empangeni	570 366
First: TANNER TO END	Empangeni	279 240
Knutzen: BETWEEN TANNER & MORRIS	Empangeni	2 566 647
Peggy: BETWEEN MALCOM & DINA	Empangeni	132 276
Maple: BETWEEN TANNER & PROTEA	Empangeni	
Borman: ML DRIVE TO END	Empangeni	75 446
Cedar: BETWEEN FLAMBOYANT & BOUGANVILLA	Empangeni	127 377
President Swart: Between Cassia & Durnford	Empangeni	198 302

President Swart: Between Farewell & Wildebeest	Empangeni	198 302
Baines: Higgs To End	Empangeni	506 770
Rex Henderson: Between Turnbull & Oxland	Empangeni	1 099 976
Main Road: Between Oxland & Fukwe St	Empangeni	4 432 306
Union: BETWEEN COMMERCIAL & SMITH	Empangeni	2 447 685
Maxwell: BETWEEN COMMERCIAL & HANCOCK	Empangeni	915 659
Addison: BETWEEN SMITH & MTHUBA	Empangeni	544 246
Biyela: BETWEEN MTHUBA & SMITH	Empangeni	714 224
Union: PASTEUR TO END	Empangeni	390 993

PROJECT DESCRIPTION	PROJECT LOCATION	PROJECT BUDGET 2018/2019
West Central Arterial: BETWEEN GULDENGRACHT & HILLSIDE	Richards Bay	6 673 215
Alton: BETWEEN CHALK LN AND CRYSTAL BOND	Richards Bay	
Alton: BETWEEN BRASS LINK & END OF BRONZE BAR	Richards Bay	2 334 369
Alton: BETWEEN BRASSLINK & END OF BETASTRAAL	Richards Bay	13 949 172
Harbour: BETWEEN JOHN ROSS & HARBOUR ARTERIAL	Richards Bay	4 128 352
Alton: BETWEEN SCA & BAUXITE BAY	Richards Bay	203 667
Dune Route: BETWEEN KOLSTETRING & SOETWATER	Richards Bay	4 796 101
Krewelkring: BETWEEN ANGLERS ROAD & GRUNTER GULLY	Richards Bay	318 556
Anglers Rod: BETWEEN KREWILGRING & GRUNTER GULLY	Richards Bay	227 605
Anglers Rod: BETWEEN KREWILGRING & GRUNTER GULLY	Richards Bay	252 548
Krewilkring: BETWEEN KARANTEEN & KARANTEEN	Richards Bay	264 564
Davidson: BETWEEN LAUDER KANE & JACKS CORNER	Richards Bay	246 769
Corral Copice: Arboretum	Richards Bay	139 164



## **14. EXTERNAL DEVELOPMENT INFLUENCES**

Significant development impacts in the Municipality are anticipated with ongoing investment by, amongst others, Transnet into the Port of Richards Bay as well as the Richards Bay IDZ (Industrial Development Zone), as non-municipal entities. Also, development frameworks are prepared by other government entities, i.e. the district municipality, neighboring local municipalities as well as provincial planning authorities.

A synopsis of some of the major developments in the municipal area is herewith provided. Further note that such developments with a significant development footprint are indicated on the SDF mapping.

### **14.1 RICHARDS BAY PORT EXPANSION**

The Port of Richards Bay is currently the largest and busiest port on the South African coastline and may be set to enter a long-term expansion phase that will see a three-fold increase in surface area and five-fold extension of existing quay length. The total container capacity being planned for the Port of Richards Bay in phases 1 to 11 amounts to approximately 24 million TEUs pa over a period of approximately fifty years. In addition to the development of container handling facilities in phases 1 to 11, extensive port development is anticipated inside the existing port boundary.

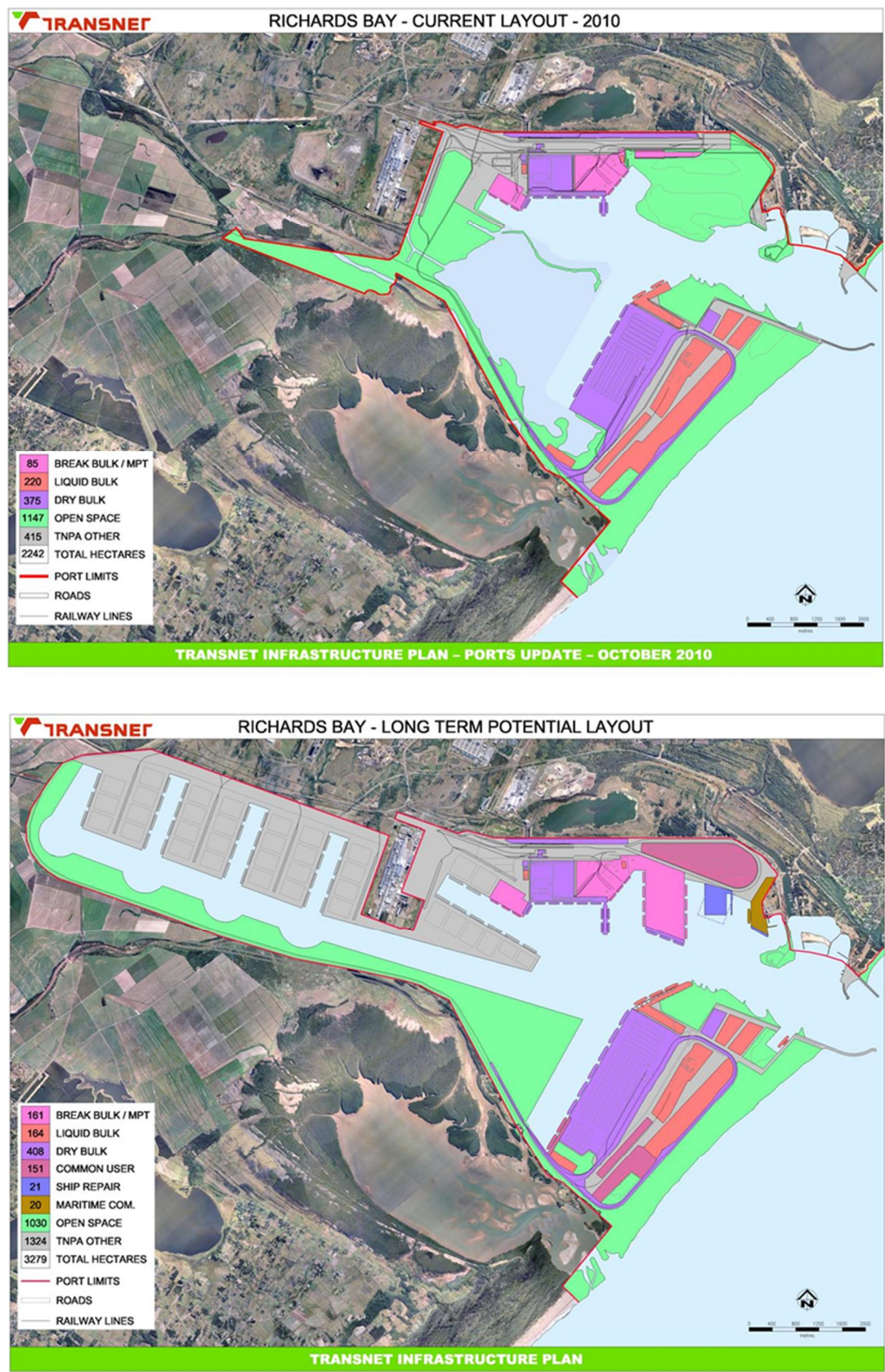
It is understood that it remains to be decided what role the Port of Richards Bay will fulfil regarding the establishment of future container handling facilities for the eastern seaboard of South Africa. Notwithstanding this, it is evident that this port has a significant role to play in expanding its cargo handling facilities over the coming decades and will continue to play an important role in the development of the country. This means that there will be a continuing demand for the port to expand in the future, albeit that the rate of expansion is not known, and hence it remains essential for Transnet to continue planning for the long term port expansion.

### **14.2 INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT ZONE**

The history and potential of the Industrial Development Zone is key in considering the development of industry and manufacturing in uMhlathuze. Initially, Trade and Investment KwaZulu-Natal was the majority shareholder with the Municipality. The shares have been sold to the Department of Economic Development and Tourism making Provincial Government the single shareholder. The land within the IDZ has been subject to a number of agreements through which some of the ecologically sensitive land had been returned to the Municipality.

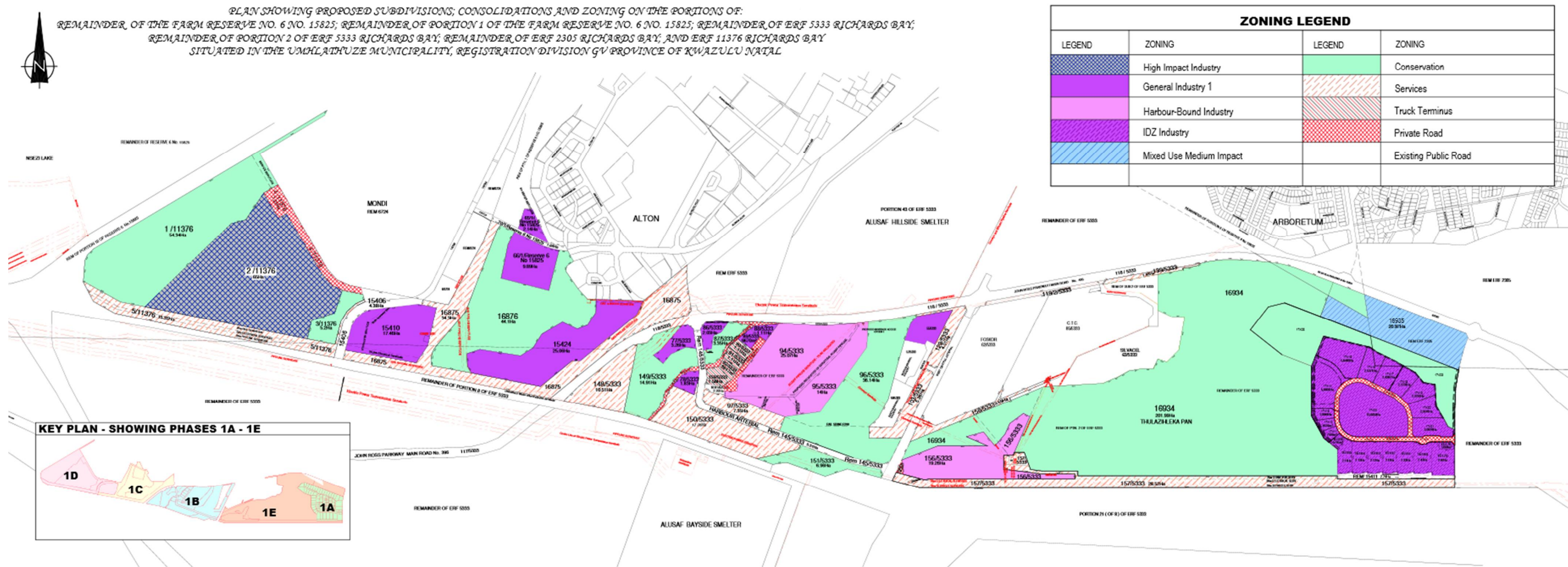
The footprint of the IDZ for Richards Bay as it was designed prior to the transfer of land back to the uMhlathuze Municipality is shown herewith.

Figure 31: Current and Long Term Port Layout





Map 45: IDZ Footprint



The benefits to industries located in the IDZ include:

- Existing efficient deep-water port
- Suited to export-orientated production
- Customs controlled area
- VAT and import duty exemption
- Same time zone as Europe
- Strategic location to access world markets
- Allowance for 100% foreign ownership
- Established local and service industries
- Down-streaming opportunities with respect to: Aluminium, Heavy Metals, Chemicals, Wood, Paper, Pulp and various agricultural products

National government's initiative to establish Special Economic Zones provides for the following:

1. Unlike an IDZ, an SEZ may be established in any area. The area does not necessarily need to be adjacent to, or in proximity to a port or harbour or airport.
2. Secondly, in contrast to an IDZ, an SEZ is not required to focus on production for export, and may also provide services. As such, SEZ's can be established anywhere.

The RBIDZ (Richards Bay Industrial Development Zone) have compiled a 50 Year Master Plan and 10 Year Business Plan:

The purpose of the above IDZ Master Plan is to be as follow:

- A long term development strategy for the RBIDZ
- The alignment of the RBIDZ to the SEZ (Special Economic Zone) Bill by becoming a Northern KwaZulu-Natal Special Economic Zone
- Addressing the weaknesses of the current IDZ programme and introducing global best practices with respect of design, management, support systems and operational procedures
- Development of a larger integrated land portfolio
- Re-positioning of the RBIDZ/SEZ as a true global IDZ/SEZ

The commitment of the RBIDZ to become a key economic role players in the economy of northern KwaZulu-Natal, the province and nationally is apparent. All efforts therefore need to be combined to ensure that appropriate infrastructure and economic services are available to the RBIDZ to fulfil its economic and development role in the area.



The IDZ Master Plan identifies Phase 2A as their priority intervention area beyond their existing land portfolio. The location of Phase 2A is indicated on the inset herewith:

**Figure 32: IDZ 50 Year Master Plan Priority Areas**



### 14.3 MINING INVESTMENT

There are a number of projects being planned and implemented in the municipal area that are funded by non-public funding sources. Notably, in uMhlathuze many projects are underway as part of capital investments by corporates. The details of projects being planned and implemented by RBM are noted in this report and further details from other corporates will be included in the final IDP report.

**RBM Road:** The extension of the East Central Arterial in a northerly direction to provide an alternative access to and from the RBM northern mining areas and headquarters. The options being investigated by RBM are indicated in the following map inset.

**RBM Zulti South Mining and Resettlement Action Plan (RAP):** A number of households' assets are located within the proposed mining area and/or within the exclusion zone and due to mining activities may face economic or physical displacement. As a result, RBM has appointed a service provider to prepare a Resettlement Action Plan (RAP) that aims to guide an internationally compliant resettlement process.

**RBM LED Projects:** A number of projects relating to LED and Infrastructure (roads etc.) are underway as part of the RBM current and future planned activities at Zulti-South.

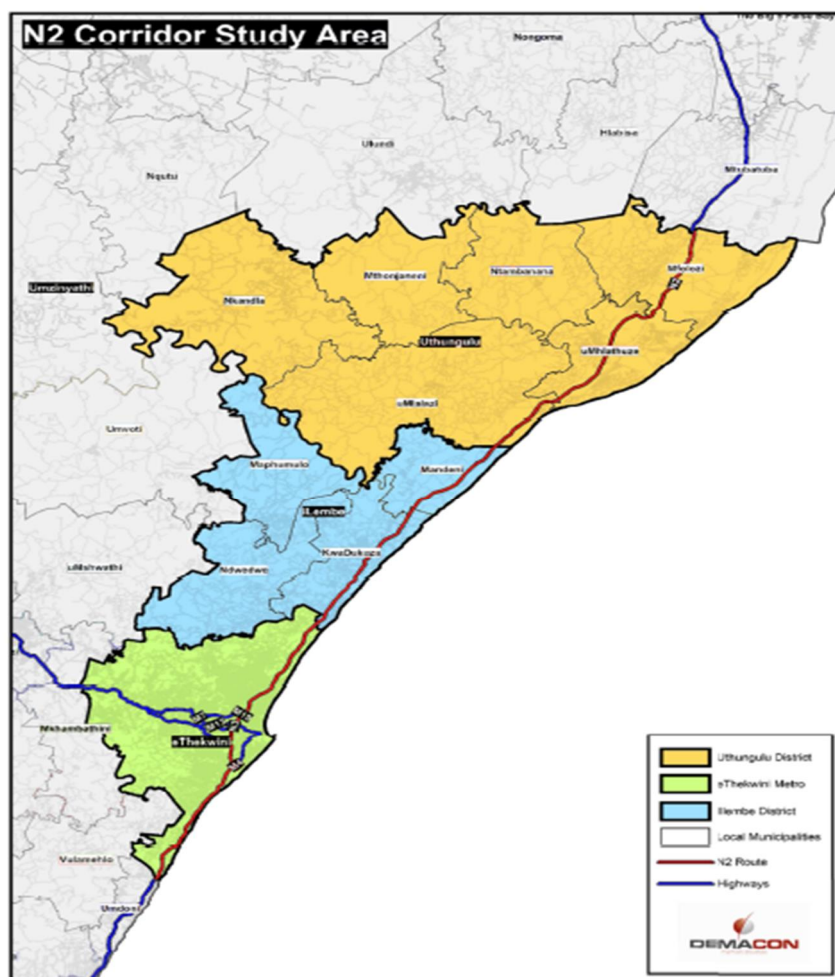
#### 14.4 STRATEGIC CORRIDOR DEVELOPMENT PLAN FOR THE N2 CORRIDOR FROM DURBAN TO RICHARDS BAY

The Presidential Infrastructure Commission launched a National Infrastructure Development Plan which consists of 18 Strategic Integrated Projects (SIPs). The Durban – Free State – Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor is one of the identified projects and are referred to as SIP2.

KZN COGTA has embarked on a phased approach towards the development of Corridor Plans, with the first plan being the Development of a Strategic Corridor Plan for the SIP 2 (Durban Free State - Gauteng) Logistics and Industrial Corridor followed by the N2 Corridor Plan from Ethekwini to through Richards Bay to uMfolozi Municipality. A Strategic Corridor Development Plan is required for the "N2 Corridor" (from Durban - Richards Bay to Mbonambi) in order to provide a clear 25 year period strategic plan for the development, land usage and transport mobility of the affected area. The plan will be used to inform, integrate and coordinate strategic growth and development along the "N2 Corridor" over the next 25 years. The main purpose of the plan is to guide industrial, retail, agricultural and logistics developments whilst integrating the movement of goods and people along the corridor thereby exploiting KZN's key competitive and comparative advantages.

The project area covers Ethekwini Metropolitan; Ilembe District Family of Municipalities Municipality and uThungulu District Family of Municipalities

### Map 46: N2 Corridor Study Area



## 14.5 UMHLATHUZE-ULUNDI-VRYHEID SECONDARY CORRIDOR PLAN

UMhlathuze-Ulundi-Vryheid Secondary Corridor Plan is one of the KZN Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs to address underdevelopment and deprived peri-urban and rural areas adjacent to the strategic corridors.

The Secondary Strategic Corridor (SC1) Plan was prepared in terms of the Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act, 2013 (SPLUMA) which establishes what is referred to as a *Regional Spatial Development Framework (RSDF)*. An RSDF extends beyond Municipal boundaries and is informed by Provincial and Municipal Spatial Development Frameworks, relevant National and Provincial Sector Reports, Plans, Strategies and Census data.

Main objectives of the Plan

The main objective is to:

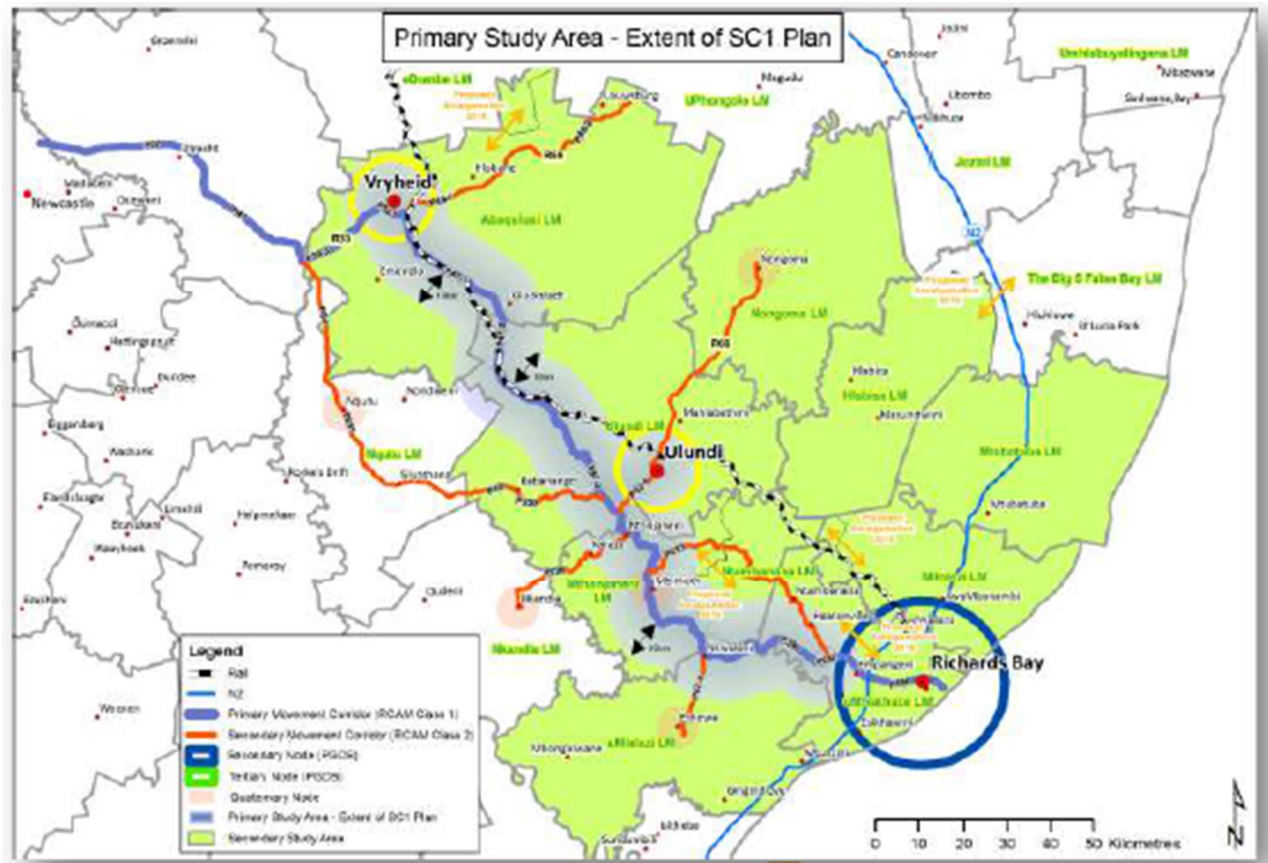
- Develop a 25 year strategic framework that identifies spatial issues, opportunities and a vision for the Corridor.
- Coordinate public sector resources to support the vision and create a framework for private investment that promotes economic growth and social well-being in an environmentally sustainable manner.

The project area consists of the following municipalities:

- Abaqulusi LM
- Hlabisa LM
- Mthonjaneni LM
- Mtubatuba LM
- Nongoma LM
- Ntambanana LM
- Ulundi LM
- Umfolozi LM
- uMhlathuze LM
- uMkhanyakude DM
- uMlalazi LM
- King Cetshwayo DM
- Zululand DM



**Map 47: uMhlathuze-Ulundi-Vryheid Secondary Corridor Project Study Area**



The project is envisaged to be completed in July 2017 after consultation and engagement with all key stakeholders.

## 14.6 KING CETCHWAYO DISTRICT SDF

From a planning perspective, the spatial development frameworks of the King Cetshwayo District, as well as the neighbouring Local Municipalities have been interrogated. The district SDF is briefly summarised hereunder as it provides a global, comparable interpretation of nodes and routes.

The King Cetshwayo SDF comprises of: (i) the hierarchy of centres and movement routes identified for prioritisation in the capital investment component (ii) the broad zoning guidelines for land use at local municipal level in the district based on an extensive assessment of natural resources, agricultural potential, topography, human settlement and level of services.

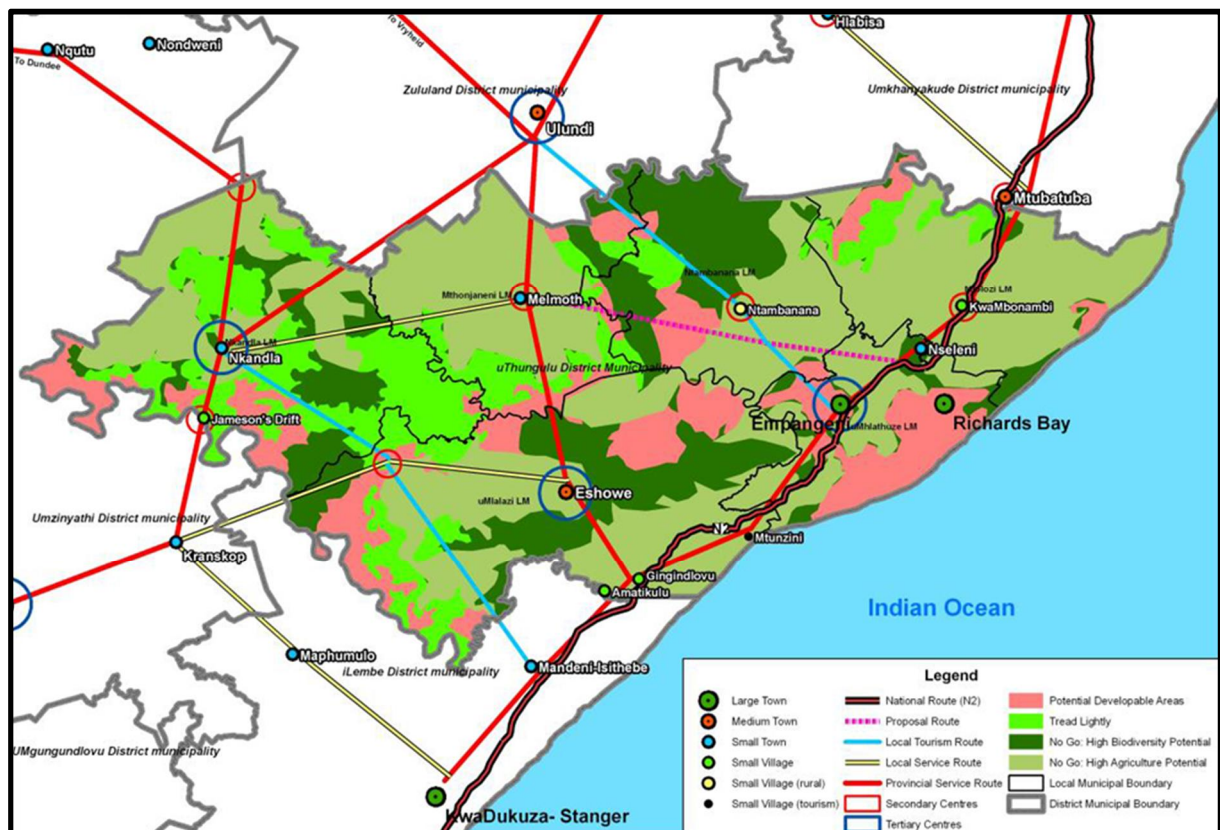
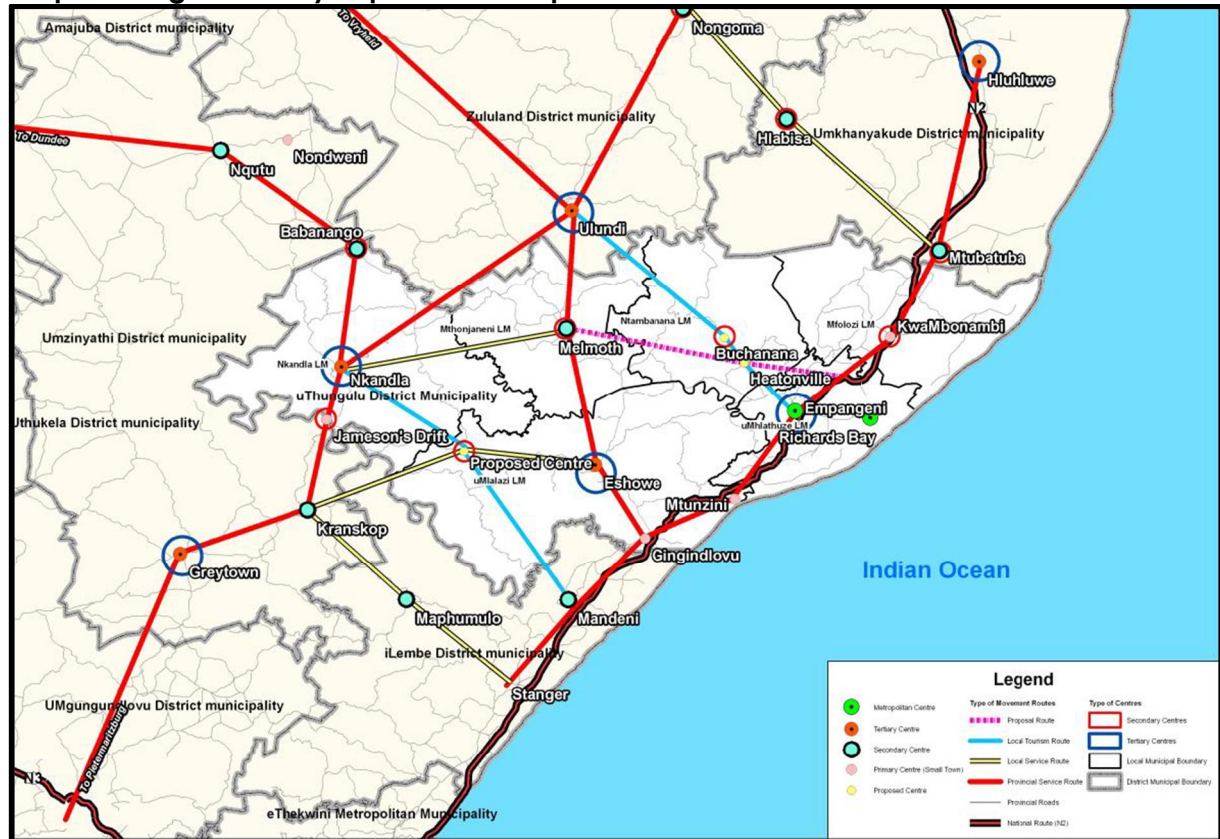
The five proposed tertiary centres in this SDF, in and around the district are located at Greytown, Nkandla, Eshowe, Ulundi and Hluhluwe. Richards Bay-Empangeni has been classified as a metro level centre and therefore performs both the tertiary and higher level functions. Second order centres are located at Buchanana, Melmoth, the proposed new centre near Nkandla, Kranskop, Maphumulo, Mandeni and Mtubatuba.

These lower order centres should be reconstituted as rural villages. They need to be structured such that they have a sense of place, there is differentiation in terms of functionality in the use of space and there is room to accommodate future urbanisation



pressures. Furthermore they need to be located on defined transportation routes that lead directly to higher order centres in order for residents to benefit from these services.

**Map 48: King Cetshwayo Spatial Development Framework**



The Kind Cetshwayo SDF mapping consists of the following:

- No go areas for any further non-agricultural development in high value agricultural areas as well biodiversity sensitive areas.
- Tread lightly for areas that are both environmentally and agriculturally sensitive.
- Areas suited to development.

The conditions associated with land use in each of these broad land use categories is further summarised hereunder:

- (i) 'No-go' areas: Owing to critical biodiversity or/and agricultural potential of land in this zone, it should not be used for any form of built environment development save for that relating to natural resources management or/and farming. There may be opportunities for limited hospitality facilities where it can be demonstrated that such development does not compromise the integrity of the agricultural or biodiversity resource in the area. In traditional areas where there are pressures for expanded residential development on identified biodiversity and agricultural resource areas, then these pressures should be diverted to identified urban areas.
- (ii) 'Tread lightly' area: This includes land which is environmentally sensitive, but for which there are alternative sites in the region which demonstrate the same characteristics in terms of replaceability. If development is mooted in 'tread lightly' areas this should be subject to identifying suitable offsets to ensure that the biodiversity in that area is not lost. Any development anticipated in the 'tread lightly' areas should be subject to environmental and planning assessments to safeguard biodiversity.
- (iii) 'Developable' area: This includes land that is transformed and hence there is limited biodiversity or agricultural potential that remains to be protected and managed. Thus, potentially, land in this broad land use category could be considered available for different forms of development. However, owing to the fact that these areas have been identified at a regional scale verification at local level is essential as part of scheme preparation for land use management.